

## 1.0 Introduction

The Marine Life Protection Act (MLPA) was signed into law in 1999. The MLPA mandates the redesign of a statewide system of marine protected areas (MPAs) that function, to the extent possible, as a network. Central to the MLPA are six goals intended to guide the development of MPAs with California's state waters. The six goals of the MLPA are:

- Goal 1: To protect the natural diversity and abundance of marine life, and the structure, function, and integrity of marine ecosystems.
- Goal 2: To help sustain, conserve, and protect marine life populations, including those of economic value, and rebuild those that are depleted.
- Goal 3: To improve recreational, educational, and study opportunities provided by marine ecosystems that are subject to minimal human disturbance, and to manage these uses in a manner consistent with protecting biodiversity.
- Goal 4: To protect marine natural heritage, including protection of representative and unique marine life habitats in California waters for their intrinsic value.
- Goal 5: To ensure that California's MPAs have clearly defined objectives, effective management measures, and adequate enforcement, and are based on sound scientific guidelines.
- Goal 6: To ensure that the MPAs are designed and managed, to the extent possible, as a component of a statewide network.

After several unsuccessful attempts to implement the MLPA, the California Resources Agency, California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG), and Resources Legacy Fund Foundation signed a memorandum of understanding launching the MLPA Initiative in August of 2004, which began the implementation of the MLPA along the central coast. Among other actions, the MLPA Initiative established the MLPA Blue Ribbon Task Force, MLPA Master Plan Science Advisory Team (SAT), a statewide stakeholder interest group, and MLPA Initiative staff.

A regional stakeholder group was convened for the first MLPA study region, along California's central coast, in June of 2005. By March of 2006, several alternative proposals for MPA design had been generated by the MLPA Central Coast Regional Stakeholder Group and reviewed by the MLPA Blue Ribbon Task Force, which forwarded a preferred alternative proposal to the California Fish and Game Commission. After over a year of ensuing public comments and deliberations, the California Fish and Game Commission unanimously adopted a preferred alternative proposal for MPAs in the central coast in April of 2007. These MPAs were ultimately implemented in September of 2007.

A second memorandum of understanding, effective January 1, 2007, continued the public-private partnership for planning marine protected areas (MPAs) in the second MLPA Initiative study region along California's north central coast. The MLPA North Central Coast Regional Stakeholder Group was convened in May of 2007 and worked for nearly a year to generate three alternative proposals for MPAs on the north central coast by April of 2008. In June of 2008, the MLPA Blue Ribbon Task Force forwarded these three stakeholder-generated proposals, as well as an "Integrated Preferred Alternative" to the California Fish and Game Commission for consideration in the regulatory process.

In December of 2007, California Secretary for Resources Mike Chrisman announced the order in which the remaining portions of the California coastline would be considered under the Marine Life Protection Act, with the goal of completing the planning process by 2011. Secretary Chrisman announced that the MLPA Initiative would move to the south coast study region in 2008, followed by the north coast study region (California/Oregon border in Del Norte County to Alder Creek near Point Arena in Mendocino County), and finally the San Francisco Bay study region (from the Golden Gate Bridge to the Carquinez Bridge). In February of 2008, the California Fish and Game Commission formally adopted a working version of the *California Marine Life Protection Act Master Plan for Marine Protected Areas* (CDFG 2008d), which includes guidelines for developing MPAs.

MPA planning within the MLPA South Coast Study Region (Point Conception in Santa Barbara County to the California/Mexico border in San Diego County, including offshore islands within state waters) represents the third step in the MLPA Initiative process, with a formal amendment to the 2007 memorandum of understanding signed in July 2008. This regional profile includes background information on the biological, oceanographic, socioeconomic, and governance setting for the MLPA South Coast Study Region and is intended to provide basic regional information to support stakeholders and policy-makers in their understanding of the marine resources and heritage of the region so that they may effectively reexamine and redesign MPAs in accordance with the Marine Life Protection Act. This information is provided in the form of text summaries, tables, selected maps (with links to other computer-accessible maps), and technical appendices. The MLPA South Coast Regional Stakeholder Group and MLPA Master Plan Science Advisory Team will provide additional information to augment this profile through a joint fact-finding process.

The best readily available data are being compiled for use in the south coast study region MPA planning process. This regional profile provides an overview of some of that data. All data in a spatial geographic information system (GIS) format are being housed in the California Marine Geodatabase at the University of California, Santa Barbara and will be viewable using an online tool that will be released in the fall of 2008. Appendix I provides a list of the data layers that will be available for MPA planning.

## **2.0 Description of the MLPA South Coast Study Region**

The MLPA South Coast Study Region covers state waters extending from a line due west of Point Conception (in Santa Barbara County) to the California/Mexico border. The study region also includes state waters surrounding offshore islands, including the islands of San Miguel, Santa Rosa, Santa Cruz, Anacapa, Santa Barbara, Santa Catalina, San Nicolas and San Clemente (Map 2.0 -1), as well as a number of offshore rocks, such as Richardson and Castle rocks. In general, state waters extend three nautical miles offshore. The shoreward boundary of the study region is drawn at mean high tide in most locations and at the extent of tidal influence and estuarine vegetation in estuaries and lagoons. Lagoons that are mostly or entirely closed to tidal inundation and dominated by brackish-freshwater species are not included in the MLPA South Coast Study Region.

To facilitate the display of information, the study region has been divided into seven subregions. These subregions are designed simply to show data at a reasonable scale and are not based on any biogeographic criteria; nor are they used as the basis for any MPA evaluations. Subregions for the south coast study region are:

1. Point Conception (Government Point) to Rincon Point
2. Rincon Point to Point Dume
3. Point Dume to Newport Beach
4. Newport Beach to Agua Hedionda
5. Agua Hedionda to the California - Mexico border
6. Northern Channel Islands
7. Southern Channel Islands

The study region coastline covers an alongshore, straight-line distance of 557 statute miles (unless otherwise noted, all distance measurements in this document are measured in statute miles (mi) and all area measurements are measured in square statute miles (mi<sup>2</sup>)). The actual shoreline length is much longer due to undulations in the coastline and covers a distance of approximately 1045 miles (based on the NOAA Environmental Sensitivity index linear shoreline data). The study region encompasses 2,355 mi<sup>2</sup> of area, including 1,287 mi<sup>2</sup> surrounding the offshore islands. Offshore waters within the study region contain a number of channels, basins, and canyons, which extend to a maximum depth of 3,938 feet off the northeast corner of San Clemente Island. These deeper areas, interspersed with shallower ridges, have been characterized as a "continental borderland" (Shepard and Emery 1941, Norris and Webb 1990) and are a defining characteristic of the study region. A diverse array of habitats exist within the study region, ranging from sandy, rocky, and estuarine intertidal areas to deep hard and soft habitats on the continental shelf and slope. In comparison to other areas in California, the south coast study region contains mostly soft bottom habitats, though rocky reefs and rock piles are also present.

The study region is located in the northern portion of the Southern California Bight, which extends from Point Conception to Baja California in Mexico (Dailey 1993). The Southern

California Bight is located within the greater context of the California Current Large Marine Ecosystem (LME), one of only four temperate upwelling systems in the world. The California Current LME is considered globally important for biodiversity because of its high productivity and the large numbers of species it supports (World Wildlife Fund, 2000). The California Current LME extends from Vancouver Island to Baja California and is a very productive ecosystem fueled by nutrient-rich upwelling which supports blooms of phytoplankton that form the foundation for a food web that includes many species of invertebrates, fish, marine mammals and seabirds. The MLPA South Coast Study Region is in the southern portion of the California Current LME and lies immediately south of Point Conception, where the cool California Current meets the relatively warmer California Countercurrent. The confluence of these two oceanographic currents marks the interface between two biogeographic provinces, each with distinct biota and ecosystems: the Oregonian province to the north (and extending to parts to the Channel Islands) and the San Diegan (or Californian) province to the south (NCCOS 2005).

The majority of the south coast study region is dominated by a counter-clockwise circulating gyre called the Southern California Eddy. This oceanographic feature is comprised of a complicated set of seasonally varying currents (more in section 3.1.11), but generally forms when the southward-moving California Current bends shoreward near San Diego and northward along the Southern California Bight as the Southern California Counter Current (Jones 1971). This feature is most well developed in the summer/fall months and less developed during the winter/spring (Lynn and Simpson 1987, Hickey 1993) and moves at average speeds of 10-20 centimeters per second (Oey 1999).

Upwelling occurs in the northern portion of the study region and is centered on Point Conception, where the California coastline angles abruptly to the east and marks the northern boundary of the Southern California Bight (Love et al. 1999). During upwelling season (March through September), cold, nutrient-rich waters are brought to the surface near Point Conception and move eastward along the western edge of the Santa Barbara Channel (Hickey 2000, Atkinson et al. 1986). These nutrient-rich waters provide for diverse ecosystems, fueled by a productive pelagic food web that includes phytoplankton, krill, coastal pelagic species (anchovies, sardines, squid, etc), fish, seabirds, marine mammals, and sharks. Upwelling does not play a major role in the southern portion of the study region, where coastal geography and wind patterns minimize its occurrence.

Freshwater plumes following major storm events play a significant role to the south coast study region oceanographic context (Warrick et al. 2007). These plumes of water can be visibly tracked with aerial imagery and contribute freshwater, sediments, nutrients, and pollutants to nearshore ecosystems and can be correlated with fluctuations in biologic productivity (Otero and Siegel 2004). Depending on a variety of factors, including magnitude of the storm event, watershed size and associated land uses, freshwater plumes in southern California can cover hundreds of square kilometers over a period of 1-2 days and persist for days or even weeks (Nezlin et al. 2005).

The ecology of the study region has been relatively well characterized in several publicly available summary documents (CDFG 2002a, NCCOS 2005, CINMS 2007) as well as

numerous scientific studies (e.g. Dailey et al. 1993). The following is general overview of important geographic and ecological features of the region, generally described from north to south. More specific information is provided in habitat descriptions (section 3.0) and subregional summaries (section 9.0).

Point Conception, a rocky headland that marks the beginning of the Southern California Bight, is the northern-most portion of the study region. Cold waters from central California and warm waters from southern California contribute to a diverse array of marine life in this location. The coastline trends eastward along the Santa Barbara coastline from this point, paralleling the Santa Barbara Channel just offshore, where offshore oil seeps exist. This portion of the coast is relatively protected from ocean swells by the northern Channel Islands, and thus hosts unique marine life such as soft bottom kelp. A number of streams meet the sea along the coastline, as well as the Ventura and Santa Clara rivers further south. Some of these terminate in estuaries, such as Goleta Slough, Malibu Lagoon, and Mugu Lagoon.

Palos Verdes is a rocky headland that lies near the center of the study region with Santa Monica Bay to the north and Long Beach Harbor to the south. Santa Monica Bay supports more than 5000 species within a variety of habitats in close proximity to the population center of Los Angeles and is the focus of a National Estuary Program formed in 1988 (ANEP 2001). South of Palos Verdes, Long Beach Harbor is one of the busiest ports in the country (further information in section 5.12.2). Broad fine to medium grain sandy beaches exist on either side of Palos Verdes, with mostly soft bottom in the subtidal zone. The Los Angeles, San Gabriel, and Santa Ana Rivers meet the ocean south of Palos Verdes. Several estuaries also exist south of Palos Verdes, including upper Newport Bay and Bolsa Chica.

The coastline along Orange and northern San Diego counties can be characterized as sandy beaches backed by wave cut platforms and mostly sandy subtidal areas. Numerous small creeks and rivers form a large number of coastal estuaries and lagoons, which vary in tidal influence. Some of the larger rivers include San Luis Rey and San Dieguito rivers. Further south, the rocky points of La Jolla and Point Loma provide for hard bottom habitat and nearshore kelp forests. A submarine canyon reaches the nearshore area near La Jolla. Mission Bay, San Diego Bay, and the Tijuana Estuary are major estuaries in this far southern portion of the study region.

The Channel Islands, which lie between 12 and 75 miles offshore, are made up of eight major islands as well as a number of smaller rocks and islets. The northern Channel Islands, which include Anacapa, Santa Cruz, Santa Rosa, and San Miguel islands, lie on a submarine ridge between the shallower Santa Barbara Channel and the deeper Santa Cruz basin. Among the northern Channel Islands, Anacapa Island is the closest to shore, approximately 12 miles from Point Hueneme. The waters surrounding the mostly rocky islands are highly productive and support diverse species, in part due to the mixing between colder water from the California Current in the western portion of the islands and warmer water from the Southern California Counter Current in the eastern portion of the islands.

Further south lie the islands of Santa Barbara, San Nicolas, Santa Catalina, and San Clemente. Santa Barbara is one of the smallest Channel Islands and is located further offshore

and the peak of a larger submerged bank. San Nicolas is one of the most remote Channel Islands and is situated on a similar offshore bank. Both islands are mostly rocky and support diverse marine life. Of the southern Channel Islands, Santa Catalina is the closest to shore, just 20 miles from Palos Verdes headland and located between the Santa Monica-San Pedro basin and the Catalina Basin. San Clemente is the furthest south of the Channel Islands, with a relatively shallow slope to the west and a much steeper slope to the east, where the deepest point in the study region is located. Both Santa Catalina and San Clemente have larger portions of sand than the other Channel Islands and have similar species assemblages.

The study region abuts five coastal California counties: Santa Barbara, Ventura, Los Angeles, Orange, and San Diego. Areas along the entire coastline of the study region support large numbers of people and extensive development, though urban centers occur in the cities of Los Angeles and San Diego. A large commercial fishing fleet as well as recreational fishing community, including shore-based, private boaters, and "party boat" operations, is supported by the abundant marine resources in the study region, with major ports in Long Beach Harbor and San Diego Bay, as well as numerous other locations. A variety of non-consumptive activities are also popular within the study region, including diving, kayaking, surfing, beach-going, and a number of different shore and ship-based wildlife viewing activities.

### **3.0 Ecological Setting**

The MLPA South Coast Study Region includes unique ecosystems and encompasses habitats and species that are important for regional marine biodiversity, sustainable resource use, and natural heritage. The Southern California Bight hosts a wide diversity of species, including at least 481 species of fish, 492 species of algae, 4 species of seagrass, 4 species of sea turtles, 195 species of birds, at least 33 species of cetaceans, 7 species of pinnipeds, and over 5000 species of invertebrates (CIMNS 2007). Several of these species have special status under California and/or Federal Endangered Species Act, including white abalone, tidewater goby, green sea turtles, California Brown Pelicans, California Least Terns, and Guadalupe fur seals (CDFG 2008b). This diverse assemblage of species reflects the wide range of habitats that exist in the south coast study region – from deep ocean basins to offshore islands and ridges to a variety of estuarine and intertidal environments. Biogenic habitats, such as kelp forests and seagrass beds, host numerous species, and geologic processes, such as oil seeps, create unique ecological conditions. Some habitats, such as soft bottom kelp beds, exist few other places in the world. A dynamic oceanographic context further increases the biological complexity of the Southern California Bight, with complicated current patterns, upwelling, retention zones, freshwater plumes, and the interaction of warm and cold biogeographic regimes all playing a role.

These unique species, habitats, and oceanographic conditions have contributed to the establishment of several state and federal management areas within the study region. Nearly half of the existing state MPAs in California are located within the study region as well as 31 state parks. Three areas managed by the National Park Service (NPS) - the Santa Monica Mountains National Recreation Area (established in 1978), the Cabrillo National Monument (established in 1913), and the Channel Islands National Park (established in 1980) - are also located within or adjacent to the study region and together make up the Mediterranean Coast Network. In particular, the Channel Islands have been recognized for their unique ecological conditions and were designated as a National Monument in 1938, a National Biosphere Reserve in 1976, and a National Marine Sanctuary (in addition to a National Park) in 1980.

A significant amount of research has taken place within the south coast study region and has contributed to a large body of literature regarding the unique ecological characteristics of the study region. This regional profile has drawn from many of these sources, which can serve as further references. Some key synthetic reports and publications that provide an overview of the study region include:

- Ecology of the Southern California Bight (Dailey et al. 1993)
- The Sea Off Southern California: A Modern Habitat of Petroleum (Emery 1960)
- NOAA Channel Islands Biogeographic Assessment of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (NCCOS 2005)
- CDFG CEQA Document for the Establishment of MPAs in the Channel Islands (CDFG 2002a)

- Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary Management Plan (NOAA 2006)
- Channel Islands Final EIS (CINMS 2007)

A variety of data layers, including information on distribution of habitats and species in the study region, will be available in the fall of 2008 through an online tool under development by the MLPA Initiative. In addition to this tool, other interactive maps are available online that may serve as further references. For instance, the Partnership for Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans (PISCO) has an online "subtidal community survey map" that allows users to see species and habitat characteristics of PISCO research locations. This tool can be accessed at: <http://www.piscoweb.org/data>. Reef Check California recently released a similar interactive map service where a database of information collected by "citizen scientists" regarding both species and habitat can be viewed. This tool is available online at: <http://ned.reefcheck.org>. An associated report displaying similar information by specific location can be found at: <http://www.reefcheck.org/rcca/2yr.php> (appendix 1 of the Reef Check California report contains statistical information by specific site). The San Diego Nearshore Program has developed another tool for displaying habitat types as well as other information in the southern portion of the study region. This tool can be found online at: <http://nearshore.ucsd.edu>. Additional information regarding other research programs and information available online can be found in section 6.0 of this document.

### **3.1 Marine Habitats and Communities**

This section further describes the diverse marine habitats that occur within the MLPA South Coast Study Region. The MLPA specifically mentions the following habitats in reference to their inclusion in California's system of MPAs: intertidal zones, rocky reefs, sandy or soft ocean bottoms, kelp forests, submarine canyons, seagrass beds, underwater pinnacles, and seamounts. In the earlier stages of the MLPA Initiative process, the Science Advisory Team (SAT) recommended further consideration of specific depth zones, estuaries, upwelling areas, retention areas, and freshwater plumes from coastal rivers, and different geologic substrata as additional habitats for MPA siting (CDFG 2008d). These habitats, as identified within the MLPA and by the MLPA SAT, vary in their abundance along the California coastline. One habitat identified in the MLPA, seamounts, does not occur within state waters. Other habitats, such as pinnacles, are not well-mapped. This document provides the best readily available information for each of these habitats, so that they can be considered in MPA planning. For instance, the MLPA requires that MPAs (specifically SMRs) in each of California's two "bioregions" encompass a representative variety of marine habitats and communities across a range of depths and environmental conditions (section 2857(c) of the MLPA).

The SAT assembled for the south coast study region will consider the habitats present in southern California and compare them to those outlined in the MLPA as well as previous study regions. Consideration of these habitats within the MLPA Initiative process will then be tailored to the study region, with the SAT considering the relative abundance and spacing of habitats, and altering evaluation methods and guidance appropriately.



Regional habitats are described below and spatial data on the distribution of most habitats has been provided, to the extent possible, given readily available information (Maps 3.1-1 and 3.1-2). Table 3.1-1 provides a summary of the amount of each habitat in the study region, the bioregion (Point Conception to the California/Mexico border), and the state (California/Oregon border to the border with Mexico, excluding San Francisco Bay). This summary shows the relative rarity of different habitats within the study region, as well as the contribution of the study region towards total amount of each habitat in the bioregion and state.

During the south coast study region process, the MLPA Master Plan Science Advisory Team will consider relative abundance and distribution of these habitats to delineate several smaller biogeographic subregions for the purpose of evaluating MPA proposals. Creation of these biogeographic subregions will be based on a number of factors, including underlying geology, oceanographic patterns, and species distributions.

**Table 3.1-1: Approximate amount of each habitat in the south coast study region, bioregion, and statewide in state waters**

Habitat	Amount in Study Region	% of Study Region Area	Amount in Bioregion	% of Bioregion Area	Amount in State Waters	% of State Waters Area	GIS Data Source / Comments
Total Area (area, mi <sup>2</sup> )	2354.5				6947.0		
Total Shoreline (Length, mi)	1043.9		1043.9		2826.5		NOAA-ESI 2002, 2006
<b>Shoreline<sup>1</sup> Habitats (Length, mi)</b>							
Intertidal: Rocky shores	280.5	26.9%	280.5	26.9%	944.0	33.4%	NOAA-ESI 2002, 2006
Intertidal: Sandy beaches	379.9	36.4%	379.9	36.4%	1293.5	45.8%	NOAA-ESI 2002, 2006
Intertidal: Coastal marsh	56.8	5.4%	56.8	5.4%	320.3	11.3%	NOAA-ESI 2002, 2006
Intertidal: Tidal Flats	28.6	2.7%	28.6	2.7%	280.3	9.9%	NOAA-ESI 2002, 2006
<b>Hard and Soft Bottom Habitats and Canyon (Area, mi<sup>2</sup>)</b>							
Total Hard and Soft Bottom and Canyon Habitat	2,293.0		2,293.0		6947.0		Total area includes all subtidal habitats from Greene et al. 2004
Rocky Habitat 0-30	190.3	8.1%	190.3	8.1%	209.1	3.0%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>

Habitat	Amount in Study Region	% of Study Region Area	Amount in Bioregion	% of Bioregion Area	Amount in State Waters	% of State Waters Area	GIS Data Source / Comments
meters							
Rocky Habitat 30-100 meters	200.2	8.5%	200.2	8.5%	233.7	3.4%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Rocky Habitat 100-200 meters	101.1	4.3%	101.1	4.3%	139.3	2.0%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Rocky Habitat >200 meters	97.1	4.1%	97.1	4.1%	144.2	2.1%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Total Rocky Habitat (all depths)	588.7	25.0%	588.7	25.0%	726.2	10.5%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Soft Bottom Habitat 0-30 meters	466.6	19.8%	466.6	19.8%	2023.3	29.1%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Soft Bottom Habitat 30-100 meters	780.1	33.1%	780.1	33.1%	3033.7	43.7%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Soft Bottom Habitat 100-200 meters	140.6	6.0%	140.6	6.0%	385.4	5.6%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Soft Bottom Habitat >200 meters	317.0	13.5%	317.0	13.5%	593.7	8.6%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Total Soft Bottom Habitat (all depths)	1,704.3	72.4%	1,704.3	72.4%	6036.1	86.9%	Greene et al. 2004 <sup>3</sup>
Underwater Pinnacles	NA		NA		NA		Data not available
<b>Estuarine and Nearshore Habitats (Area, mi<sup>2</sup>)</b>							
Kelp 2005	30.4	1.3%	30.4	1.3%	42.2	0.6%	CDFG 2005 aerial survey
Kelp 2004	31.1	1.3%	31.1	1.3%	45.5	0.7%	CDFG 2004a aerial survey
Kelp 2003	26.3	1.1%	26.3	1.1%	49.3	0.7%	CDFG 2003 aerial survey
Kelp 2002	13.1	0.6%	13.1	0.6%	36.6	0.5%	CDFG 2002a aerial survey
Kelp 1999	11.6	0.5%	11.6	0.5%	23.0	0.3%	CDFG 1999 aerial survey

Habitat	Amount in Study Region	% of Study Region Area	Amount in Bioregion	% of Bioregion Area	Amount in State Waters	% of State Waters Area	GIS Data Source / Comments
Kelp 1989	17.8	0.8%	17.8	0.8%	53.6	0.8%	CDFG 1989 aerial survey
Average Kelp	21.7	0.9%	21.7	0.9%	41.7	0.6%	
Estuary	36.6	1.6%	36.6	1.6%	148.5	2.1%	National Wetlands Inventory; California Natural Diversity Database; NOAA-ESI 2002; USGS Topos
Seagrass: Surfgrass (Length, mi, % of shoreline)	74.0	7.1%	74.0	7.1%	NA		
Seagrass: Eelgrass	18.1	0.8%	18.1	0.8%	41.7	0.6%	?
<b>Oceanographic Habitats</b>							
Upwelling center <sup>2</sup>	1 major center at Point Conception				5 major centers		NOAA Coastwatch Sea Surface Temperature
Retention area	Gyre within Southern California Bight acts as a retention zone				NA		Wing et al. 1998, Largier 2004
Freshwater plume	Coastal river mouths				NA		

Notes: <sup>1</sup> Shoreline percentages may add up to more than 100% since more than one type can be present in a given location.

<sup>2</sup> Major upwelling centers in the state include: Cape Mendocino, Point Arena, Davenport, Point Sur, Point Conception.

<sup>3</sup> Coarse scale data characterized by Greene et al. 2004 tends to overestimate the presence of rocky substrate. Fine-scale substrate data has been collected during the summer of 2008 using vessel-based multibeam side scan sonar and will be available in the fall of 2008.

### 3.1.1 Depth Categories

Based on information about fish depth distributions in California (Allen et al. 2006), the SAT has recommended considering habitats as they are represented in the depth zones identified in Table 3.1-2.

**Table 3.1-2: Depth zones identified by the SAT**

<b>Meters (m)</b>	<b>Fathoms (fm)</b>	<b>Feet (ft)</b>
Intertidal	Intertidal	Intertidal
Intertidal to 30 m	Intertidal to 16 fm	Intertidal to 98 ft
30 m to 100 m	16 fm to 55 fm	98 ft to 328 ft
100 m to 200 m	55 fm to 109 fm	328 ft to 656 ft
great than 200 m	greater than 109 fm	greater than 656 ft

Note: All depth figures above and throughout this document have been converted from the SAT guidelines, which are provided in meters. The above numbers have been converted from meters and are rounded to the nearest whole number. For reference, 1.00 m = 0.55 fm = 3.28 ft.

The intertidal zone includes habitats such as sandy beaches, rocky shores, tidal flats, and coastal marsh that are subject to periodic tidal inundation. The 0-30 meter depth zone is considered the euphotic zone where light penetrates to support photosynthetic activity. Beyond 30 meters, light penetration diminishes and different assemblages of species occur. The depth zone from 100-200 meters is the approximate depth of the shelf-slope break, which is an area of high diversity characterized by both shelf and slope assemblages. At 200 meters and below, the continental slope drops down to the abyssal plain where deep sea communities occur.

Several of the seven habitats mentioned in the MLPA occur in only one depth zone, while others may occur in several depth zones. The area of each subtidal depth range within the study region are provided in Table 3.1-3, based on CDFG (2008) delineation of depth zones using Geophysical Data System 91m resolution data. Most of the study region is less than 100 meters in depth, though there are significant portions that are deeper, especially on the edges of the basins and canyons of the Southern California Bight. Subregion 1 (the Santa Barbara coast) is the shallowest portion of the study region, with a maximum depth of 911 feet. Subregion 7 (the southern Channel Islands) is the deepest portion of the study region, with a maximum depth of 3,938 feet off the northeast corner of San Clemente Island. A number of deeper basins lie between the Channel Islands, outside of state waters, the deepest of which lies between Santa Cruz, San Nicolas, and Santa Barbara Islands.

**Table 3.1-3: Depth zone as percent of south coast study region**

<b>Depth Zone</b>	<b>Area (mi<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>Percentage of Study Region</b>
Intertidal to 30 meters (0 to 16 fm)	656.7	27.9%
30 to 100 meters (16 to 55 fm)	980.3	41.6%
100 to 200 meters (55 to 109 fm)	241.8	10.3%
200 meters and deeper (109 fm and deeper)	414.1	17.6%

### 3.1.2 Intertidal Zones

The shoreline represents a transition zone between the marine and terrestrial environments and includes many important intertidal ecosystems and communities. Intertidal zones that have been mapped as linear features along the coastline include rocky shores, sandy beaches, tidal flats, coastal marsh along the shores of estuaries and lagoons, and man-made structures such as jetties and seawalls (Map 3.1-1). Table 3.1-4 is a summary of the linear length and percentage of total shoreline (approximately 1,045 miles as measured following the contours of the coastline) for each shore type in the study region based on data from NOAA -ESI (2006). Sandy beaches dominate the shoreline, though rocky areas also are present, especially on the Channel Islands. Marsh and tidal flat habitats are less common in the study region and generally found in sheltered bays and estuaries.

**Table 3.1-4: Summary of the amount of shoreline habitats in south coast study region**

Shore Type	Length in Study Region (mi)	Percentage of Total Shoreline in Study Region
Exposed rocky cliffs	125.0	12.0%
Wave cut rocky platforms	108.8	10.4%
Exposed wave cut platforms in bedrock	1.0	0.1%
Sheltered rocky shores	0.7	0.1%
Fine to medium grained sand beaches	198.1	19.0%
Coarse-grained sand to granule beaches	55.2	5.3%
Mixed sand and gravel beaches	26.8	2.6%
Gravel beaches	104.8	10.0%
Salt marshes	55.9	5.4%
Exposed tidal flats	19.6	1.9%
Sheltered tidal flats	8.8	0.8%
Sheltered man-made structures	191.5	18.3%
Exposed seawall (man-made)	12.4	1.2%
Riprap (man-made)	135.5	13.0%
Total shoreline length in study region	1043.9	100%

**Rocky Shores:** Rocky shore habitats and their associated ecological assemblages make up less than one-quarter of the study region shoreline (not including man-made hardened shorelines). Along the mainland coast, rocky shores are relatively rare and can be found in the vicinity of headlands such as Point Conception, Palos Verdes, La Jolla Point, and Point Loma. In contrast, much of the shoreline of the eight Channel Islands is dominated by rocky coast, though Santa Catalina and San Clemente have significant sandy coasts as well. Exposed rocky cliffs and platforms are the most common types of rocky shores, whereas sheltered rocky shores are relatively rare.

Rocky intertidal communities, from the splash zone to the lower intertidal, vary in composition and structure with tidal height and wave exposure (Ricketts et al. 1985) and with underlying geology (Foster et al. 1988). Mussel beds (*Mytilus* spp.), algal beds (*Endocladia muricata*, *Hesperophycus californicus*, *Silvetia deliquescens*, and many other species), and surfgrass (*Phyllospadix* spp.) are distributed patchily along rocky shores and support high biodiversity as these organisms create structure to which larval organisms can settle and juveniles can find protection from predators and harsh environmental conditions. Such areas are sometimes characterized as "biogenic habitats." In addition, intertidal boulders, platforms, and cliffs, as well as tidepools are home to many species of snails, algae, barnacles, mussels, anemones, crabs, sea stars, and fishes. Also, the mostly rocky shores of the Channel Islands and sandy beaches near rocky points on the mainland coast host a variety of rookery/haulout sites for pinnipeds (including harbor seals, California sea lions, and Northern elephant seals) and colony/roosting areas for seabirds (including Pigeon Guillemots, Pelagic and Brant's Cormorants, and Xantu's Murrelets).

The following rocky shore types have been mapped in the south coast study region by NOAA for the Environmental Sensitivity Index (ESI) program (2006) (Table 3.1-4):

- **Exposed rocky cliff:** Steep intertidal zone (greater than 30 degrees slope) with little width and little sediment accumulation. Strong vertical zonation of intertidal communities; Limpets are a key species associated specifically with exposed rocky cliffs. Over half of the rocky shoreline in the study region falls into this category.
- **Wave cut rocky platform:** Includes flat rocky bench of variable width with irregular surface and tidepools. Shore may be backed by scarp or bluff with sediments or boulders at base. Some sediment accumulation in pools and crevices. May support rich tidepool and intertidal communities. Polychaetes are a key species associated specifically with wave cut rocky platforms. Nearly half of the rocky shoreline in the study region falls into this category with a small amount (near Point Conception) cut into bedrock.
- **Sheltered rocky shore:** Bedrock shores of variable slope (cliffs to ledges) that are sheltered from wave exposure. Sea anemones are one key species associated specifically with sheltered rocky shores. Sheltered rocky shores (not including man-made hardened shoreline) are rare in southern California and exist in limited locations on Santa Cruz and Santa Catalina Islands, as well as in Buena Vista Lagoon (Table 3.1-4).

**Sandy Beaches:** Over one third of the study region is covered by sandy shorelines with the majority of the mainland coast dominated by near continuous sandy beaches. Sandy beach communities are structured in large part by grain size, slope of the beach, and wave energy. While most of southern California beaches are made up of fine-grained sand, a significant number of coarse-grained gravel beaches exist as well, especially on the Palos Verdes headland and Santa Catalina and San Clemente Islands. Beaches with intermediate sand grain sizes exist as well throughout the study region.

Beaches are dynamic systems that change with wind and waves; generally sand is eroded from beaches in the winter and redeposited in the summer resulting in annual changes in

beach slope and width. Seasonal fluctuations in sand abundance are affected by the creation of hardened shores as the creation of sand-retention structures, such as groins. Beach nourishment, or adding sand to beaches, occurs within the study region in several locations (see section 5.11)

A variety of invertebrates live in the sand and wracks of decaying seaweed and other detritus on the sand surface, though accumulation of these materials is moderated in many locations (see section 5.11). Snails, bivalves, crustaceans, insects, spiders, isopods, amphipods, and polychaetes are among the organisms that inhabit sandy beaches, and several serve as food sources for larger vertebrates, including the federally endangered Western Snowy Plover. Other species, including the Western Snowy Plover and California Least Tern and many pinnipeds, utilize sandy beaches for resting or rearing young. Sandy beaches play a central role in the lifecycle of some fish species, such as the California grunion, which lays its eggs on southern California beaches throughout the south coast study region (Dugan et al. 2000)

Beach types in the south coast study region have been mapped as linear shoreline features and classified based on grain size:

- **Fine to Medium-Grained Sand Beach:** Flat, wide, and hard-packed beach; significant seasonal changes in width and slope. Upper beach fauna scarce; lower beach fauna include sand crabs. These beaches comprise nearly one-fifth of the study region and a large percentage of the mainland shore.
- **Coarse-Grained Sand Beach:** Moderate-to-steep beach of variable width with soft sediments; may be backed by dunes or cliffs; fauna scarce. Less abundant in the south coast study region than fine grained and gravel beaches. Often located near river mouths and estuaries.
- **Mixed Sand and Gravel Beach:** Moderately sloping beach with a mix of sand and gravel; may be zones of pure sand, pebbles or cobbles. Sand fraction may get transported offshore in winter. More stable substrata support algae, mussels, and barnacles. Least abundant beach type in southern California, occurring mostly in the Channel Islands and in isolated pockets on the mainland coast.
- **Gravel Beach:** Beaches composed of sediments ranging from pebbles to boulders; often steep with wave-built berms. Attached algae, mussels, and barnacles on lower stable substrata. Gravel beaches comprise approximately one-tenth of the shoreline in the study region, occurring on the mainland as well as offshore islands, with large portions on Palos Verdes, Santa Catalina, and San Clemente.

**Coastal Marsh and Tidal Flats:** Coastal marshes support high levels of productivity and provide habitat for many species. Marshes also regulate the amount of fresh water, nutrient, and sediment inputs into the estuaries and play an important role of filtration in estuarine water quality. The position of marshes throughout the south coast study region along estuarine margins and their dense stands of persistent plants also make them essential for stabilizing shorelines and for storing floodwaters during coastal storms. Vegetation patterns and dominant species in coastal brackish marshes vary with the salinity regime, which is defined by precipitation patterns and changes in freshwater inputs.

Tidal flats and marshes occur throughout the study region and are often associated with coastal creeks and rivers as well as bays and estuaries (e.g. Santa Clara River, Upper Newport Bay, and San Diego Bay). Constituting less than three percent of the study region, these sandy or muddy expanses that are exposed during low tides provide important foraging grounds for shorebirds due to the abundance of invertebrates such as clams, snails, crabs, and worms.

The following shoreline types have been mapped as linear features of the coastline:

- **Salt Marshes:** Includes intertidal areas with emergent salt marsh vegetation. The width of marsh varies from a narrow fringe to extensive areas and provides important habitat for a variety of species. Occurs throughout the study region, including upper Newport Bay, Bolsa Chica, and numerous smaller estuaries in San Diego County.
- **Exposed Tidal Flats:** Includes intertidal flats composed of sand and mud. The presence of some wave exposure generally results in a higher presence of sand than in sheltered tidal flats; occurs in bays and lower sections of rivers. Sediments in tidal flats are generally water saturated with the presence of infaunal community that attracts foraging shorebirds. Used as roosting sites for birds. Generally more abundant than sheltered tidal flats in the south coast study region.
- **Sheltered Tidal Flats:** Includes intertidal flats comprised of silt and clay (e.g. mudflats). Present in calm water habitats and sheltered from wave exposure; frequently bordered by marsh. Soft sediments support large populations of worms, clams, and snails; important foraging area for migrating shorebirds. Relatively rare in the south coast study region.

**Hardened (man-made) Shorelines:** Nearly one-third of the southern California shoreline is composed of jetties, seawalls, and other man-made structures. Shorelines in and around major ports and harbors, especially the ports of Long Beach and San Diego, tend to be dominated by this shoreline type. Hardened shores are not a habitat type specifically identified by the MLPA or the SAT in previous study regions. Further information on hardened shorelines can be found in section 5.11.2.

### **3.1.3 Estuaries and Lagoons**

Estuaries form at the mouths of rivers and streams where freshwater and saltwater meet. Specific characteristics of estuaries vary based on salinity. This salinity may change seasonally and over longer timeframes depending upon freshwater inputs and creation or removal of barriers between the estuary and the open coast. Two kinds of estuaries exist within the south coast study region: bodies of water that are permanently or semi-permanently open to the ocean and bodies of water that are seasonally separated from the sea by sand bars. The latter of these types, known as "bar-built estuaries," generally have a low level of freshwater inputs and are referred to as "lagoons" in this document. Estuaries in the south coast study region contain open water and soft-bottom habitats, as well as coastal marsh and tidal flats (described in section 3.1.2) and eelgrass beds (described in section 3.1.4).



Within estuaries and lagoons, the shoreward boundary of the south coast study region was determined by evaluating the extent and presence of mapped salt marsh or brackish vegetation, presence of saltwater species, and the known extent of tidal influence. Information used in this analysis included the NOAA Environmental Sensitivity Index (NOAA-ESI) shoretype data, the National Wetlands Inventory data, satellite imagery, and expert knowledge from CDFG biologists. This information was used to determine which estuaries and lagoons were included in the south coast study region and within the MLPA Initiative process. In general, lagoons and estuaries that are open, at least periodically, and are characterized by estuarine vegetation and tidal influence were included in the study region. Lagoons that are rarely open and characterized by more freshwater species (such as Topanga Lagoon near Malibu) were not included. Coastal streams and small rivers that empty directly into the Pacific Ocean also were not included within the study region.

The south coast study region contains at least a portion of nearly 40 estuaries and lagoons. Some of these estuaries are described in more detail below. The largest estuaries in the study region include Anaheim Bay, Newport Bay and San Diego Bay, which are large systems with significant habitat diversity, including mudflats, shallow areas, and deeper channels (Allen et al. 2006). Several other estuaries, such as Mugu Lagoon and Bolsa Chica Estuary, are relatively large, while most other estuaries and lagoons are under 0.5 mi<sup>2</sup> in area. Many of these smaller estuaries are seasonally closed to tidal influence by sand bars. The southern portion of the study region, particularly from the Long Beach waterfront to the California/Mexico border, has a number of medium to small sized estuaries and lagoons. The aerial extent of estuaries in the entire south coast study region totals 36.6 mi<sup>2</sup> or 1.6% of the region (Table 3.1-1, Map 3.1-1). The maps of coastal estuaries represent a composite from multiple sources, including the National Wetlands Inventory, California Natural Diversity Database, NOAA-ESI, and topographic maps.

The location and extent of some estuaries and lagoons have changed in recent years as a result of coastal restoration projects. Estuarine restoration projects within the study region that have occurred in recent years include efforts within Mugu Lagoon, the Ballona Wetlands, Malibu Lagoon, Bolsa Chica Estuary, and the Tijuana River Estuary, among others. Estuarine restoration efforts have focused on fostering the growth of native plant species, restoring estuarine substrata, and reestablishing tidal exchange and have often resulted in expanded extent of coastal estuaries and reducing sedimentation of coastal watersheds. Throughout the study region, especially in the vicinity of major ports and harbors, areas that were historically estuaries have been lined with seawalls, rip rap, and other man-made structures (see section 3.1.2).

Estuaries and lagoons are productive coastal ecosystems that play a key role as nursery habitat for many coastal invertebrates and fish. Unlike systems in northern California, estuaries in southern California tend to have low freshwater inputs, and therefore generally lack freshwater and anadromous species, such as salmon. Exceptions include small runs of Pacific lamprey as well as historic runs of southern steelhead, particularly in the northern portion of the study region. In addition, some estuaries host striped mullet, which is the only species in California to live mostly in freshwater, but return to the ocean to breed. Key species that spend most of their lives in southern California estuaries include Pacific staghorn sculpin, bay

pipefish, and arrow goby, as well as California killifish, spotted sand bass, and several species of anchovy and goby. Species that utilize estuaries seasonally, or for part of their life cycle, include topsmelt, California halibut, yellowfin croaker, stingray, sharks, and several species of perch and turbot (Allen et al. 2006). In addition, coastal bays and estuaries in the region, such as the Tijuana River Estuary, San Diego Bay, Bolsa Chica, Mission Bay, and Mugu Lagoon, are an important part of the Pacific Flyway and host thousands of shorebirds and waterfowl on their migrations (Page et al. 1999, Ramer 1991).

Since estuaries and lagoons provide important habitat linkages between marine, aquatic and terrestrial habitats, their condition is closely tied to the condition of the surrounding watershed. Estuaries provide critical ecosystem services such as filtering sediments and nutrients from the watershed, stabilizing shorelines, and providing flood and storm protection. Further information on the condition of southern California watersheds is included in section 4.2. Estuaries are also utilized for many recreational activities such as fishing, boating, kayaking, wildlife viewing, and interpretation/education activities (further information can be found in sections 5.6, 5.8. and 5.9).

Following is a brief description of some of the major estuaries and lagoons within the study region:

**Devereux Lagoon (Slough):** This lagoon and associated finger sloughs are part of 70 acres of wetland habitat inside the 117 acre Coal Oil Point Reserve owned by the University of California Natural Reserve System. UC Santa Barbara's Long Range Development Plan designates the Coal Oil Point Reserve as an Environmentally Sensitive Habitat Area. As a part of the University of California Natural Reserve System, the area is reserved for habitat and wildlife preservation, public education, and academic research. The slough is tidally influenced only during short periods in the winter. A beach berm forms at the mouth of the slough during drier months. Five estuarine fish species are known to occur in the lagoon and several special status coastal birds (Common Loon, American White Pelican, Brown Pelican, Double-crested Cormorant, White-faced Ibis, Osprey, Bald Eagle, Northern Harrier, Peregrine Falcon, Snowy Plover, California Gull, Elegant Tern, and Black Tern). In 1996 a restoration project was completed on the South Finger Slough including removing fill and re-contouring the site, increasing tidal action, controlling erosion, removing exotic plants, and planting with native species. (CERES 2000).

**Goleta Slough:** This small estuary is part of a larger fragmented wetland area around the UC Santa Barbara Storke Campus, Santa Barbara Municipal Airport and the campus of UC Santa Barbara. Within the wetlands area is approximately 101 acres of salt marsh, 15 acres of mudflat, and 4 acres of salt flat. Extensive areas of the historic marsh below the high tide line are isolated from tidal influence by berms and dikes. Tidal flooding is limited to the south-central portion of the slough, extending into several of the major tributaries. A beach berm is mechanically breached periodically to maintain tidal flooding. Fish species in the slough are predominately killifish, topsmelt, arrow goby, and mosquitofish. Twenty special status bird species have been identified including: California Brown Pelican, Southern Bald Eagle, Peregrine Falcon, Snowy Plover, Sandhill Crane, Common Loon, American White Pelican, Double-Crested Cormorant, White-faced Ibis, Fulvous Duck, Harlequin Duck, Northern Harrier,

Golden Eagle, Osprey, Long-billed Curlew, California Gull, Elegant Tern, and Black Skimmer. The Goleta Slough Management Committee, composed of agency representatives, property owners and public interest groups, has been established to make recommendations and review the Goleta Slough Ecosystem Management Plan and its ongoing implementation. (CERES 1997a)

**Mugu Lagoon:** This lagoon is part of a wetlands area owned by the U.S. Navy and is within the Point Mugu Naval Air Warfare Weapons Station. There are 287 acres of open water, 128 acres of tidal flats, 40 acres of tidal creeks, and 944 acres of tidal marsh. The tidal connection is through an inlet in the barrier beach, which migrates seasonally. The tidal prism is described as large relative to the volume of water remaining in the lagoon at low tide. Fish surveys collected 18 species, with topsmelt, California killifish, mosquitofish, arrow goby, staghorn sculpin, and arroyo chub occurring most frequently. The following special status birds have been reported within the lagoon: Pacific Loon, Ashy and Black Storm Petrels, American White and California Brown Pelicans, Double-crested Cormorant, Least Bittern, White-faced Ibis, Fulvous Whistling Duck, Harlequin Duck, Barrow's Goldeneye, Osprey, Bald Eagle, Northern harrier, Swainson's Hawk, Peregrine Falcon, Sandhill Crane, Long-billed Curlew, Laughing Gull, California Gull, Elegant Tern, Black Tern, Black Skimmer, Xantus Murrelet, Rhinoceros Auklet, Long-billed Savannah Sparrow, and Tricolored Blackbird. Harbor seals use the beach and sand bars near the lagoon mouth for hauling out and pupping. Several wetlands restoration projects have been undertaken by the Navy in the lagoon since 1995. (CERES 1997b)

**Malibu Lagoon:** The California Department of Parks and Recreation owns this lagoon located at the mouth of a canyon where Malibu Creek meets the Pacific Ocean. There are 28 acres of estuarine open water, tidal channels and mudflats. An additional 18 acres of salt marsh are also adjacent to the lagoon. Year-round flow, caused by irrigation water inputs, creates a high summer water level in the lagoon. Treated wastewater is discharged into the lagoon as well, though it is prohibited during summer months. A number of estuarine species, as well as endangered steelhead and tidewater gobies utilize the estuary. Special status birds, including the California Brown Pelican, California Least Tern, Double-crested Cormorant, California Gull, Western Snowy Plover, and Elegant Tern have been reported from the lagoon. Restoration efforts are underway to increase tidal circulation, create additional islands for bird usage, and expand salt marsh habitat.

**Ballona Wetlands:** The Ballona Wetlands are made up of four sites separated by Ballona Creek and several roads. Ballona Creek is channelized for its entire length through the wetland. Culverts with flap gates allow limited amounts of sea water into the marsh via Ballona Creek. The remnant wetlands south of Ballona Creek Channel receive the greatest amount of tidal water, though tidal range rarely exceeds three feet. Although a drainage ditch on the northern border of the undeveloped area northwest of the Ballona Creek Channel is connected by a culvert to Marina del Rey, there is no tidal exchange because the bank height and the elevation of surrounding lands are above high tide ranges (CERES 1997c). Restoration efforts have taken place in the wetlands in recent years, with involvement from the Audubon Society.

**Anaheim Bay:** At 956 acres, Anaheim Bay is one of the largest estuaries in southern California. Designated as a National Wildlife Refuge in 1972, this relatively undisturbed salt marsh is highly productive and has provided for rapid growth of some fish species (Land and Hill 1975). Fish species found within the bay include topsmelt, goby, anchovy, killifish, grunion, and pipefish. Special status birds found within the bay include California Least Tern and Light-footed Clapper Rail, Brown Pelican, Double-crested Cormorant, Western Snowy Plover, California Gull, and Elegant Tern. Establishment of the U.S. Naval Weapons Station at Seal Beach has limited access to the area and contributed to the preservation of this wetland. Dredging of the mouth of the bay has allowed for tidal flow (Allen et al. 2006).

**Bolsa Chica Estuary:** Bolsa Chica encompasses 2300 acres of tidally influenced wetlands and large expanses of freshwater wetlands. This estuary is located in the unincorporated portion of Orange County, surrounded by the City of Huntington Beach and bordered to the west by the Pacific Coast Highway. Much of the historical marsh area has been removed from tidal influence through the construction of duck hunting ponds, oil drilling pads and attendant access roads. Outer Bolsa Bay is directly connected to Huntington Harbor, which is the only area fully open to tidal influence. Inner Bolsa Bay and the Ecological Reserve have a controlled tidal regime (through the use of flood gates to Outer Bolsa Bay) which fluctuates around means sea level. A total of 18 different species of fish have been identified in the estuary, with topsmelt and arrow gobies the most abundant. California killifish, bay pipefish, Pacific staghorn sculpin, longjaw mudsuckers, diamond turbot and California halibut are also present. Special status bird species include: the Common Loon, American White Pelican, California Brown Pelican, Double Crested Cormorant, Reddish Egret, Elegant Tern, White-face Ibis, Light-footed Clapper Rail, Western Snowy Plover, Long-billed Curlew, California Gull, California Least Tern, Black Tern, Elegant Tern, Black Skimmer, and Northern Harrier. Both a state marine park and ecological reserve exist within the estuary (CERES 1998).

**Upper Newport Bay:** Upper Newport Bay is located in the town of Newport Beach and receives water from a 154-mile watershed with San Diego Creek and Santa Ana-Delhi Channel draining into the bay (NBNF 2008). Many different habitat types exist in Upper Newport Bay, including brackish marshes, riparian zones, upland, open water, and mud flats. The diversity of these habitat types help support a broad and diverse group of species. It is considered one of the most important birding sites in North America (CCC 2008a). Approximately 200 resident birds inhabit Upper Newport Bay and another 30,000 birds may rest there during migratory season (NBNF 2008). In the mid-1900's, interest arose in developing hotels in tideland areas of the bay. To block the development, a local couple purchased and preserved much of the Upper Newport Bay (NBNF 2008). In 1975, the Upper Newport Bay Ecological Reserve was established and, over the years, the acreage has grown to 752 acres of open space. The Reserve is managed by CDFG. A Community-Based Restoration and Education Program has been established in Upper Newport Bay to address environmental degradation within estuary, including pollution from nonpoint and point sources and siltation (NBNF 2008, CCC 2008a). This program has initiated water quality monitoring, annual clean-up events, exotic weed eradication, and habitat restoration efforts (CCC 2008a).

**Agua Hedionda Lagoon:** Agua Hedionda Lagoon is 388 acres in size and located in the city of Carlsbad (City of Carlsbad 2008). The associated watershed, which is 29 mi<sup>2</sup>, drains into the

lagoon via Aqua Hedionda Creek, and Buena Creek (CERES 1997c). The lagoon hosts a number of species, including 81 species of birds, 29 species of fish, and 76 benthic invertebrate taxa (CERES 1997c). The lagoon has been divided into three sections due to transportation infrastructure (e.g. Interstate 5, City of Carlsbad 2008). Culverts connect the three sections of the lagoon. A San Diego Gas and Electric (SDG&E) power plant is situated along the edge of the two outermost lagoon sections (CERES 1997c). The lagoon is considered an impaired water body, as it exceeds standards for coliform bacteria and sediment (CERES 1997c).

**Batiquitos Lagoon:** Batiquitos Lagoon is a tidal wetland situated between Carlsbad and Encinitas (Port of LA 2008) and is home to 185 bird species, 65 fish species, and a diverse group of marsh, wetland and upland plants (BLF 2008). This coastal lagoon includes upland, intertidal, and open water habitats (BLF 2008). The lagoon is 610 acres in size and associated with a particularly large watershed, of 55,000 acres, which drains into the lagoon (BLF 2008). As part of a mitigation plan with the Port of Los Angeles, the Batiquitos Lagoon Enhancement Project has been established in recent years (Port of LA 2008) and restoration efforts took place from 1994 to 1997 focused on the removal of sediment build up, restricting further fine sediment deposition, and reestablishing tidal flow into the lagoon.

**San Elijo Lagoon:** The San Elijo Lagoon is a shallow water estuary located between Solana Beach and Encinitas which supports a well-established community of 319 species of birds, 23 species of fish, 20 species of amphibians and reptiles, and 400 different plants (SELC 2006). An 80-square mile watershed drains into the lagoon, mainly via Escondido Creek (SELC 2006). This lagoon has been altered by the construction of the railroad, Pacific Coast Highway, and Interstate 5, which all run through this wetland and divide it into restricted basins (SELC 2006). This division caused natural water flow and exchange between the fresh and salt water to be restricted with a reduction in water circulation and a loss of tidal flow (SELC 2008). Over time, this land alteration, in combination with increasing pollution from land uses has resulted in environmental impacts in the lagoon (SELC 2008, SELC 2006). Through a joint public-private partnership with the County of San Diego, state and federal agencies, and a local conservancy, the 1,000 acre San Elijo Lagoon Ecological Reserve was established in 1983. A need for restoration was identified in the early 1990s and efforts have included periodic dredging and reestablishment of tidal flow (SELC 2008).

**San Dieguito River Mouth Estuary:** The San Dieguito Lagoon is part of the San Dieguito River system, which is located in central San Diego County in the city of Del Mar (City of San Diego 2006). The lagoon extends to the Del Mar Beach, although it is often closed off by the beach berm. The watershed drainage area is 346 mi<sup>2</sup> (City of San Diego 2006). Surrounding land uses include undeveloped land (greatest area), open space, and urban areas (least area) (City of San Diego 2006). Land use impacts on San Dieguito Lagoon include urban runoff, historic sewage outfalls (closed in 1974), and sedimentation infill (JPA 2008, City of San Diego 2006). Various restoration efforts have taken place over the years to improve the lagoon's ecosystem health. In 1983, a dredge project removed the bottom substrate in the lagoon, which included sediment and sludge from the historic sewage outfalls (JPA 2008, City of San Diego 2006). In addition, a major restoration effort is underway as a result of Southern

California Edison's mitigation project. The project included dredging sediment deposits to increase the tidal flushing and keep the river outlet open to the ocean (SCE 2008).

**Los Peñasquitos Lagoon:** Los Peñasquitos Lagoon is 636 acres in size and located north of San Diego in between La Jolla and Del Mar (CERES 2007) and supports a broad range of plants, fish, birds, and invertebrates (California State Parks 2008). The majority of this lagoon is set aside as a state preserve and is part of Torrey Pine State Natural Reserve (California State Parks 2008, CERES 2007). Approximately 60,000 mi<sup>2</sup> of watershed drains into the lagoon from Carmel Creek and Los Peñasquitos Creek, as well as other small tributaries (California State Parks 2008). Shallow channels, open water, marshes, mudflats and tidal flats are the major habitats within the lagoon (California State Parks 2008). Los Peñasquitos Lagoon has been degraded over the years due to various land use changes and development (California State Parks 2008, CERES 2007). Similar to other estuaries in this region, Highway 1, the railroad, and the sewer system have restricted tidal influence in the lagoon (CERES 2007). Two sewage outfalls drain into Los Peñasquitos. Urban runoff has contributed to degraded water quality, while sedimentation has reduced ocean flow (California State Parks 2008). In response to the anthropogenic impacts on this lagoon's ecosystem, an enhancement program was developed in 1983 (California State Parks 2008). This program was able to make open space land acquisitions, dredge to restore tidal flow, restore habitat, and restore water flow under the infrastructure (California State Parks 2008, CERES 2007).

**San Diego Bay:** The third largest bay-estuary system in the State of California, after San Francisco Bay and Humboldt Bay, San Diego Bay encompasses 22 mi<sup>2</sup> and contains a number of diverse habitats, including tidal flats, salt marsh, and eelgrass beds, especially in the southern portion of the bay. These habitats support many fish species, including anchovy, topsmelt, stingray, bay ray, and sand bass (Allen et al. 2002). Several federally listed bird species also utilize the bay, including California Least Tern, Light-footed Clapper Rail, California Brown Pelican, Least Bell's Vireo, and Western Snowy Plover. Sweetwater Marsh, located adjacent to the southern portion of San Diego Bay, encompasses 316 miles of habitat and is designated as a National Wildlife Refuge. The marsh is one of a few locations where salt marsh bird's beak exists.

**Tijuana River Estuary:** This approximately 2,500 acre estuary was established as a National Estuarine Research Reserve in 1981 (O'Leary 2000). Over 370 bird species use the Tijuana Estuary, which is a key stopover location on the Pacific Flyway. These bird species include the endangered Light-footed Clapper Rail, California Least Tern, Least Bell's vireo and the California Brown Pelican. The Tijuana River Estuary is highly variable due to extreme changes in streamflow between wet and dry years. The habitats found within the estuary include beaches, dunes, mud flats, salt marshes and riparian zones. The estuary is home to at least 29 species of fish, including longjaw mudsucker, California killifish, and arrow goby (NOAA 2008a). The Tijuana River Estuary has had problems with water quality and sedimentation (Zedler 2001) and continues to be threatened by inflows from the Tijuana River containing urban, agricultural, and industrial pollutants (Project Clean Water 2008). In recent years, efforts have been made to establish the estuary as an international biosphere reserve.

### 3.1.4 Seagrass Beds

Seagrass habitats are extremely productive ecosystems that support an abundant and biologically diverse assemblage of aquatic fauna. The most common type of seagrass in estuaries and sheltered coastal bays in California is *Zostera marina*, or eelgrass (Abbott and Hollenberg 1976). A second variety of eelgrass occurs along the open coast in southern California, *Zostera pacifica*, which has wider blades than *Z. marina*. Eelgrass is a flowering plant that can form extensive and dense beds which provide a variety of important functions. The long leaves and dense, matted root system of eelgrass beds help prevent erosion and maintain stability in nearshore areas by slowing down water flow, which consequently enhances sediment accumulation and increases recruitment of animal species. Eelgrass beds also provide refuge, foraging, breeding, or nursery areas for invertebrates, fish, and birds (Hoffman, 1986). Eelgrass beds are known to be located in estuaries (e.g. Mugu Lagoon, San Diego Bay) and along the coast (e.g. on the Santa Barbara coast, off Santa Cruz Island) throughout the south coast study region. Mapped estuarine eelgrass beds total 18.1 mi<sup>2</sup>, or 0.8% of the study region area (Map 3.1-1).

The most common type of seagrass along the open coast is surfgrass (*Phyllospadix* spp.), also a flowering plant, which forms beds that fringe rocky coastline areas at the zero tide level to approximately ten to fifteen feet below the zero tide level. The distribution of surfgrass along the south coast study region has been mapped by the U.S. Minerals Management Service (1982) as linear segments that total 74 miles or 7.1% of the shoreline, located mostly off the northern Channel Islands as well as off Point Conception, and along the San Diego County coast. Surfgrass serves as an important habitat for a variety of fish and invertebrates, including the California spiny lobster (Engle 1979) as well as algae (Stewart and Myers 1980).

### 3.1.5 Kelp Forests

Two different types of kelp forests that occur in the state, giant kelp (*Macrocystis pyrifera*) and bull kelp (*Nereocystis lutea*), have been identified as separate habitats for the purposes of MPA siting, since each type of kelp forest hosts distinguishable assemblages of organisms. Kelp forests in the south coast study region are dominated by giant kelp, which forms dense canopy areas that are utilized by many kinds of marine life. Abundance of kelp varies seasonally over time and is affected by oceanographic conditions as well as storm activity, (Ebling et al. 1985, Harrold et al. 1988, Zimmerman and Robertson 1985). Areas where kelp tends to persist over multiple years can be seen in Map 3.1-1. Kelp harvest is allowed within the south coast study region and regulated by the CDFG. Section 5.5.1 contains more information on commercial kelp harvest within the study region.

Kelp forests form over rocky substrate and thus are somewhat limited within the study region. Areas of particular kelp abundance include Point Conception, Point Dume, Palos Verdes Point, La Jolla Point, Point Loma, and in the vicinity of the offshore islands, most notably San Miguel, Santa Rosa, San Nicolas, and San Clemente islands. Kelp forests within the study region are well-mapped at fine-scale resolution from aerial surveys conducted by CDFG in 1989, 1999,

2002, 2003, 2004, and 2005. Total kelp abundance in the study region over the 6 survey years has ranged from a low of 11.6 mi<sup>2</sup> in 1999 to a high of 31.1 mi<sup>2</sup> in 2004. Studies have shown that distribution and abundance of kelp beds are affected by climatic and oceanographic changes, as well as by grazer abundances, fishing and other anthropogenic influences (Pearse and Hines 1979, Tegner et al. 1997, Tegner and Dayton 2000). Grazers, such as urchins, can play a large role in the abundance and distribution of kelp and their populations can be directly affected by both predation by animals such as sea otters and California spiny lobsters, and by urchin fishing (Tegner & Dayton 2000). Lobsters, which also are commercially fished, play an important role in limiting urchin populations and, therefore indirectly affect the abundance of kelp. In the south coast study region, sea otters exist in small numbers and thus do not significantly affect the abundance of kelp.

Typically, giant kelp flourishes in wave-exposed areas of nutrient-rich, cool water ranging from 20 to 100 feet deep and generally occurs on bedrocks, boulders, and reefs (North 1971a). The kelp attaches to rocky areas on the sea floor by means of a root-like structure called a holdfast. Under optimal conditions with high nutrient levels and low ocean temperatures (50° to 60° F), kelp fronds can grow up to two feet per day (Clendenning 1960). Fronds can reach a length of more than 150 feet, and large plants can have more than 100 fronds. As the fronds mature, die, and break away, young fronds take their place. Although giant kelp plants can live for up to 7 years, individual fronds last for only about 6 to 9 months, and individual blades live only about 4 months (Rosenthal et al. 1974, Dayton et al. 1984, North 1971b).

Kelp forests are one of the most productive marine habitats along the coast of California and provide habitat, feeding grounds, and nursery areas for many species of fishes and invertebrates (Foster and Schiel 1985). Juveniles of many nearshore rockfish species occur in the midwater or upper kelp canopy (Allen et al. 2006). Juveniles and adults of many nearshore rockfish species, as well as cabezon, greenlings, lingcod, and many other species, associate with bottom habitats in kelp forests (Allen et al. 2006).

While most giant kelp is established on hard or rocky substrate, which allows newly-formed haptera (root-like structure) to attach, there have been documented cases of kelp utilizing polychaete worm holes as substrate in the soft sediment (Neushul 1971, Kelco 1992). Once the algae dies, the attached holdfast remains, leaving a substrate for more kelp to grow from (Neushul 1971). Large giant kelp beds of this nature have grown in the nearshore water off of Santa Barbara County, and existed there until the early 1980s. After large storm events from the 1982/1983 El Niño, most of the giant kelp was ripped out of this area and this unique soft sediment kelp community was nearly wiped out (McPeak and Barilotti, 1993). Subsequent restorations attempts where performed in this area and are described below. Patches of giant kelp near Santa Barbara can still be found growing out of worm tubes, but these patches are fairly sparse in size and abundance. The canopy from this habitat has not, to date, recovered to historic proportions.

During the 1950s and 1960s, forests of giant kelp that were once productive off San Diego, Orange, and Los Angeles Counties, began to deteriorate. Several factors may be attributed to this decline. These factors include: pollution from domestic and industrial wastes, increased



water turbidity from urban runoff, increased sea urchin grazing caused by a reduction in predators, storms, low nutrients and high temperatures caused by El Niño conditions (Wilson and McPeak, 1983, Tarpley and Glantz, 1992). In an attempt to reverse the decline of southern California kelp forests, kelp restoration was undertaken in 1963. The first groups to do this were the Scripps Institution of Oceanography and Kelco Inc. (a kelp harvesting company), who worked collaboratively to develop techniques to protect and restore kelp forests. Their first efforts were at Point Loma in San Diego County and they proved successful (North, 1967). Kelp canopies at Point Loma increased from approximately 60 acres to nearly 2,000 acres (North, 1968). The dramatic recovery at Point Loma was probably the result of several factors, including restoration, changes in water quality, and changes in oceanographic conditions (Wilson and McPeak, 1983). Kelco continued restoration work in San Diego County after 1968, and this work continued through mid-1993.

Other organizations also have made efforts to restore kelp forest in southern California. Past restoration efforts have occurred in the following locations with varied success rates:

- Del Mar, San Diego County
- Between Newport Beach and Laguna Beach, Orange County
- Reef Point, Orange County
- Along the inside of the Long Beach Breakwater, Los Angeles County
- Palos Verdes Peninsula, Los Angeles County
- Carpenteria Reef, Santa Barbara County
- Tajiguas Kelp Habitat, Santa Barbara County
- Gaviota and Hope Ranch, Santa Barbara County

Currently, there are two active kelp restoration projects in the study region. The Santa Monica Bay Keepers have been actively restoring the kelp beds off of Escondido Beach in Malibu and Palos Verdes Peninsula, Los Angeles County since 1996. Additionally, MBC Applied Environmental Services began restoring some of the kelp beds in Laguna Beach, from 2001 to 2005. After deterioration occurred in the beds in 2006, MBC has continued the restoration project since 2007. A third project by the Algalita Marine Research Foundation, is waiting for approval from the CDFG to restore an area of the beds off of Crystal Cove, Orange County and to continue past work performed along the inside of the Long Beach Breakwater.

Several techniques have been used to redevelop and restore kelp beds or create artificial reefs that have either been lost or destroyed by natural or manmade processes. Some of these techniques include; sea urchin control, kelp transplanting, competitive seaweed control, suitable substrate addition, and securing plants into the sediment (as in the case with the kelp beds near Santa Barbara). Kelp beds near Santa Barbara are unique because most of them grow on sand. As previously mentioned these beds were destroyed by storms, warm water, and low nutrient conditions associated with the 1982-84 El Niño (McPeak and Barilotti, 1993). The project was carried out through 1993 and the kelp transplants were able to reach canopy height and were considered healthy with instances of natural recruitment occurring to the transplanted areas (D. Craig Barilotti, Sea Foam Enterprises, pers. comm.). The lack of

funding ended these projects in 1993 and further monitoring in 1997 had revealed that most of the work had been lost due to urchin grazing (D. Craig Barilotti, Sea Foam Enterprises, pers. comm.).

Kelp also can be restored or introduced into areas through the use of properly designed artificial reefs. Artificial reefs, such as Mission Beach, Topanga, and Pitas Point, may be designed to provide habitat for kelp. All three reefs listed above have produced kelp canopies. In 1999, Southern California Edison constructed an extensive experimental reef designed to recruit and sustain kelp canopies off San Mateo Point as part of an agreement to mitigate for canopies lost due to the operation of the San Onofre Nuclear Generating Station. This experiment proved to be successful and has led to a larger reef currently being constructed from San Mateo Point to the San Clemente Pier. The reef will use 125,000 tons of volcanic rock and is expected to be 2.5 miles long (more information on artificial reefs can be found in section 5.11.2).

### **3.1.6 Hard Bottom/Rocky Reefs**

Hard and soft bottom habitats have been mapped at a fine scale (3 meter or better cell resolution) for most of the study region, and these data will be available in the fall of 2008. Currently, coarse scale data (Greene et al. 2004) are available that show the extent of hard and soft bottom habitats (Map 3.1-2). Fugro Pelagos, Inc. and California State University Monterey Bay Seafloor Mapping Lab have collected fine-scale substrata data during the summer of 2008. For the mainland coast and Santa Catalina and San Clemente islands, vessel-based multi-beam sonar was used to collect data to a shoreward depth of 10 meters, depending on shoreline navigation hazards and kelp. These data will be classified as either rocky or soft substrata by using rugosity analysis and divided into one of four depth categories (as defined by the MLPA Science Advisory Team). In some locations, including San Nicolas Island and parts of the northern Channel Islands, coarse-scale data from Greene et al. (2004) will be used to approximate hard and soft bottom habitats. Some areas of the northern Channel Islands, particularly in and around MPAs, have been mapped by the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) using side scan sonar (G. Cochrane USGS). In some cases, proxies such as presence of kelp are used to identify rocky substrata in near-shore areas.

Rocky substrata are much less common than soft substrata in the south coast study region at all depth zones, covering just over one-quarter of the study region (Table 3.1-5). The species that associate with hard bottoms differ greatly with depth and type of substratum; the amount of topographic relief changes with gravel, cobble, boulders, and smooth rock outcrop (Cross and Allen 1993). Rocky reefs provide hard substratum to which kelp and other alga can attach in the nearshore zone (<100 feet depth). In addition, many invertebrates such as deep sea corals, sponges, and anemones require hard substratum for attachment in deeper waters (Engle and Coyer 1981). In addition to attached organisms, the structural complexity of rocky reefs provides habitat and protection for mobile invertebrates and fish (Carr 1991, CDFG 2001c). Hard bottom habitats in each depth zone are considered by the science advisory team to be separate habitats due to differences in associated species (CDFG 2005a). In addition, the ecological assemblages associated with rocky habitats also can be influenced by the type

of rock (example, sedimentary versus granitic reefs or size of substrata, such as cobble versus boulder; Pondella et al. 2005). Rocky reefs in each of these geologically-different zones are considered by the science advisory team to support distinct ecological assemblages (CDFG 2005a).

**Table 3.1-5: Approximate amount of hard and soft bottom habitats by depth zone in south coast study region**

<b>Depth Zone</b>	<b>Hard Substrata<sup>1</sup> (mi<sup>2</sup>) (% of depth zone area)</b>	<b>Soft Substrata<sup>1</sup> (mi<sup>2</sup>) (% of depth zone area)</b>
0-30 meters	190.3 (29.0%)	466.6 (71.0%)
30-100 meters	200.2 (20.4%)	780.1 (79.6%)
100-200 meters	101.1 (41.8%)	140.6 (58.2%)
>200 meters	97.1 (23.5%)	317.0 (76.5%)
<b>Total</b>	<b>588.7 (25.7%)</b>	<b>1704.3 (74.3%)</b>

Note: <sup>1</sup> These estimates based on Greene et al. 2004 data which tend to overestimate the abundance of rocky reef habitats. Fine-scale data have been collected in the summer of 2004 and will be available in the fall of 2008.

A number of artificial reef structures exist within the south coast study region (Map 3.1-2). These artificial reefs are designed to mimic rocky reef habitats and have been constructed from a variety of materials. More information on artificial reefs is included in section 5.11.2.

### 3.1.7 Sandy/Soft Bottoms

Soft bottom habitats are the predominant habitat on the continental shelf and slope throughout the south coast study region (Dailey et al. 1993). Nearshore and offshore environments include soft bottom habitats in areas that range from flat expanses to slopes and basin areas. Soft bottom habitats lack the structural complexity and relief of hard-bottom substrata (Schiff et al. 2003, Allen et al. 2006). Despite the flat and seemingly featureless physical characteristics of soft bottom habitats, they can vary depending on the type of sediment (Schiff et al. 2003). For example, sediments made up of silt and clay are high in organic carbon and polychaetes and gastropods dominate the infauna. Whereas, sediment comprised mainly of sand particles have less organic carbon and the most common infauna are ostracods, amphipods, and pelecypods (Dailey et al. 1993). Soft bottom habitats can be highly dynamic in nature as sediments shift due to wave action, bottom currents, and geological processes.

Soft bottom habitats are more common, yet less diverse than hard bottom habitats at all depth zones, covering nearly three-quarters of the entire study region (Allen et al. 1998) (Table 3.1-5, Map 3.1-2). Species richness is lower in soft bottom habitats compared to hard bottom habitats, in part due to the limited features on sandy bottoms (Allen et al. 1998). Soft bottom species are generally bottom dwelling invertebrates and fishes, and many have special adaptations for the habitat, such as flattened bodies and concealing coloration (Allen et al. 2006). The distribution of species in soft bottom habitats is approximately 80% crustaceans, 10% microbenthos, 5% demersal fish, and 5% macrobenthos (Dailey et al. 1993). Soft-bottom

habitats in different depth zones should be considered separate habitats (CDFG 2005a, Schiff et al. 2000). The population density lowers with depth, while the standing crop increases with depth; this makes for unique species assemblages at the various depths (Allen et al. 2006, Schiff et al. 2000, Allen and Herbinson 1991). Anthropogenic discharge has been associated with the degraded health and quality of soft bottom habitat and studies have found demersal fish are negatively impacted by outfall discharge (Schiff et al. 2000) (more information on outfalls can be found in section 4.3).

### **3.1.8 Underwater Pinnacles**

Pinnacles are defined within the California Master Plan for Marine Protected Areas (CDFG 2008d) as a habitat to be considered within the MLPA process. Pinnacles are vertical rocky features that are tens of meters in diameter and height, with a cone-shaped geometry. Pinnacles can be distinguished from large boulders by their geologic origin. Pinnacles are generally a product of in-place erosional processes acting on rocky outcrops, while boulders are the result of erosional processes in other locations and resulting movement of large rocks (G. Greene, Moss Landing Marine Laboratory, pers. comm). Pinnacles are located in state waters along the south coast, especially near the Channel Islands, but have not been well mapped; they can be important bathymetric features that attract certain fish and invertebrate species (Carr, 1991, CDFG, 2001). On substrata maps (Map 3.1-2), pinnacles in the study region are not categorized separately from other hard bottom habitats.

### **3.1.9 Submarine Canyons**

Several submarine canyons are located within the south coast study region. The most significant canyons are located in waters near Point Hueneme, Point Mugu, Point Dume, Santa Monica Bay, Palos Verdes Point, Huntington/Newport Beach, La Jolla, and at the Channel Islands. Submarine canyons provide areas of high bathymetric complexity, support deep water communities, and affect local and regional circulation patterns. Offshore canyons provide habitat for young rockfish and flatfish that settle in nearshore waters to grow and move offshore as adults. In addition, offshore canyons and other bathymetric features are important foraging areas for seabirds and marine mammals (Yen et al. 2004).

### **3.1.10 Offshore Rocks and Islands**

Southern California has several large offshore islands, as well as numerous offshore rocks, that play a significant role within the south coast study region. Eight major islands, as well as many smaller rocks and islets, are located within state waters within the south coast study region and are described below. While offshore rocks and islands are not identified as a separate habitat within the California Master Plan for Marine Protected Areas (CDFG 2008d), these areas do represent unique areas within the study region. Some of these islands and offshore rocks are described below.

**The Channel Islands:** The Channel Islands comprise two distinct biogeographic regions: San Miguel, Santa Rosa, the west side of Santa Cruz and San Nicolas islands are bathed in the cooler, nutrient-rich waters of the California Current and are more characteristic of the Oregonian biogeographic province. The east end of Santa Cruz Island and Anacapa, Santa Barbara, Santa Catalina and San Clemente islands are bathed in warmer waters of the California Countercurrent and share a unique suite of associated species.

Waters surrounding the Channel Islands are utilized by a number of consumptive and non-consumptive users. Top commercial fisheries in the Channel Islands include market squid, red sea urchin, California spiny lobster, rock crab, sea cucumber, and rockfish (more in section 5.4). Both private vessels as well as Commercial Passenger Fishing Vessels (CPFVs or "party boats") access the Channel Islands targeting calico bass, white seabass, halibut, barracuda, yellowtail, as well as a variety of rockfish (more in section 5.6). Consumptive activities make up 91.4% of all recreational activities at the Channel Islands (CINMS 2007). Non-consumptive ocean activities are also popular in the Channel Islands and include kayaking, whale watching, wildlife viewing, diving and snorkeling. Several companies offer trips from the mainland coast to watch gray, blue, and humpback whales as well as dolphins and other cetaceans (more in section 5.9).

The five northern Channel Islands, including San Miguel, Santa Rosa, Santa Cruz, Anacapa and Santa Barbara islands, were designated as a National Park and waters surrounding the islands up to 6 nautical miles offshore were designated as a National Marine Sanctuary in 1980. In 2002, the California Fish and Game Commission established a network of state MPAs at the five islands within the sanctuary and these MPAs were implemented in April 2003. In 2006 and 2007, NOAA implemented the second phase of this MPA planning process to include areas within federal waters, consistent with the original plan for a network of MPAs within the sanctuary. A five-year evaluation of ten state marine reserves and two state marine conservation areas was completed in 2008 by a group of scientists coordinated through the efforts of the CDFG, PISCO, Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS) and Channel Islands National Park. Although these MPAs were established outside of the MLPA Initiative process, they will be included in an evaluation of existing MPAs in the south coast study region and their contribution to the MLPA goals will be considered.

**San Miguel Island:** Located in Santa Barbara County, San Miguel is the westernmost of the Channel Islands and is 14.5 mi<sup>2</sup> in size. San Miguel is closest of the Channel Islands to Point Conception. There is a large marine mammal haulout at Point Bennett and seabird breeding colonies at Prince Island, Castle Rock and Richardson Rock. The island is surrounded by submerged pinnacles covered with invertebrates.

**Santa Rosa Island:** Located in Santa Barbara County, Santa Rosa is the second largest of the Channel Islands at about 83 mi<sup>2</sup> in size. There is a large reef on the north side of the island at Talcott Shoal. The island is known for coastal terraces, sandy beaches, and the largest coastal lagoon in the Channel Islands, as well as a Torrey pine grove onshore. Sandy beaches on Santa Rosa provide breeding habitat for the Western Snowy Plover.

**Santa Cruz Island:** Located in Santa Barbara County, Santa Cruz is the largest of the Channel Islands at over 96 mi<sup>2</sup> in size. The island lies in a transition zone between cool waters of the California Current and warm waters of the California Countercurrent. There are large sea caves along cliffs on the island and a high degree of recreational use due to a large number of anchorages.

**Anacapa Island:** Anacapa Island, which lies within Ventura County, is the Channel Island closest to the mainland coast at a distance of 12 miles and is just over 1 mi<sup>2</sup> in size. Giant seabass aggregate on north side of island and California Brown Pelican, Xantus's Murrelet, and Western Gull have breeding colonies on the island. In addition, 130 seacaves on Anacapa provide nesting sites for many birds.

**Santa Barbara Island:** Located in Ventura County, Santa Barbara Island is the smallest of the Channel Islands at 639 acres (about 1 mi<sup>2</sup>). The island hosts a California sea lion rookery and over 11 species of breeding seabirds, including California Brown Pelican and Xantus's Murrelet.

**Santa Catalina Island:** Located 22 miles off of Los Angeles, Santa Catalina Island is approximately 75 mi<sup>2</sup> in size. Santa Catalina Island is one of three islands in the archipelago that is not part of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (Catalina Island Conservancy 2008). However, it is an important visitor location with several permanent settlements located on the island, including Avalon and Two Harbors. Macrofauna around Santa Catalina Island are warm-water species, unlike the northern Channel Islands, where cold-water species are more typical (Dailey et al. 2003, Seapy and Littler 1980). Catalina Island also has the largest offshore salt marsh, Catalina Harbor, of the seven marshes found along the islands in the south coast study region (Dailey et al. 1993).

**San Nicolas Island and San Clemente Island:** Both San Nicolas and San Clemente islands are owned by the U.S. Navy, and are about 22 mi<sup>2</sup> and 57 mi<sup>2</sup> in size, respectively. While both islands are more remote than the other six Channel Islands, they are utilized by both commercial and recreational fishing operations. The deepest point in the study region is located off the northwest corner of San Clemente Island. Aside from Catalina Island, San Clemente is the only other island with macroinvertebrates communities dominated by warm-water species (Seapy and Littler 1980, 313-319). San Nicolas Island, located between the warm- and cold-water sites, has different macrofauna at various sites around the island (Seapy and Littler 1980).

**Other rocks/islets:** Statewide, over 20,000 islands, rocks, exposed reefs and pinnacles are included in the California Coastal National Monument, managed by the Bureau of Land Management (BLM). The monument was designated by presidential proclamation in January of 2000 and extends along the entire California coast (1,100 miles). The monument was designed to protect the biological and geologic values of offshore rocks and islets and the important forage and breeding grounds of associated marine birds and mammals. Some of the notable rocks and islets within the study region include: Richardson Rock, Castle Rock, Prince Island, Bee Rock, Gull Island, Arch Rock, Cat Rock, Shag Rock, and Sutil Island.

### **3.1.11 Oceanographic Habitats**

Oceanographic patterns have significant effects on ecological assemblages, productivity, recruitment, and a number of other biogeographic characteristics. For this reason, the California Master Plan for Marine Protection Areas (CDFG 2008d) recommends that oceanographic conditions be considered in determining unique characteristics of a study region. Specifically, upwelling centers, retention areas, and freshwater plumes are three oceanographic features that will be considered in MPA planning in the MLPA process.

Southern California has particularly complicated oceanographic patterns. The study region is located in the northern portion of the Southern California Bight, which extends from Point Conception to Baja California in Mexico (Dailey 1993, Love et al. 1999). Significant research has been conducted relating to the complex oceanographic conditions of the Southern California Bight. The Southern California Bight is located within the greater context of the California Current LME, which extends from Vancouver Island to Baja California. The California Current LME is a very productive ecosystem fueled by nutrient-rich upwelling which supports blooms of phytoplankton that form the foundation for a food web that includes many species of invertebrates, fish, marine mammals and seabirds. This upwelling occurs in the northern portion of the study region and is centered at Point Conception. During upwelling season (March through September), cold, nutrient-rich waters are brought to the surface near Point Conception and move eastward along the western edge of the Santa Barbara Channel (Hickey 2000, Atkinson et al. 1986). These nutrient-rich waters provide for diverse ecosystems, fueled by a productive pelagic food web that includes phytoplankton, krill, coastal pelagic species (anchovies, sardines, squid, etc), fish, seabirds, marine mammals, and sharks. Upwelling does not play a major role in the southern portion of the study region, where coastal geography and wind patterns minimize its occurrence.

Point Conception, located in the northern part of the study region, marks the boundary where the cool California Current meets the relatively warmer California Countercurrent. The confluence of these two oceanographic currents marks the interface between two biogeographic provinces, each with distinct biota and ecosystems: the Oregonian province to the north (and extending to parts to the Channel Islands) and the San Diegan (or Californian) province to the south (NCCOS 2005). The meeting of the California Current and the California Countercurrent contribute to a diverse array of marine life at Point Conception. The coastline trends eastward along the Santa Barbara coastline from this point. This portion of the coast is relatively protected from ocean swells by the northern Channel Islands, and thus hosts unique marine life such as soft bottom kelp.

The majority of the south coast study region is dominated by a counter-clockwise circulating gyre called the Southern California Eddy. This oceanographic feature is comprised of a complicated set of seasonally varying currents, but generally forms when the southward-moving California Current bends shoreward near San Diego and northward along the Southern California Bight as the Southern California Counter Current (Jones 1971). Superimposed upon this general pattern, several smaller currents and eddies exist. The Southern California Eddy is most well developed in the summer/fall months and less developed during the winter/spring

(Lynn and Simpson 1987, Hickey 1993) and moves at average speeds of 10-20 centimeters per second (Oey 1999). In addition, the smaller eddy and current patterns also vary seasonally. Eddies in some portions of the study region may function as larval retention areas.

While the majority of the study region contains the relatively warm water of the Southern California Eddy, the area around the northwest Channel Islands is influenced by cooler water of the California Current similar to the central California coast. The waters surrounding the mostly rocky islands are highly productive and support diverse species, in part due to the mixing between this colder water from the California Current in the western portion of the islands and the warmer water from the Southern California Eddy in the eastern portion of the islands. The unique orientation of the mainland coast in addition to the existence of these offshore islands also affects the mainland wave climate, which may in turn affect ecological assemblages.

Following storm events, freshwater plumes develop and persist for many days. These freshwater plumes play a significant role to the south coast study region oceanographic context (Warrick et al. 2007). These plumes of water can be visibly tracked with aerial imagery and contribute freshwater, sediments, nutrients, and pollutants to nearshore ecosystems and can be correlated with fluctuations in biologic productivity (Otero and Siegel 2004). Depending on a variety of factors, including magnitude of the storm event, watershed size and associated land uses, freshwater plumes in southern California can cover hundreds of square kilometers over a period of 1-2 days and persist for days or even weeks (Nezlin et al. 2005).

### **3.2 Important Regional Species**

A brief discussion of regional species likely to benefit from establishment of MPAs, species currently described as depleted or overfished, fished species of interest, and species that receive special protections due to their legal status (protected, threatened, or endangered) is provided below.

#### **3.2.1 Species likely to benefit from MPAs**

The MLPA requires that species likely to benefit from MPAs be identified. The identification of these species will contribute to the identification of habitat areas that will support achieving the goals of the MLPA. The SAT appointed in 2008 for the south coast process will review and refine the "list of species likely to benefit from MPAs" developed during previous processes, in order to make the list applicable to the south coast study region. This list will be included as Appendix II(a). As new information regarding species likely to benefit becomes available, this list and accompanying rationale will be updated by the SAT. Species on this list must occur within the study region and possess life history characteristics that allow the species to benefit from protection in MPAs. Species on the list may also benefit from protection from human impacts such as direct take, take as bycatch, or habitat degradation.



### 3.2.2 Depleted and Overfished Species

This section describes depleted and overfished species that occur within the south coast study region. When describing these species, several definitions of "depleted" and "overfished" may be considered.

The MLPA refers to the term "depleted" in reference to marine life populations under "Program Goals" in Fish and Game Code (FGC) §2853(b)(2). However, additional definitions of this term exist. The federal Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) has defined "depleted" as follows: "...a species or population stock is below its optimum sustainable population; ... or a species or population stock is listed as an endangered species or a threatened species under the federal Endangered Species Act (ESA)" (16 USC §1362(1)). Black's Law Dictionary defines "deplete" as "to reduce or lessen, as by use, exhaustion, or waste" (McKnight v. U.S., C.C.A.Cal., 78 F.2d 931, 933). The equivalent term "depressed" is found in the Marine Life Management Act (FGC §90-99.5) which includes the following definition of a "depressed" fishery: "...the condition of a marine fishery that exhibits declining fish population abundance levels below those consistent with maximum sustainable yield" (FGC, §90.7). Similarly, the Pacific Fishery Management Council defines "overfished" as "Any stock or stock complex whose size is sufficiently small that a change in management practices is required to achieve an appropriate level and rate of rebuilding." (PFMC 2008).

It should be noted that many species have not yet had their populations assessed. General information on what is known about the status of harvested species can be found at [www.dfg.ca.gov/mrd/status/](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/mrd/status/) (CDFG 2001a and CDFG 2004a). In addition, information on species managed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council can be found at <http://www.pcouncil.org/groundfish/gfcurgmt.html>.

Several species that may be considered to be "depleted or overfished" under the definitions provided above are described below.

**Groundfish (rockfishes, flatfishes, etc):** The federal Pacific Coast Groundfish Fishery Management Plan, implemented by the Pacific Fishery Management Council in 1982, includes more than 90 species of bottom-dwelling marine fishes. Species and species groups managed under the Pacific Coast Groundfish Fishery Management Plan include all rockfishes (about 60 species), sablefish, thornyheads, lingcod, Dover sole and other flatfishes (not including California or Pacific halibut), Pacific whiting, and some sharks and rays. For federally managed fisheries, any stock assessed to be between 25% and 40% of unfished biomass is managed under "precautionary zone" management, where harvest rates are reduced to slow the depletion rate. Species currently managed under precautionary zone measures include cabezon, petrale sole and sablefish.

The Pacific Fishery Management Council adopted new rebuilding analyses for seven rockfish species (*Sebastes* spp.) that are, or were previously, designated as "overfished" (less than 25% of their unexploited spawning population size remains). All seven of these species are known to occur in the south coast study region, but only four of these commonly occur:

bocaccio, canary, widow, and cowcod rockfishes. Cowcod are found from Baja California to Oregon, while bocaccio, widow, and canary rockfishes ranges extend to Alaska. Juvenile bocaccio tend to settle in kelp beds after their pelagic larval stage and move to deeper rocky reefs (60-1550 feet) as adults. Most bocaccio were caught at depths of 250-750 feet. Juvenile canary rockfish also tend to stay closer to the surface before moving to deeper benthic habitats as adults. Canary rockfish are most abundant around depths of 500 feet, but go as deep as 900 feet. Widow rockfish juveniles stay near the surface after their pelagic larval stage, and move to deeper waters as adults. Most widow rockfish were caught at depths of 450 to 750 feet but have been found as deep as 1050 feet. Adult widow rockfish of the same size class tend to move together from area to area, and show seasonal movement among adjacent grounds. Cowcod juveniles prefer depths around 68 feet and move to rocky reefs from 165 to 1,000 feet as adults. All four of these species of rockfish take years to reach reproductive maturity. The rebuilding process for most “overfished” rockfish species to reach healthy population levels is expected to require many years or even decades (CDFG 2001a).

The commercial fishery for these species is generally regulated by a combination of allowable fishing depths, trip limits, permit and gear restrictions, and season adjustments to prevent catches from exceeding harvest limits. The recreational fishery for these species is regulated using bag limits, seasons, area closures, and depth restrictions.

Cowcod, and other “overfished” federal groundfish species, are protected with very low harvest limits (bycatch only), which constrains fishing opportunities for other species found in association with the “overfished” species. Two Cowcod Conservation Areas were created off southern California (50CFR §660.390(b)) to further protect cowcod populations. Bottom fishing is prohibited in these two conservation areas, one of which includes the state waters surrounding Santa Barbara and San Nicolas islands. Depth-based Rockfish Conservation Areas, implemented in 2003, continue to be used to protect species of concern by closing the primary depth range of the species to groundfish fishing (Map 8.2-2). The Rockfish Conservation Area closures are expected to remain in place until “overfished” stocks are rebuilt or a new management approach is adopted. The Rockfish Conservation Area depth boundaries have been modified to accommodate sustainable fisheries as much as possible and the depth closures change throughout the year to increase or restrict access as needed.

**Steelhead Trout:** Steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) is a sea-run (anadromous) form of rainbow trout and is a popular gamefish in California. Steelhead migrate to the ocean where they usually spend 2-6 years before returning to freshwater to spawn. Age at first migration varies, and can be as young as <1 year though some steelhead never migrate to the ocean. Known spawning populations of steelhead are found in coastal rivers and streams from San Mateo Creek in San Diego County to the Smith River near the Oregon border. The present distribution of steelhead in California has been greatly reduced from historical levels. The decline of California steelhead appears to be part of a more prevalent West Coast steelhead decline. This decline prompted NOAA’s National Marine Fisheries Service to list nearly all of California’s steelhead populations under the Endangered Species Act. Statewide, the major factors contributing to steelhead decline in California include freshwater habitat loss and degradation, which has resulted mainly from three factors: inadequate stream flows, blocked

access to historic spawning and rearing areas due to dams, and human activities that discharge sediment and debris into watercourses (CDFG 2001a).

Southern California steelhead (those occurring south of San Francisco Bay) is listed as an endangered species. Southern steelhead were formerly found in coastal drainages as far south as the Santo Domingo River in northern Baja California and were present in many streams and rivers of southern California. Major adverse impacts to southern steelhead include urbanization, water impoundment and diversion, and invasive plant species (CDFG 2007a).

**Giant Sea Bass:** Within California, giant sea bass (*Stereolepis gigas*) are rarely found north of Point Conception. Adult giant sea bass seem to prefer the edges of nearshore rocky reefs at depths of 35 to 130 feet. Giant sea bass reach a maximum size of 7.45 feet and 563 pounds. Based on estimated growth-rates, they take six years to reach 30 pounds, 10 years to reach 100 pounds, and 15 years to reach 150 pounds. Male fish have been observed to be mature at 40 pounds, and females at 50 to 60 pounds. Giant sea bass are susceptible to overfishing and suffered serious decline in numbers because they grow slowly and mature at a relatively old age (CDFG 2001a).

A 1981 law prohibited the take of giant sea bass for any purpose, with the exception that commercial fishermen could retain and sell two fish per trip. This law was amended to one fish per trip in 1988, if caught incidentally in a gillnet or trammel net. Incidental mortality of giant sea bass was likely further reduced with the banning of inshore gillnets from state waters, though the California population of giant sea bass remains well below historical levels. Anecdotal information suggests that numbers may be beginning to rebound under current management measures (CDFG 2001a). Currently, giant sea bass may not be taken by recreational anglers in California waters. All fish taken incidentally to other fishing activities must be immediately returned to the waters where taken (CDFG 2001a).

**Abalone:** Seven species of abalone (*Haliotis* spp.) are found in California: red, white, black, green, pink, pinto, and flat. CDFG applies the term “deplete” to five species of abalone within the south coast study region. The California Legislature closed the commercial and recreational abalone fishery south of San Francisco Bay in 1997 due to a decline in the populations and the progression of disease (CDFG 2008a).

The California Fish and Game Commission adopted the Abalone Recovery and Management Plan (ARMP) in December 2005. The ARMP outlines restoration strategies for depleted abalone stocks in central and southern California and describes the management approach to be used for northern California red abalone and eventually for other recovered abalone stocks. Abalone data and survey information provided below comes from the ARMP and the Fisheries Forum Annual Report for 2008.

**Southern Red Abalone:** These abalones, whose range extends from Oregon into Baja California, are exclusively subtidal in southern California, and associated with rocky kelp habitat (CDFG 2001a). The ARMP allows for the potential reopening of abalone fisheries at specific locations. The San Miguel Island stock of red abalone is first up for consideration (CDFG 2005a). Accordingly, the CDFG has initiated the necessary evaluation of San Miguel

Island red abalone to help inform future decisions by the California Fish and Game Commission, and has appointed members of an Abalone Advisory Group to support this work. Assessment surveys began in 2005 as part of the initial task of monitoring population recovery under the draft ARMP. Recent size frequency data from surveys show that red abalone populations on the south portion of San Miguel Island already meet the broad size range recovery criterion outlined in the ARMP, but other nearby populations at Santa Rosa and Santa Cruz islands do not yet meet this first criterion.

**White Abalone:** These abalones range from Point Conception to central Baja California, Mexico and usually inhabit depths greater than 75 feet. They prefer deep rocky bottoms from 60 to 200 feet often associated with deep living kelp beds. They feed on bacteria, diatoms and kelp (CDFG 2001a). Baby Abalone Recruitment Trackers deployed at Santa Cruz Island have been monitored at least once a year since their deployment in 2004, but no white abalone have yet been seen. A 2007 research cruise around Anacapa Island, Santa Barbara Island and the east end of Santa Cruz Island found no live white abalone. White abalone is listed as a federally endangered species under the Endangered Species Act.

**Black Abalone:** This species is found from Oregon to southern Baja California. Black abalone habitats include rocky intertidal areas (to depths of 20 feet in southern California), often within the high energy surf zone. Adult black abalone congregate on rocks and in tidepools (CDFG 2001a). Black abalone is listed as a species of concern by the National Marine Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries). A black abalone status review report was drafted and a final version will be out in the spring of 2008. Black abalone populations in southern California remain severely depressed since the closure of the fishery in 1993. However recent evidence shows some recruitment and potential recovery at San Nicolas and Santa Cruz Islands. Current restoration research efforts have been focused on finding some sort of genetic-based disease resistance to Withering Syndrome, a disease that has devastated once abundant black abalone populations, and successful captive propagation of the species for recovery out-planting.

**Pink Abalone and Green Abalone:** Both these species are found on open coast shallow rocky habitat from Point conception to Bahia Magdalena, Baja California, Mexico. Pink abalone and green abalone feed on algae, and pink abalone are found at greater depths than green abalone, which center around 10 to 20 feet deep (CDFG 2001a). Surveys were conducted at Santa Catalina Island in 2005 and more southern island sites at Santa Catalina and San Clemente islands were surveyed in 2007. Size frequency data at the survey sites showed evidence of recent reproduction and recruitment success for green abalone. Based on these surveys, it appears that achieving the first criterion level of recovery in the ARMP will take a considerable time period. Surveys at the southern Channel Islands will be completed by the winter of 2008. CDFG will begin an aggregation study of pink and green abalone to monitor their growth rates, movement and survival at Santa Catalina, San Clemente, and Santa Cruz islands in summer 2008.

In 2007, an extensive effort to survey the Channel Islands began and will continue until the fall of 2008. Surveys for pink and green abalone were conducted mostly at Anacapa and Santa Cruz islands, and revealed low densities of abalone. Higher densities of pink abalone were

found at the east side of Santa Cruz Island. Although these densities were far below the level of recovery, this population may be in the process of recovering.

For more information on abalone, go to CDFG's Marine Region website:

<http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/armpl/index.asp>

<http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/abalone.asp>

### 3.2.3 Fished Species of Interest

Commercial and recreational fisheries are an important component to California's economy. Below, some of the species that make up these fisheries are discussed. More information on commercial and recreational fisheries can be found in 5.4 and 5.6 respectively.

#### Fish

**Nearshore Finfish:** CDFG uses the term "finfish" to define fish that are aquatic vertebrates of the super class Pisces, breathing by gills throughout life, and having limbs in the form of fins. The California Nearshore Fishery Management Plan guides the management of 19 nearshore finfish species: rockfishes (black, black and yellow, blue, brown, calico, China, copper, gopher, grass, kelp, olive, quillback, and treefish), and cabezon, California scorpionfish, kelp and rock greenlings, California sheephead, and monkey-face prickleback. Seventeen of these 19 species are also included in the federal Pacific Coast Groundfish Fishery Management Plan (CDFG 2008a)

A restricted access program began in 2003 for the commercial nearshore fishery that affected the take of 10 specific nearshore species. The shallow nearshore group consists of: black-and-yellow, China, gopher, grass, and kelp rockfishes, kelp and rock greenlings, California scorpionfish, California sheephead, and cabezon. A total statewide participant capacity goal of 61 permits was specified for these 10 species though, as of 2007, 186 permits remain with 155 of the permits actively fished (annual landings of permit species exceeded 100 pounds). A restrictive permit program also began for eight species of deeper nearshore rockfishes: black, blue, brown, calico, copper, olive, quillback, and treefish rockfishes. The number of permits for these species decreased from 292 in 2003 to 239 permits in 2007 with 105 of the permits actively fished (annual landings of permit species exceeded 100 pounds).

**California Sheephead:** The California sheephead (*Semicossyphus pulcher*) is a rocky reef species found to depths of 280 feet. With the exception of 1982-1983 El Niño, the population seems to increase during El Niño conditions and this is reflected in increased recruitment. Although sheephead range from Monterey Bay, California to the Gulf of California, Mexico, it is not common north of Point Conception. Sheephead begin life as a female with older, larger females developing into secondary males. Female sexual maturity may occur in three to six years and fish may remain female for up to fifteen years. Timing of the transformation to males involves population sex ratio as well as size of available males and sometimes does not occur at all (CDFG 2001a). California sheephead show high site fidelity, and increase their movement range with warmer seasonal waters (Topping et al. 2006). A 2004 stock

assessment found changes in the spawning potential ratio, which indicate the stock is below the target level of 60% of the unfished condition described by the Nearshore Fishery Management Plan. For the most likely scenario, the spawning potential ratio of California Sheephead (based on mature biomass) has been reduced to 20% of the unfished condition (Alonzo et al. 2004).

The California sheephead fishery is exploited by sport divers, anglers, and especially by the live fish commercial industry (Appendix III, Appendix IV). The recreational catch is regulated by location, time period, depth limit, daily bag limit, and a minimum size limit. The commercial fishery is also regulated by an annual commercial allocation, broken into two-month cumulative trip limits, and minimum size limit.

**White Seabass:** White seabass (*Atractoscion nobilis*) is the largest member of the croaker family (*Sciaenidae*) in California. This species can grow to five feet in total length and weigh up to 90 pounds; however, individuals larger than 60 pounds are seldom seen. White seabass range from Magdalena Bay, Baja California, Mexico to the San Francisco Bay area. They are also found in the northern Gulf of California, Mexico. The center of the white seabass population presently appears to be off central Baja California (CDFG 2002b).

Spawning occurs from April to August, with a peak in the late spring to early summer. The larvae have been collected from Santa Rosa Island, California to Magdalena Bay, Baja California. Most are found in the inshore areas of Sebastian Viscaïno and San Juanico Bays, Baja California, indicating that major spawning occurs off central Baja California (CDFG 2002b).

Young-of-the-year white seabass inhabit the open coast in waters 12 to 30 feet deep. They associate with bits and pieces of drifting algae in areas of sandy ocean bottom. Between one and three years old they move into protected bays where they utilize eelgrass communities for cover and forage. Older juveniles are caught off piers and jetties and around beds of giant kelp. Adult seabass occupy a wide range of habitats including kelp beds, reefs, offshore banks, and the open ocean (CDFG 2002b).

Today, catches of white seabass are concentrated in the nearshore waters of the Southern California Bight including the Channel Islands. Regulations covering white seabass include a minimum size limit (28 inches), closed seasons, bag limits, and fishing gear restrictions.

Beginning in 1983, the CDFG initiated the Ocean Resources Enhancement and Hatchery Program to test the feasibility of raising seabass for population enhancement. Over one million white seabass have been recovered, and CDFG has verified over 100 legal-sized tag returns (T. Larinto, pers. comm.). Locations of the hatchery and grow-out pens for white seabass have been mapped and are shown on map 3.2-2.

**California Halibut:** California halibut (*Paralichthys californicus*) is an important nearshore flatfish species in both the commercial and recreational fisheries of central and southern California. California halibut prefer soft bottom coastal habitats to depths of 300 feet. They are found in greatest abundance at depths less than 100 feet or less. Adults eat squid and

nearshore fish species such as sardines and anchovies. California halibut can grow to five feet in total length and weigh as much as 72 pounds. Pelagic eggs and larvae are usually within four miles of shore in less than 250 feet of water, but newly settled juveniles prefer embayments. Larger halibut will travel farther but, in general, halibut do not tend to move extensively according to tagging studies (CDFG 2001a).

California halibut is the target of three principal commercial gears: bottom trawl, set gill net, and hook-and-line. All gill net vessels only operate in federal waters. All bottom trawling, the predominant gear used to commercially target halibut, takes place in federal waters with the exception of the California Halibut Trawl Grounds off Santa Barbara and Ventura counties. Recreational anglers target halibut from shore and aboard vessels.

**Kea Basses:** Kelp bass (*Paralabrax clathratus*) are commonly referred to as kelp bass and represent one of the most important nearshore, recreational species in the waters of the south coast study region (Appendix IV). The most productive California fishing areas for kelp bass in recent years have been off Point Loma and La Jolla in San Diego County; Dana Point and Huntington Beach in Orange County; Santa Catalina Island and Horseshoe Kelp in Los Angeles County; and around the Channel Islands in Santa Barbara and Ventura Counties. Kelp bass are typically found in shallow water (surface to 150 feet) being closely associated with high relief structure, including kelp. Kelp bass range throughout the water column, but seem to concentrate between eight and 70 feet. Early tag and release studies showed little movement for the majority of kelp bass and concluded that if they move at all, it is to nearby rocky reefs or short distances to gather into breeding assemblages. More recently, tagging studies in the northern portion of the Southern California Bight indicated the kelp bass were quite mobile with some fish traveling as far as 50 miles (CDFG 2001a). Anglers catch a large number of age-classes based on CDFG surveys indicating a stable spawning population (CDFG 2004a).

**Barred Sand Bass:** Barred sand bass (*Paralabrax nebulifer*) have consistently ranked among the top 10 species in the southern California marine sport fish catch. The major barred sand bass fishing sites include the Silver Strand, Del Mar, and San Onofre in San Diego County; Huntington Flats area off Orange County; the inshore portion of northern Santa Monica Bay off Pacific Palisades and Santa Monica in Los Angeles County; and the Ventura Flats area off northern Ventura County. Barred sand bass are targeted exclusively by sport anglers; the commercial harvest of this species has been illegal since 1953. Although lacking some of the sporting qualities of kelp bass, barred sand bass are much more susceptible to hook-and-line gear and are somewhat easier to catch. Sport anglers also target the large spawning aggregations barred sand bass form. Barred sand bass chiefly inhabit the shallow waters near the southern California mainland and are rare north of Point Conception. The greatest concentrations of barred sand bass are found in depths less than 90 feet. Young sand bass are abundant in very shallow water (five to 30 feet). Barred sand bass are usually closely associated with sand/rock interfaces of deep reefs and artificial structures and are rarely found out over sandy expanses. CDFG tagging studies have revealed that barred sand bass are capable of movements of from five to 40 miles (CDFG 2001a).

**Surfperch:** The surfperch family (*Embiotidae*) contains a colorful set of fish that are sought-after primarily by recreational anglers (Appendix IV). As a group surfperch was the second most popular species group in terms of the number of fish landed (kept and/or released) by recreational anglers fishing ocean waters statewide in 2006. Surfperch also support a comparatively minor hook-and-line commercial fishery. The barred surfperch (*Amphistichus argenteus*) is the primary species taken by recreational beach anglers in Orange County. Barred surfperch are found along sandy beaches near sources of food and cover such as piers and jetties. Several species of surfperch prefer similar habitat while others prefer rocky reefs or kelp beds. Surfperch are usually found in 60 feet or less though barred surfperch have been found as deep as 240 feet and the pile perch and rubberlip surfperch will go to depths of 150 feet. Surfperch stay near the shoreline in relatively shallow water making them vulnerable to coastal development and pollution (CDFG 2001a).

**Nearshore Sharks:** Nearshore sharks and rays (Class *Chondrichthyes*) occur in the nearshore zone and utilize bays and estuaries as nursery sites. These species tend to grow slowly, live many years, and have low reproductive rates. In the Eastern Pacific, Pacific angel sharks (*Squatina californica*) are found from southeastern Alaska to the Gulf of California and from Ecuador to Chile. Pacific angel sharks are bottom-dwelling species found at depths of three to over 600 feet. They are often found in sandy, soft bottoms between rocky reefs. According to tagging studies, Pacific angel sharks stay in the same vicinity as tagged, though angel sharks tagged at the islands did tend to move around the islands. Pacific angel sharks eat mostly queenfish, blacksmith and market squid. The Pacific angel shark fishery is regulated with gear restrictions and minimum size limit (CDFG 2001a).

Sport and commercial fishermen take nearshore sharks and rays throughout California (Appendix III and Appendix IV), except for the shovelnose guitarfish, which is rare north of Monterey Bay. Take of many shark, skate and ray species occurs as bycatch, so some species are possibly taken and discarded in trawl and other fisheries because of their low value. Although not targeted by sport or commercial fishermen, the spiny dogfish is probably makes up a significant amount of the bycatch in some fisheries (CDFG 2002b). Bat rays are taken by sport and commercial fishermen, then discarded. Leopard sharks are primarily found in bays, estuaries, and shallow nearshore waters where they are easily taken by sport fishermen. Declines in the Pacific angel shark, thresher shark, spiny dogfish and soupfin shark fisheries were observed prior to effective management by CDFG (CDFG 2001b). Threats other than targeted fishery and bycatch include loss of nursery habitat and illegal take of pups for marine aquaria trade.

**California Grunion:** Grunion (*Leuresthes tenuis*) is a member of the New World silversides family, Atherinopsidae, along with the jacksmelt and topsmelt. They normally occur from Point Conception, California, to Point Abreojos, Baja California. Occasionally, they are found farther north to Monterey Bay, California and south to San Juanico Bay, Baja California. They inhabit the nearshore waters from the surf to a depth of 60 feet. Tagging studies indicate they are nonmigratory. Spawning occurs from March through August, and occasionally in February and September. Peak spawning is late March to early June. Females deposit eggs during the highest tides of the month, incubate in the sand during the lower tide levels, and hatch during the next high tide series about 10 days later. Despite local concentrations, grunion are not



abundant within California. The most critical issue facing the grunion resource is the loss of spawning habitat caused by beach erosion, harbor construction, and pollution.

Grunions are not a commercially targeted species but make up a small portion of the commercial “smelt” catch. Sport fishers with a sport fishing license may take grunion using only their hands. There is no bag limit, but grunion may only be taken from June through March (CDFG 2001a).

## **Invertebrates**

**Market Squid:** The market squid (*Loligo opalescens*) is found from Baja California, Mexico to Alaska. During the day, they are found from 325 to 2,000 feet of water. They migrate to the top 325 feet of water at night. Spawning market squid aggregate over sandy areas from October to May in southern California. Paralarvae are dispersed from spawning grounds and are found mostly inshore, but their later migration patterns are unknown. Juvenile squid feed on copepods and euphasiids, but as adults eat fish, polychaete worms, squid, and crustaceans. Little is known about their population status, but it is suggested that their stock is replaced annually (CDFG 2005b). The commercial fishery for market squid is one of the largest in California, both by volume and value (Appendix III). Traditional fishing areas for squid are found within the Monterey Bay region of central California (northern fishery) and in the south coast study region around the Channel Islands (southern fishery). The southern fishery season operates during the fall and winter.

The California Fish and Game Commission adopted the Market Squid Fishery Management Plan in 2005. It established a restricted access program, which mandated permits for vessels participating in the fishery, a series of fishery control rules, and a seasonal harvest guideline of 107,047 metric tons (about 235.9 million pounds) (CDFG 2008a).

For more information, go to the CDFG’s Marine Region website:  
[www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/marketsquid/index.asp](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/marketsquid/index.asp)

**Red Sea Urchin:** The red sea urchin (*Strongylocentrotus franciscanus*) is an echinoderm (along with sea stars) that feeds primarily on algae, including kelp (Strathmann 1971). They are found from Baja California, Mexico to Alaska in relatively shallow water (low-tide line to 300 feet). Red sea urchins prefer rocky ground near kelp and seaweeds (MarineBio 2008). Sea urchins can dramatically reduce kelp abundance creating urchin barrens (Tegner and Dayton 1991). Red sea urchins are harvested for their roe, which is sold mostly as an export product. Statewide landings of red sea urchins in 2007 were 11.2 million pounds, with 9.6 million pounds landed in southern California, an amount near the long term average. The statewide catch has remained in a relatively narrow range from 10.7 to 14.0 million pounds since 2002 (Appendix III). There is a small amount of recreational take of sea urchins from tide pool areas.

**Rock Crab:** Rock crabs are found from Baja California, Mexico to Humboldt Bay and are found in low intertidal waters to depths of 300 feet or more. The commercial catch is made up of three species: the yellow rock crab (*Cancer anthonyi*), the brown rock crab (*C. antennarius*), and the red rock crab (*C. productus*). Upon landing, all three species are often categorized as

'unspecified rock crab' (*Cancer spp.*) in catch statistics presented in this document (Appendix III). Brown and red rock crabs prefer rocky reefs, while yellow crabs prefer open sand or soft-bottom habitat. Rock crabs feed on a variety of invertebrates. Rock crabs have been known to move several miles, but no migration pattern or large-scale movement is apparent (CDFG 2004a).

The vast majority of rock crab commercial landings occur south of Morro Bay. Santa Barbara Harbor alone accounted for almost 68% of the fishery landings between 2000 and 2007. Other notable rock crab ports are Avila-Port San Luis, Oxnard, Ventura, Redondo Beach, San Pedro and the San Diego area ports. The commercial fishery, a limited entry fishery, requires a valid general trap permit and either a southern or northern rock crab permit. The recreational bag limit is 35 crabs per day (CDFG 2008a).

**California Spiny Lobster:** California spiny lobster range from Manzanillo, Mexico to Monterey Bay. Adult spiny lobsters prefer rocky areas and are found from the intertidal zone to depths of 240 feet or more. Spiny lobster larvae drift with the current up to 350 miles offshore and to depths of over 400 feet. Adult lobster forage at night, and eat algae, fish, and invertebrates (CDFG 2004a). The commercial fishery for California spiny lobster (*Panulirus interruptus*) uses baited traps that are individually buoyed and deployed along the mainland coast from Point Conception to the California border with Mexico and at all the Channel Islands. There is also a large recreational fishery, involving skin and scuba divers, and anglers with hoop nets. Fluctuations in lobster landings are expected, as the fishery is strongly influenced by the weather and El Niño and La Niña events.

The commercial fishery is regulated with size limits, a season, gear requirements (escape ports on traps for undersized lobster) and permits. Recreational fishers are regulated with size limits, a season, daily bag limits, and gear regulations. Fishing intensity tends to be highest at the start of the season (in the fall) when fishing efficiency is the highest (Parnell et al. 2007). The California Fish and Game Commission recently approved a lobster report card in order to provide data on total recreational catch. The lobster report card will be required of all recreational lobster hunters, regardless of age or gear type, starting the fall of 2008 (CDFG 2008a).

For more information on the California spiny lobster, go to DFG's Marine Region website <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/>

**Sea Cucumbers:** The California sea cucumber (*Parastichopus californicus*), also known as the giant red sea cucumber, and the warty sea cucumber (*P. parvimensis*) are fished commercially in California (Appendix III). Both ranges extend south to Baja California, Mexico and the California sea cucumber is found all the way to Alaska while the warty sea cucumber's range extends only to Monterey Bay. The warty sea cucumber inhabits the low intertidal to 90 feet, the California sea cucumber to 300 feet. Sea cucumbers feed on organic detritus and small organisms. Sea cucumbers move about 12 feet per day, but without pattern (CDFG 2001a).

The warty sea cucumber is fished almost exclusively by divers, and populations at fished sites have declined (Schroeter et al. 2001). The California sea cucumber is caught principally by trawling in southern California. A special permit to fish for sea cucumbers commercially was required beginning with the 1992-1993 fishing season. There is no significant sport fishery for sea cucumbers in California and sport fishing regulations forbid their take in nearshore areas in depths less than 20 feet (CDFG 2001a).

**Kellet's Whelk:** The Kellet's whelk is a large subtidal snail (*Kelletia kelletii*) that occurs under rock ledges and is common subtidally to 230 feet on rocky reefs, gravel bottoms, kelp beds, and sand from Isla Asuncion, Baja California, Mexico to Monterey Bay (Shoffler 2005). Spawning occurs in the spring, and during spawning the snails aggregate into groups of up to 20 individuals (Morris et al. 1980). This species is harvested commercially (Appendix III) and Los Angeles and Orange County ports received the over half the Kellet's whelk landings in 2006 followed by San Diego, Santa Barbara, and Ventura County ports. Though not one of the top five invertebrate fisheries by landings, the Kellet's whelk fishery is growing rapidly. There are no regulations for harvest of this species, except that Kellet's whelks cannot be taken within 1,000 feet from the shore.

**Plant species:** A variety of marine algae provide habitats and food for invertebrates, fishes, and marine mammals in the south coast study region. One of the most utilized plants within the study region is giant kelp (*Macrocystis pyrifera*). Further information in the ecology of giant kelp can be found in section 3.1.5. More information on the harvest of giant kelp can be found in section 5.5.1.

### 3.2.4 Special Status Species

Some species within the south coast study region have been designated with a special status under either state or federal law. Both the California state and federal Endangered Species Acts provide for special protections for a variety of fish, marine mammals, birds, and plants. In addition, marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammal Protection Act and migratory seabirds and shorebirds in the study region are protected under the Migratory Bird Treaty Act.

In addition, CDFG maintains a list of taxa they are interested in tracking, regardless of the legal or protection status of that taxa. This list of "species at risk" or "special status species" is those taxa considered to be of greatest conservation need. CDFG has also designated certain vertebrate species as "Species of Special Concern" because declining population levels, limited ranges, and/or continuing threats have made them vulnerable to extinction. Not all "Species of Special Concern" have declined equally; some species may be just starting to decline, while others may have already reached the point where they meet the criteria for listing as a "Threatened" or "Endangered" species under the state and/or federal endangered species Acts. More information is available at:  
<http://www.dfg.ca.gov/wildlife/species/ssc/index.html>.

A listing of the CDFG species of special concern is available on-line at <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/wildlife/species/ssc/>

A complete listing of state listed endangered or threatened species can be found at <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/biogeodata/cnddb/pdfs/TEAnimals.pdf> (animals) and <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/biogeodata/cnddb/pdfs/TEPlants.pdf> (plants).

A complete listing of federally listed endangered or threatened species can be found at <http://www.fws.gov/endangered/wildlife.html>

The section below includes descriptions of several special status species that exist within the south coast study region. A more comprehensive list of these species is included in Appendix II(b). Some portions of the study region that include large numbers of special status species are further described in section 3.3 on Areas of Biodiversity Significance.

## Plants

**Salt Marsh Bird's Beak:** Salt marsh bird's beak (*Cordylanthus maritimus ssp. maritimus*) grows in the higher reaches of coastal salt marshes to intertidal and brackish areas influenced by freshwater input. It is both a state and federal listed endangered species. The population of this species has declined due to loss of habitat and non-native plant competitors. Historically, salt marsh bird's beak was widespread in coastal salt marshes from Morro Bay in San Luis Obispo County to San Diego County and northern Baja California. Presently, it occurs only in scattered sites at fewer than 10 remnant salt marshes. Half of the original occurrences are now extirpated. In California, it is currently found at Tijuana Estuary and Sweetwater Marsh in San Diego County, Upper Newport Bay and Anaheim Bay in Orange County, Ormond Beach and Mugu Lagoon in Ventura County, Carpenteria Marsh in Santa Barbara County, and Morro Bay in San Luis Obispo County. The interaction between tidal flows, and local surface and subsurface freshwater flows is complex and important to the species survival. Salt marsh bird's beak is found in the CDFG's Upper Newport Bay Ecological Reserve (CDFG 2008c).

**Ventura Marsh Milk-Vetch:** Ventura marsh milk-vetch (*Astragalus pycnostachys var. lanosissimus*) is a short-lived, herbaceous perennial in the pea family (*Fabaceae*). It is both a state and federal listed endangered species. Historically, Ventura marsh milk-vetch occurred in back dune habitat, coastal meadows and near coastal salt marshes from Ventura County to Orange County. Over the last century seven historical occurrences were known to exist. Ventura marsh milk-vetch was extirpated from these sites and was, therefore, thought to be extinct until a U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service biologist rediscovered it in June 1997 at a proposed development site. It had only been seen twice in the last century. Today, this one population of Ventura marsh milk-vetch is the only known population to exist near the City of Oxnard, Ventura County, California (CDFG 2008c).

## Fish

Two special status fish species, steelhead trout and giant sea bass, are described in section 3.2.2 on depleted and overfished species. Other special status species include:

**Tidewater Goby:** The tidewater goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*), which is endemic to California, is distributed in brackish-water habitats along the California coast from Cocklebur Canyon, San Diego County to the Tillas Slough, Del Norte County (USFWS 2007). They used to range farther south to Agua Hedionda Lagoon (San Diego County) (Swift et al. 1989). Tidewater goby is federally listed as an endangered species (ESA), though the 5-year review by the Ventura Fish and Wildlife Office recommended changing the listing to threatened (USFWS 2007). Tidewater goby feed on invertebrates and generally live one year. They reproduce throughout the year resulting in constant variability in local abundance and making accurate population estimates difficult. They are threatened by habitat loss or degradation and predation by native and exotic predators (USFWS 2007).

**Garibaldi:** The Garibaldi (*Hypsypops rubicundus*), California's official state marine fish, range from Monterey Bay to Guadalupe Island, Baja California. Garibaldi are territorial, sometimes using the same nest site for several years, and do not migrate. Their diet consists mainly of invertebrates. Garibaldi can range from shallow subtidal to depths of 95 feet. Commercial take of Garibaldi has been banned since 1995, and current populations are in good condition (CDFG 2007b).

## Reptiles

**Sea Turtles:** Four species of sea turtles (superfamily *Chelonioidea*) occur off the Southern California Bight – green, loggerhead, olive Ridley, and leatherback turtles (NOAA 2006). Sea turtles spend most of their time at sea, and come ashore to nest on beaches. Sea turtles are not common within state waters of southern California, though they are sighted in the warm water effluent channel of the San Diego Gas and Electric Power Company in San Diego Bay. Green turtles forage in San Diego Bay and are the most common turtle seen there (McDonald and Dutton 1990). Green turtles feed primarily on algae and seagrasses. Sightings of leatherback, olive Ridley, and leatherback turtles are more rare (Stebbins 2003).

## Birds

A variety of seabirds and shorebirds with special status roost, forage, and form breeding colonies in the south coast study region (Map 3.2-1). Seabirds utilize offshore islands within the south coast study region as well as numerous offshore rocks (many of which are included in the California Coastal National Monument, managed by the U.S. Bureau of Land Management). Eight special status seabirds are found within the northern Channel Islands: Ashy Storm-Petrel, Black Storm-Petrel, California Brown Pelican, California Least Tern, Double-crested Cormorant, Rhinoceros Auklet, Western Snowy Plover, and Xantus' Murrelet (NCCOS 2005). Shorebirds aggregate in the many estuaries found within the study region (see section 3.1.3) as well as along sandy and rocky intertidal areas. A few examples of special status bird species are described below:

**Ashy Storm-Petrel:** The total population size of the Ashy Storm-Petrel (*Oceanodroma homochroa*) is less than 10,000 pairs and declining (CDFG 2001a). Ashy Storm-Petrel feed on larval fish, squid, and zooplankton and forage on the edges of upwelling zones and in waters

just seaward of the continental slope. They generally nest in rocky crevices, such as those found around sea caves in the Channel Islands (USFWS 2005).

**Black Storm-Petrel:** Pitman and Speich discovered the only breeding site for Black Storm-Petrel (*Oceanodroma melania*) in the United States on Sutil Island, an islet off Santa Barbara Island, in 1976. Only one nest was found, but an estimated 10 birds were heard in the vicinity, and the maximum number of breeding pairs was thought to be 10-15 (Pitman and Speich 1976). The population may have been present previous to the discovery, and was estimated at 25 breeding pairs in later surveys (Remsen 1978). Black Storm-Petrels are most common in the warm coastal waters of the Southern California Bight over the continental shelf off central California. They forage in surface waters near shore at thermal fronts adjacent to upwellings, tide rips, shelf-break fronts, and other areas of high ocean productivity. Their diet probably consists of small fish, crustaceans, and squid (USFWS 2005).

**California Brown Pelican:** The California brown pelican (*Pelecanus occidentalis californicus*), currently listed as endangered under provisions of the California Endangered Species Act (CESA; FGC § 2050, et seq.), is being considered for delisting by the state and is a federally proposed delisting candidate as of February 2008. The California Brown Pelican is also a fully protected species under §3511 of the Fish and Game Code. In California, the pelicans usually nest on two of the Channel Islands in southern California: West Anacapa and Santa Barbara islands. Nest sites generally occur on the ground or in low shrubbery of steep coastal slopes on small islands, isolated from ground predators and human disturbance. California Brown Pelicans utilize local vegetation to build nests of sticks, grasses, and other debris each year. The majority of their diet is fish, primarily captured by plunge-diving. California Brown Pelicans feed close to shore, primarily in shallow (<150 meters depth) waters of estuaries and the continental shelf, usually within 20 kilometers of shore. Their diet in the Channel Islands consists almost exclusively of small schooling fish; in particular, northern anchovy (*Engraulis mordax*) and Pacific sardine (*Sardinops sagax*). They also roost and loaf in groups during the day, on sand bars or jetties, or on man-made structures such as piers and docks (CDFG 2001a). North American populations underwent dramatic declines during the 1960s and early 1970s due to eggshell thinning induced by dichloro-diphenyl-dichloroethylene (DDE), the primary metabolic breakdown product of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT). Although populations have recovered substantially from these declines, there is considerable interannual variation in productivity as related to prey availability, disturbance at colonies, and disease outbreaks. Breeding effort, productivity, and survival are lower during El Niño events. Nesting success on Santa Barbara and Sutil island has been very high, with over 2,000 young chicks fledged from 2001 to 2003 (Burkett et al. 2007).

**California Least Tern:** The California Least Tern (*Sternula antillarum brownii*) is the subspecies of least terns nesting along the west coast of North America, from Baja California, Mexico, to San Francisco Bay. California Least Terns establish nesting colonies on sandy soils with little vegetation along the ocean, lagoons, and bays. Their nests are shallow depressions lined with shells or other debris. California Least Terns are generally present at nesting areas between mid-April and late September, often with two waves of nesting during this time period. This species was listed as endangered by the U.S. Secretary of the Interior in 1970 and the California Fish and Game Commission in 1971 due to a population decline resulting from loss

of habitat. A survey in 2007 estimated 6,744 to 6,989 California Least Tern breeding pairs, established 7,667 nests, and produced 2,293-2,639 fledglings at 48 documented locations. Numbers of nesting California Least Terns were not uniformly distributed across all sites. Camp Pendleton, Naval Base Coronado, Los Angeles Harbor, and Batiquitos Lagoon represented 55% of the breeding pairs while Venice Beach, Camp Pendleton, Huntington Beach and Naval Base Coronado produced 52% of the fledglings (Marschalek 2008).

**Elegant Tern:** Although thousands of Elegant Terns (*Sterna elegans*) from Mexico spend the summer and fall along the California coast, the only breeding colonies in the United States are at the salt work dikes at the south end of San Diego Bay, Bolsa Chica, and Pier 400 Terminal Island (Collins 2006). Limited breeding colonies in the United States make the elegant is highly vulnerable to extirpation in this part of its range. Human disturbance at nesting sites also threatens the population (Remsen 1978). Elegant terns feed primarily on fish, such as topsmelt and anchovy, and forage in bays and protected areas (Collins 2006).

**Double-Crested Cormorant:** Double-crested Cormorants (*Phalacrocorax auritus*) are found throughout the Southern California Bight, though in southern California they breed only on the Channel Islands (Remsen 1978). The Channel Islands' populations declined due to eggshell thinning from DDE contamination and to some extent human disturbance at nest sites (Gress et al. 1973), but the population is currently considered stable to increasing in California (CDFG 2001a). Double-crested Cormorants live in both fresh and salt water environments. They eat primarily fish such as sardines and herring (CDFG 2001a).

**Western Snowy Plover:** The Western Snowy Plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus*) occurs throughout the study region, and its breeding range extends from Baja California, Mexico to southern Washington. Western snowy plovers are found on beaches, estuarine sand and mud flats, and in man-made salt ponds during the winter, and nest on beaches during the breeding season (March – September). Western snowy plovers feed on invertebrates in the wet sand and surf-cast kelp, and occasionally on insects from low-growing plants (USFWS 2001). During a breeding season range-wide survey in June 2002, an estimated 1,501 individuals were found, most were in California (Fancher et al. 2002). Human harassment and direct destruction of nest sites and breeding habitat, expanding predator populations, and introduced species contributed to the decline of and continue to threaten Western Snowy Plovers (USFWS 2001).

**Osprey:** Though Osprey (*Pandion haliaetus*) are found within the study region, few nesting locations exist in the south coast. Osprey have been seen through the summer months at such former or potential nesting areas as Newport Bay (Orange County), and Buena Vista Lagoon (San Diego County). The removal of nesting trees, degradation of river and lake environmental quality, boating, and shooting may have contributed toward the decline of Osprey, which disappeared from southern California populations before pesticides were introduced (Remsen 1978). Osprey have a large global range, including every continent but Antarctica. They feed almost exclusively on fish and nest near bodies of water. Some osprey migrate to South America for the winter but do not nest there. Osprey are protected under the Migratory Bird Act, but are not currently listed as a species of special concern in California (Kirschbaum and Watkins 2000).

**American Bald Eagle:** Bald eagles (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*) historically nested on the Channel Islands. In 2002, the Channel Islands National Park began a successful reintroduction program for bald eagles. Sixty-one juvenile eagles were introduced to the park between 2002 and 2006. The first successful bald eagle nests occurred in 2006 on Santa Cruz Island (NPS 2007). Bald eagles nest near bodies of open water and have a diverse diet consisting of fish, small mammals, birds, molluscs, and crustaceans (Watson 2002). In 2007 they were delisted from the Endangered Species Act and their current protection comes from the Bald and Golden Eagle Act. On the west coast, they can be found from Baja California, Mexico to Alaska.

## **Pinnipeds**

At least seven species of pinnipeds historically occur within the Southern California Bight, including the Channel Islands. Pacific harbor seals, California sea lions, and northern elephant seals are the three most common species. Guadalupe fur seals are less commonly found within the study region and northern fur seals are rarely seen. Steller sea lions and ribbon seals are extremely rare within the study region.

**Harbor Seals:** Harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina*) are widely distributed in the coastal areas of the northern Pacific and northern Atlantic. Harbor seals in the eastern Pacific range from the Pribilof Islands in Alaska to Isla San Martín off Baja. Between the Mexican and Canadian borders, harbor seals have been managed as three separate stocks, one of which is the stock off California. After passage of the Marine Mammal Protection Act in 1972, harbor seal abundance grew rapidly until 1990, when stocks leveled off. There has been no net population growth in California since 1990 (Carretta et al. 2004). In 2002 the population was estimated at 27,863 animals. The southern Channel Islands have the largest concentration of harbor seals in California. The seals are year-round residents at most of the haulout sites depicted on the maps (Map 3.2-1), but are seasonally abundant with the highest numbers of seals present during the breeding season (March-June) and the molt (June-July). San Nicolas Island, Point Conception, Mugu Lagoon and Point Mugu are home to some of the largest haulout sites (Map 3.2 -1). Harbor seals eat a wide variety of pelagic and benthic prey, including small schooling fishes such as northern anchovy, many species of flatfishes, bivalves, and cephalopods (Antonelis and Fiscus 1980, Weise and Harvey 2001 and references therein). In southern California, harbor seals were found to eat mostly rockfish, octopus, spotted cusk-eel, and plain midshipman (Stewart and Yochem 1994).

**California Sea Lion:** The range of the California sea lion (*Zalophus californianus*) extends from the Pacific coast of Baja California to southern British Columbia. These animals breed primarily on offshore islands in the southern part of their range from the Gulf of California to San Miguel Island. California sea lions can be seen around Santa Cruz, Anacapa, San Miguel, Santa Rosa islands and Seal Rocks at Santa Catalina Island. In the late 1920s, only 1,000-1,500 California sea lions were counted on the shores of California. Since a general moratorium on hunting marine mammals was imposed with passage of the Marine Mammal Protection Act in 1972, the population has grown substantially to a current estimate of 237,000-244,000 animals. California sea lions are opportunistic feeders on a variety of prey, especially seasonally abundant schooling species such as Pacific hake, northern anchovy,



Pacific sardine, spiny dogfish, and squid. They tend to feed in cool upwelling waters of the continental shelf (Weise and Harvey 2005).

**Northern Elephant Seal:** Elephant seals (*Mirounga angustirostris*) are found from Baja California, Mexico to the Gulf of Alaska and Aleutian Islands, and the current population is over 150,000 animals. Elephant seals haul out two times per year, during the breeding (December through March) season and during the molt (April through August), and also migrate north to feeding grounds twice a year. Most breeding sites are also molting haul out sites. Northern elephant seal haulout sites are on San Miguel, San Clemente, Santa Rosa, Santa Barbara, and San Nicolas islands in the study region. Juvenile seals also haul out in high numbers at these traditional sites during the fall preceding the breeding season. When not on land, northern elephant seals spend most of their time under water, and likely feed on deep-water, bottom-dwelling marine species such as rockfish, squid, swell sharks, and ratfish. Pups feed on fish, squid and small sharks (Marine Mammal Center 2008).

**Guadalupe Fur Seal:** Guadalupe fur seals (*Arctocephalus townsendi*) are listed as threatened under the CESA and depleted under the MMPA. The Guadalupe fur seal is a pelagic species throughout most of the year, occurring in Pacific Ocean waters from Isla de Guadalupe, Mexico, to the Channel Islands of southern California. When ashore, this seal occupies rocky caves and crevices and sandy beaches. Breeding occurs solely on Isla Guadalupe from May to July. Male seals are occasionally observed on rocky beaches of the southern Channel Islands. It is believed that Guadalupe fur seals feed in deep waters on species of krill, squid, and small schooling fish. The most recent population estimate of 7,408 fur seals was made in 1994. Additionally, it is estimated that the population is growing at a rate of approximately 14% (CDFG 2000).

## **Fissipeds**

**Southern Sea Otter:** Once ranging from northern California to Japan to Punta Abreojos in Baja California Sur, southern sea otters (*Enhydra lutris*) are rare within the study region and occur mostly along California's central coast. The statewide population of sea otters was drastically reduced during the 18th and 19th centuries due to commercial hunting and has been generally increasing from as few as 50 individuals in 1914 (USFWS 1995, 2003). From 1987 to 1990, an effort was made to relocate southern sea otters to San Nicolas Island. This effort has been largely unsuccessful and in 2003 only 33 individuals were observed. Current sightings of sea otters within the study region are relatively rare (NCCOS 2005).

## **Cetaceans**

The Southern California Bight hosts a rich diversity of cetacean species (Order Cetacea), with at least 33 species occurring within the study region (Leatherwood et al. 1982, Leatherwood et al. 1987). Blue whales, humpback whales and gray whales enter the study region following migration routes between warm southern waters and cold northern waters. Gray whale northward and southward migrations overlap and animals can be seen heading both north and south off southern California in January and February. Blue whales can be spotted from June to December as they migrate north. Humpback whales can be seen from spring until early fall,

and their total United States west coast population is estimated at 597 individuals (NOAA 2003). Several other species vary seasonally in their abundance, with Pacific white-sided dolphin, Risso's dolphin, common dolphin, and northern right whale dolphins more common in winter and fin whales occurring more in the summer (Forney and Barlow 1998). Bottlenose dolphins forage for bottom fish year round in the Santa Monica Bay (Bearzi 2005). All cetaceans are protected under the Marine Mammal Protection Act, and many are also protected under the Endangered Species Act. See Table 3.2 -1 for a list of common cetaceans found in the study region.

**Table 3.2-1: Common cetaceans of the south coast study region**

Common Name	Scientific Name
Gray Whale	<i>Eschrichtus robustus</i>
Humpback Whale	<i>Megaptera novaeangliae</i>
Blue Whale	<i>Balaenoptera musculus</i>
Fin Whale	<i>Balaenoptera physalus</i>
Sperm Whale	<i>Physeter macrocephalus</i>
Baird's Beaked Whale	<i>Berardius bairdii</i>
Minke Whale	<i>Balaenoptera acutorostrata</i>
Pilot Whale	<i>Globicephala macrohynchus</i>
Killer Whale	<i>Orcinus orca</i>
Sei Whale	<i>Balaenoptera borealis</i>
Bryde's Whale	<i>Balaenoptera edeni</i>
Right Whale	<i>Eubalaena glacialis</i>
Risso's Dolphin	<i>Grampus griesus</i>
Dall's Porpoise	<i>Phocanoides dalli</i>
Pacific White-sided Dolphin	<i>Lagenorhynchus obliquidens</i>
Northern Right-whale Dolphin	<i>Lissodelphis borealis</i>
Common Dolphin	<i>Delphinus delphis</i>
Bottlenose Dolphin	<i>Tursiops truncatus</i>

Source: NOAA 2003

### 3.3 Areas of Biodiversity Significance

Spatial data are available to begin identifying specific locations in the study region that have high biodiversity significance based on the guidelines provided in the master plan framework (CDFG 2005a) and results of regional scientific research and mapping efforts. Specific locations can be identified using existing maps, by overlaying relevant data layers, or conducting more sophisticated GIS analysis. The following is a partial list of types of areas that have regional biodiversity significance:

- Areas where numerous habitats are found in close proximity and areas with unique combinations of habitats
- Large open estuaries (e.g. Anaheim Bay, Bolsa Chica, San Diego Bay, and the Tijuana River Estuary) with eelgrass beds, tidal flats, and coastal marsh (Map 3.1-1)

- Marine areas off headlands, especially those with kelp forests
- Marine areas which offer retention adjacent to upwelling centers, especially those with kelp forests and rocky reefs
- Large kelp beds (Map 3.1-1) and nearshore rocky reefs (Map 3.1-2)
- Areas of high bathymetric complexity which provide topographic relief and a variety of habitats in close proximity
- Rocky substrata in all depth zones, since rocky habitat is much less common than soft-bottom habitat and is important for many species (Map 3.1-2)
- Rocky intertidal shores, especially wave-cut rocky platforms (which provide habitat at diverse tidal elevations), boulder fields, and rare sheltered rocky shores (Map 3.1-1)
- Seabird colonies and marine mammal rookeries and haulouts (Map 3.2-1)
- Areas of high seabird or fish diversity and/or density and abundance (Maps 3.2-1 and 3.2-2).
- Offshore islands and associated habitats
- Sandy beaches utilized by grunion, California Least Tern, Western Snowy Plover, and other species

## **4.0 Land-Sea Interactions**

Important land-sea interactions occur across variable time scales and wide geographic ranges. The type and intensity of land-sea interactions significantly varies along the coastal region depending on a unique combination of factors. Biotic and abiotic factors include climate, geomorphology, land use, ocean currents, and other activities. Studying associations between watersheds and coastal waters from multiple perspectives and beneficial uses—biological, ecological, human, etc.—helps managers understand how modification of these linkages may impact the effectiveness of an MPA in meeting its objectives. The consequences of these complex interactions at the land-sea interface can be beneficial (e.g., critical riverine and estuarine nursery habitats for coastal marine and anadromous species) or detrimental (e.g., point and nonpoint sources of pollution) (Stoms et al. 2005).

Many associations exist between coastal watersheds and coastal and marine waters. For example, watersheds bring freshwater and sediments to bays, estuaries, and the ocean. Episodic and seasonal factors influence terrestrial input to marine environments. In the study region, nutrient loading from terrestrial sources can be significant at local scales especially during high flow periods. Substantial net export from rivers and estuaries to the ocean usually occurs during the rainy season and primarily during storm events (Coastal Reserves Working Group, 2005).

Four main classes of land-sea interaction should be considered when examining the effects of land use on the marine ecosystems of California's south coast:

- Watershed processes and the export of sediment and materials of terrestrial origin to estuaries and the ocean (particularly nutrients, persistent toxic chemicals, and pathogens)
- Sediment input from coastal erosion, landslides, and disposal
- Use of land and streams by marine-dependent species (e.g., steelhead migrations, harbor seal haulouts, sea bird rookeries, grunion breeding areas)
- Socioeconomic interactions between land and sea at the coastal margin where degraded water and sediment quality (e.g. beach closures or seasonal bans) may affect ecotourism and management of environments)

These four classes of land-sea interactions specifically affect nearshore and estuarine dependent species and habitats as well as marine species that spend some portion of their life cycle on land or freshwater (Coastal Reserves Working Group, 2005).

Understanding these watershed-coastal water linkages and land-sea interactions may provide important input to the design of MPAs, and help MPA managers prevent future degradation of protected MPA areas. Impacts on coastal watersheds (i.e. a stream or estuary) have repercussions for the entire coastal ecosystem. Estuaries and bays are particularly vulnerable to development, pollution, and introduction of invasive species. In southern California, coastal

development and alteration of both estuaries and sandy beach habitats play a significant role in affecting the function and services of coastal ecosystems.

The following sections discuss the importance of these watershed-coastal water associations, the effect of land use and watershed modification on rivers and coastal waters, and important regional programs related to coastal water quality.

#### **4.1 Ecological linkages/associations**

Watersheds and coastal waters have many complex ecological linkages/associations. Watersheds carry freshwater, nutrients, and sediments to bays, estuaries, and the ocean. In southern California, growth of urban areas has significantly changed the nature of many watersheds. Many rivers and streams, for example the Los Angeles River, have been channelized, which affects transport of sediment, nutrients, and pollution to coastal environments. Numerous smaller streams and rivers flow into small estuaries, in which mixing and dilution occur. Many of the estuaries, embayments, coastal lagoons, and remaining wetlands have high importance relative to their small size and the number of resident and migrating species (see section 3.1.3). Studies have shown that some species, including flatfish, rely on intricate associations between estuarine and coastal environments during different life stages (Brown 2006).

Some examples of critical ecological associations along the south coast study region are described below for selected marine species (based on Airamé et al. 2003, updated through pers.comm).

- **Fish**, such as sole, sablefish, hake, and rockfish, live as adults on the continental shelf and slope or in submarine canyons. They produce pelagic larvae that recruit to estuaries, bays, kelp forests, rock outcrops, and cobble fields. Some species, including Pacific herring, spawn in eelgrass beds, among other habitats. The structure of eelgrass beds provides protection from predation for juvenile invertebrates and fishes. Bat rays, leopard and smoothhound sharks, plainfin midshipman, Pacific herring, starry flounder, staghorn sculpin, several surf perch, jacksmelt, and topsmelt mate and bear their young in estuarine habitats.
- **Anadromous fish** produce eggs and juveniles in fresh water. The juveniles then pass through estuarine environments to mature at sea and return through the estuaries as adults to migrate upstream in coastal rivers to reproduce. Rivers within the south coast study region once supported large numbers of anadromous species. However, due to degradation of watersheds and freshwater ecosystems and the presence of barriers to fish passage, native anadromous fish stocks (e.g., steelhead trout) in southern California are limited.
- **Catadromous fish** live in fresh water, but travel to marine environments to breed. Some estuaries in southern California host striped mullet, which is one of the only catadromous species that exists in California.

- **Shorebirds and waterfowl**, such as black-bellied plover, black-necked stilts, killdeer, and ruddy ducks, in addition to special status species such as California least tern, western snowy plover, and Belding's Savannah Sparrow, inhabit coastal lagoons, estuaries, and salt marshes as well as areas near sandy beaches. Large numbers of shorebirds and diving ducks are attracted to eelgrass beds, where they feed on the eelgrass, fish, and invertebrate eggs and young. Many bird species use salt marshes, shallow intertidal flats, and lagoons during their annual migrations. The estuaries and bays of coastal California form part of the Pacific Flyway, one of the four principal bird migration routes in North America.
- **Marine mammals**, such as California sea lions, northern elephant seals, and harbor seals, have many haulout sites, as well as a few rookeries, on secluded rocks and sand beaches, tidal flats, and estuaries in the region.
- **Coastal and estuarine vegetation**, such as macroalgal mats, composed primarily of *Nereocystis*, *Ulva* and *Enteromorpha* spp., may be carried on tides or currents to the open ocean, where they provide shelter and food for numerous organisms, notably juvenile fishes. Eventually, these mats may wash up on shore, where they supply nutrients to sandy beach and rocky intertidal communities.

Understanding associations between watersheds and coastal waters may help managers better design MPAs for resource protection and recreation and other uses, as well as examine and reduce negative impacts caused by agriculture, forestry, urbanization, and boating, to name a few (see 4.4 below for a more detailed description of the effects of land use on coastal waters).

## 4.2 Coastal Watersheds and Land Use in Study Region

The MLPA south coast study region extends for over 1,045 miles along the Californian coast, includes 2,355 mi<sup>2</sup> of ocean, and drains over 10,000 mi<sup>2</sup> from the 19 hydrologic units or major watersheds. The largest coastal watersheds of the region include the Santa Clara – Calleguas and the Los Angeles – San Gabriel (see Table 4.2-1). Watersheds are described using a classification system developed by the California Department of Water Resources, which identifies surface waters by hydrologic units, areas, and subareas. Specifically, hydrologic units are defined as surface drainage divides, which include the total watershed area, both water-bearing and non-water-bearing formations, and two or more small contiguous watersheds with similar hydrologic characteristics draining from one mountain body (SDRWQCB 2007).

**Table 4.2-1: Major watersheds in the south coast study region**

Major Hydrologic Unit	Area (mi <sup>2</sup> )
South Coast <sup>1</sup>	375
Pitas Point <sup>2</sup>	22
Ventura River <sup>2</sup>	300
Santa Clara – Calleguas <sup>2</sup>	1,760

Major Hydrologic Unit	Area (mi <sup>2</sup> )
Malibu <sup>2</sup>	242
Los Angeles - San Gabriel <sup>b</sup>	1,608
San Pedro Channel Islands <sup>1, 2</sup>	156
Santa Ana River <sup>1</sup>	1,972
San Juan <sup>3</sup>	500
Santa Margarita River <sup>3</sup>	750
San Luis Rey River <sup>3</sup>	565
Carlsbad <sup>3</sup>	210
San Dieguito <sup>3</sup>	350
Penasquitos <sup>3</sup>	170
San Diego River <sup>3</sup>	440
Pueblo San Diego <sup>3</sup>	60
Sweetwater River <sup>3</sup>	230
Otay River <sup>3</sup>	160
Tijuana River <sup>3</sup>	470
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>10,340</b>

Source: <sup>1</sup> State Water Resources Control Board GIS layer

<sup>2</sup> RWQCB-Los Angeles, 1994.

<sup>3</sup> WQCB- San Diego, 2007.

Land use in the study region varies considerably from county to county. For example, Los Angeles County is highly urbanized with residential, commercial and industrial uses predominating. Whereas, the major land uses in Ventura County are agricultural and open space, although there is an increasing trend towards urban residential and commercial landuse (LARWQCB 1994). The Santa Ana Region is “one of the most rapidly growing areas in the state,” according to the Santa Ana Regional Water Quality Control Board (2006). In San Diego County, the primary land uses are: residential, agriculture, and undeveloped, although there has been rapid economic development and urbanization most recently. Approximately 40% of the undeveloped land in San Diego County is proposed for development (Project Clean Water 2008). Map 4.2 -1 shows coastal basins adjacent to the study region as classified by the percentage of urban area and percentage of agricultural area (see 4.4.2, “Nonpoint Sources”).

### 4.3 Coastal Water Quality

Coastal water quality information is important in MPA planning to ensure that areas of poor water quality can be considered in MPA siting. *The Water Quality Control Plan for Ocean Waters of California* (California Ocean Plan) was prepared by the State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) in 1972. It is regularly updated and was most recently reviewed in 2005. This plan establishes water quality standards for ocean waters, and the requirements and management of waste discharge to the ocean. The California Ocean Plan also identifies specific beneficial uses, water quality objectives, effluent limitations, monitoring program requirements and regulation of areas of special biological significance which are a subset of the recently formed state water quality protection areas

(<http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/plnspols/oplans/docs/bactffed.pdf>). Additional water quality regulations can be found in the following locations: the SWRCB Thermal Plan, State of California's Porter –Cologne Water Quality Act, the Federal Clean water Act, the Federal Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act, the Coastal Zone Management Act, and the California Toxics Rule. Taken together these regulations establish water quality standards for all coastal, bay, lagoon and estuarine waters of the State of California.

Included under the umbrella of the SWRCB are nine regional boards throughout the state, each of which monitors a separate SWRCB region. There are four regional boards with regions that overlap with the MLPA South Coast Study Region. The Central Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board (RWQCB) manages Region 3. This regional board has only a small area of jurisdiction that falls within the study region from Point Conception down to Rincon Point. Directly south, the Los Angeles Regional Water Quality Control Board (LARWQCB) manages Region 4, which includes coastal drainages between Rincon Point and the eastern Los Angeles County line (LARWQCB 1994). Usually the regions are based on hydrologic divides, but the boundary Los Angeles Regional Water Quality Control Board and Santa Ana Regional Water Quality Control Board is the Los Angeles County line. The Santa Ana RWQCB manages Region 8, has jurisdiction over the upper and lower Santa Ana River watersheds, the San Jacinto River watershed, and several other small drainages (SARWQCB 2008). The San Diego RWQCB manages Region 9, which includes Laguna Beach in the north, east to the Laguna Mountains and south to the California/Mexico border (SDRWQCB 2007).

Each RWQCB has a unique "water quality control plan" (or "basin plan"), which contains three main types of information. First, each plan lists all of the water bodies in the region and the beneficial uses designated for those water bodies (e.g. recreation, wildlife, spawning, etc.). Second, each plan defines the water quality that must be maintained to support those beneficial uses. Last, each basin plan contains an implementation plan that describes the various regional programs, projects, and other actions that are necessary to achieve the water quality standards established in the plan. Beneficial uses along with the numeric or narrative objectives established to protect those uses jointly constitute federal water quality standards. These implementation plans include a description of nonpoint source programs, such as the Water Discharge Program implementation and municipal wastewater management, as well as regional surveillance and monitoring programs and models, such as the Toxic Substances Monitoring Program. For more information on the basin plans for regions 3, 4, 8 and 9 see the RWQCB's website at [http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/plans\\_policies](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/plans_policies).

#### **4.3.1 Existing Water Quality Protection Designations**

A number of different water quality designations exist in California. These designations include: state water quality protection areas, areas of special biological significance, and critical coastal areas. The designations are made by various organizations.



## State Water Quality Protection Areas

State water quality protection areas (SWQPAs) are “designated to protect marine species or biological communities from an undesirable alteration in natural water quality...” (Public Resources Code Section 36700[f]). SWQPAs are one of six categories of managed areas described in the Marine Managed Areas Improvement Act. (The other categories under the Marine Managed Areas Improvement Act include the following: state marine reserve, state marine park, state marine conservation area, state marine cultural preservation area, and state marine recreational management area.) The SWRCB designates SWQPAs, under which waste discharge is prohibited.

## Areas of Special Biological Significance

Areas of special biological significance (ASBSs), which were established through the California Ocean Plan, are considered a subset of the SWQPAs. However, at this time all SWQPAs are also ASBSs. Individuals may nominate areas for designation as an ASBS. Criteria for nomination include areas that are “intrinsically valuable or have recognized value to man for scientific study, commercial use, recreational use, or esthetic reasons.” Areas proposed for ASBS designation should have the potential to benefit from protection beyond that offered by standard waste discharge restrictions and other measures.

There are 13 existing ASBSs in the study region (Table 4.3-1, Map 4.3-1). They occur in three of the four RWQCB regions lying adjacent to the study region and total 280.52 mi<sup>2</sup> in area.

**Table 4.3-1: Areas of special biological significance in the MLPA South Coast Study Region**

ASBS Site <sup>1</sup>	Region <sup>1</sup>	Area <sup>2</sup> (mi <sup>2</sup> )	SWQPA ID Number <sup>2</sup>
San Nicolas Island and Begg Rock	4	99.47	21
Santa Barbara and Anacapa Islands	4	54.47	22
San Clemente Island	4	76.82	23
Laguna Point to Latigo Point	4	18.50	24
Northwest Santa Catalina Island	4	20.68	25
Western Santa Catalina Island	4	3.51	26
Farnsworth Bank (Santa Catalina Island)	4	0.06	27
Southeast Santa Catalina Island	4	4.31	28
La Jolla	9	0.71	29
Heisler Park	9	0.05	30
San Diego- Scripps	9	0.14	31
Newport Beach Marine Life Refuge ASBS	8	0.34	32
Irvine Coast	8, 9	1.47	33

Source: <sup>1</sup> SWRCB, EPA 2005 (The Ocean Plan).

<sup>2</sup> Taken from the GIS layer coastn27 from the State Lands Commission 1994.

Note: All the ASBS sites listed are also SWQPAs.

## Critical Coastal Areas

California critical coastal areas (CCAs), designated by the California Coastal Commission, significantly overlap with SWQPAs. These CCAs serve the dual goals of “improving degraded water quality, and providing extra protection from nonpoint source pollution to marine areas with recognized high resource value” (California Coastal Commission 2002). Twenty-five areas in the study region have been designated as CCAs (Table 4.3-2) (CCAs not also designated as SWQPAs are notated by <sup>1</sup> following the name). This list of CCAs includes “impaired water bodies” identified in the section 303(d) list (see section 4.3.1 below), as well as marine managed areas, wildlife refuges, waterfront parks, and beaches and ASBSs.

**Table 4.3-2: Critical coastal areas in the south coast study region**

Critical Coastal Area Name	CCA ID Number
Santa Barbara and Anacapa Islands	56
Mugu Lagoon/Revelon Slough <sup>1</sup>	58
Mugu Lagoon to Latigo Pt	59
Malibu Creek <sup>1</sup>	60
Topanga Canyon Creek <sup>1</sup>	61
Santa Monica Canyon <sup>1</sup>	62
Ballona Creek <sup>1</sup>	68
Santa Catalina Island Sub-Area 1	63
Santa Catalina Island Sub-Area 2	64
Santa Catalina Island Sub-Area 3	65
Santa Catalina Island Sub-Area 4	66
San Nicolas Island and Begg Rock	57
San Clemente Island	67
Upper Newport Bay <sup>1</sup>	69
Newport Beach Marine Life Refuge	70
Invine Coast Marine Life Refuge	71
Heisler Park Ecological Reserve	72
Aliso Creek <sup>1</sup>	73
San Juan Creek <sup>1</sup>	74
Batiquitos Lagoon <sup>1</sup>	75
San Elijo Lagoon <sup>1</sup>	76
Los Penasquitos Lagoon <sup>1</sup>	77
San Diego-Scripps Marine Life Refuge	79
San Diego-La Jolla Ecological Reserve	78
Tijuana River Estuary <sup>1</sup>	80

Source: California's Coastal Commission 2006 and 2002.

Note: <sup>1</sup> Indicates which CCAs not designated as SWQPAs.

### 4.3.2 Offshore Water Quality Issues

Offshore areas of the south coast study region have several documented water quality problems. However, on the whole, offshore water quality has improved in the last two decades

because of enacted discharge regulations (California Cooperative Ocean Fisheries Investigations 2002). There are five relevant factors affecting offshore water quality issues: 1) regulated industrial and municipal wastewater discharges, 2) stormwater discharges, 3) harmful algal blooms, 4) superfund sites, and 5) oil spills.

**Regulated waterwater discharges:** (discussed in Section 4.4)

**Stormwater plumes:** (discussed in Section 4.4)

**Harmful algal plumes:** Blue-green algae (cyanobacteria) can be a resource and public health concern. Given certain conditions, the algae can rapidly multiply and produce toxins. Harmful algal blooms occur naturally in surface waters under the following conditions: elevated water temperature, high nutrient levels, and reduced water flow and circulation (California Department of Public Health 2008, Blue Green Algae Work Group 2007). However, not all species of cyanobacteria produce toxins. There are two genera in California that commonly associated with harmful algal blooms, *Alexandrium* and *Pseudo-nitzschia* (NCCOS 2008a). The risk of exposure is highest for activities such as swimming, diving, surfing, water skiing, and consumption of shellfish and fish (NCCOS 2008a, Blue Green Algae Work Group 2007). Algal blooms can also impact dissolved oxygen levels (NOS 2008). In 2007, southern California experienced a major bloom that caused historic levels of toxins in planktons, shellfish, and other wildlife (NCCOS 2008b). The California Department of Public Health's monitoring program found in 2007 that the highest concentration of toxins at offshore sites near Santa Barbara and Ventura County (CDPH 2007).

**Superfund sites:** These sites are identified under the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act as sites to be placed on the National Priorities List (USEPA 2008b). These sites are considered to pose a "relatively high" threat to human health or the environment (USEPA 2008c). The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, which oversees the program, will determine remediation efforts to clean up sites, hold responsible parties accountable, and implement long-term monitoring of contaminated sites (USEPA 2008b). There are twenty-seven superfund sites in the vicinity of the south coast study region, but these sites are at various stages of contamination and remediation (USEPA 2008d). A well-known superfund site in the study region is the Palos Verdes Shelf site located offshore near Los Angeles. The site was deemed to pose risks to humans and marine life due to over twenty years of wastewater discharge into the Pacific Ocean (USEPA 2008e). Details about the sediment contamination associated with this site can be found in Section 4.3.5.

**Oil Spills:** In the south coast study region, the risk of oil spills is high due to heavy tanker traffic, dozens of oil platforms located off the coast, and pipelines running from platforms to onshore. Three agencies have jurisdiction and/or responsibilities to prepare and respond to oil spills; jurisdiction is determined by whether the spill occurs in state waters (0-3 nautical miles offshore) or federal waters (3 to 200 nautical miles). The Minerals Management Service (MMS), which is part of the U.S. Department of the Interior, is the agency responsible when spills occur in federal waters, including the submerged lands, subsoil, and seabed. In state waters, the California State Lands Commission has jurisdiction over the state's tide and submerged lands along the coastline out to the western extent of state waters. The Office of

Spill Prevention and Response (OSPR) is responsible for spills that occur in state waters and has pollution response authority, as well as public trustee authority for wildlife and habitat.

In the south coast study region, there have been 4 major oil spill events since 1990 in federal waters, all in the Santa Barbara Channel and all from platform incidents (MMS 2008, County of Santa Barbara 2002, MMS 1998, MMS 1995). These major spills are categorized as spills of 50 barrels or greater (MMS 2008). The single most important oil spill event in California's history was the oil spill in 1969 from Union Oil's Platform "A" off Santa Barbara. This spill caused an estimated 100,000 barrels of crude oil to escape into the ocean, which covered an area of 800 mi<sup>2</sup> and affected thirty-five miles of coastline (County of Santa Barbara 2002). There were serious ecological consequences, as approximately 4,000 waterbirds died, marine mammals were poisoned and suffocated, and many fisheries were adversely affected (County of Santa Barbara 2002). There has not been an event of this magnitude in southern California since (County of Santa Barbara 2002).

In state waters, there have been four major oil spills since 1990. The causes of these spills include pipeline breaks and a tanker accident. The cause of one spill remains unknown. Unlike the incidents in federal waters, there have only been minor spills related to platforms in state waters (Hemphill 2008). Table 4.3-3 summarizes the four state water events. Additional information on oil development in state and federal waters off of California is below in Section 4.5.2.

**Table 4.3-3: Oil spill incidents in state waters, 1990-2008**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Pollution</b>	<b>Resource Impact</b>
American Trader Oil Spill	02/7/90	Huntington Beach	Tanker incident	416,598 gal crude oil	3,400 birds killed Fish contaminated Restricted recreational activities
McGrath Oil Spill	12/25/93	McGrath State Beach, Ventura County	Pipeline break	87,150 gal crude oil	206 birds killed Damaged riparian and coastal habitat
Torch/Platform Irene Oil Spill	09/28/97	Northern Santa Barbara County (offshore and coastline)	Pipeline break	163 barrels of petroleum products	700 birds killed Sandy and rocky beach habitat affected Restricted recreational beach use
Ventura County Oil Spill	01/13/05	Santa Barbara to Ventura	Unknown	Oil- type, amount, and Unknown	86 birds killed

Source: California Office of Spill Prevention and Response (OSPR) 2008, OSPR 2005, American Trader Trustee Council 2001, California Department of Parks and Recreation, California Department of Fish and Game, and United States Fish and Wildlife Service 2005.

**Other:** Other factors also exist that can compromise offshore water quality. For example, localized nearshore coastal areas face a number of problems, including, but not limited to

elevated levels of nutrients, sedimentation/ siltation, pesticides, PAHs, metals, pathogens, oils, and other persistent organic pollutants. These contaminants can result in a variety of biological impacts, including bioaccumulation, reduced recruitment of anadromous species (e.g. steelhead, that migrate from salt water to spawn in fresh water), acute and chronic toxicity, pathogen contamination, harmful algal blooms and reductions in certain fish and invertebrate populations. These adverse water quality impacts can impair designated beneficial uses.

#### **4.3.3 Impaired Water Bodies in the South Coast Study Region**

When a water body does not meet established water quality standards, it is placed on an impaired waters list mandated by §303(d) of the federal Clean Water Act. For this reason, this list is often called the 303(d) list, and waters on this list are referred to as “impaired” waters. States are required to update this list every two years and work towards resolving problems associated with the listed water bodies. Typically, a total maximum daily load (TMDL) is developed for each impaired water body. A TMDL determines the total amount of the pollutant/stressor (e.g., pathogens, sediment, nutrients) that the water body can receive and still meet water quality standards, and an allocation of that amount to the pollutant's sources (USEPA 2008f). An implicit or explicit margin of safety is also factored into this analysis. The TMDL then allocates the allowable loading to all point and nonpoint sources to the water body and establishes an implementation plan to ensure that the allocations and water quality standards are achieved.

Based on data from 2006, the south coast study region has a far greater number of water bodies designated as impaired compared to other MLPA study regions in the state (Map 4.3-1). There are 21 impaired water bodies in Region 3's South Coast Hydrologic Unit, which is the only unit within that region that is located in the south coast study region. The Los Angeles Regional Water Quality Control Board has the most impaired water bodies in the study region with one hundred and sixty-one waterbodies deemed impaired. Region 8 (Santa Ana) has only 33 impaired water bodies. The San Diego Regional Water Quality Control Board has the second highest number of impaired water bodies, with 99 listed on the 303(d) list. Appendix 6 includes four tables that show impaired water bodies in Regions 3, 4, 8, 9 that fall within, or drain into the south coast study region. Other information provided in the appendix is the type of pollutants or stressors involved, the general source of impairment, and the status of TMDLs for each location.

Illustrative examples of some of the water bodies in the south coast for which TMDL's have been established include the following:

**Los Angeles River:** The Los Angeles River is only 52 miles long yet drops 795 feet in elevation from the headwaters of the San Fernando Valley and empties into the estuary in Long Beach. Unlike most rivers, much of the Los Angeles River has been channelized with concrete lining originally intended to reduce floods. However, this factor in combination with most of the watershed being developed with impervious surface has increased the volume and flow of water funneled into the concrete channel. It carries 183,000 cubic feet of water per second during peak flow, but the flow varies dramatically depending on the season and

amount of rain. During the heavy rains, the river has a strong, powerful current, but it is nearly dry during droughts. The Los Angeles River has poor water quality conditions in the mid and low sections of the river from urban, industrial, and commercial runoff. Some of the water quality impairments include bacteria, metals, organics, oil, nutrients, and trash (California Regional Water Quality Control Board 2002).

**Newport Bay:** Newport Bay, which has two areas separately identified on the state's Clean Water Act §303(d) list, is one of the major impaired water bodies in the Santa Ana Hydrologic Unit. The bay's water quality has been impacted by metals, pesticides, and priority organics (SARWQCB 2006). Surrounding land uses are the major factors associated with the poor water quality. These land uses include urban areas, boatyards, agriculture, as well as unknown sources.

**Tijuana River and Estuary:** There are two associated water bodies impaired in the Tijuana River Hydrologic Unit: the Tijuana River and the Tijuana Estuary. This hydrologic unit is complex, as it straddles the California and Mexico border. While the majority (73%) of this watershed is located in Mexico, the Tijuana River discharges in California (SDRWQCB 2005). These two water bodies have been adversely impacted by nonpoint agricultural sources from California, and a number of point and nonpoint sources from Mexico (SDRWQCB 2005). As a result, a significant water quality problem exists for the Tijuana River and Estuary; these water bodies are amongst the most severely impaired water bodies in San Diego County (SDRWQCB 2005).

More information on these water bodies, including GIS data and indepth information on pollutants, sources, and TMDLs, is available at [http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/tmdl/303d\\_lists2006\\_epa.shtml](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/tmdl/303d_lists2006_epa.shtml).

#### **4.3.4 Beach Closures, Postings, and Rain Advisories**

Beach closures, postings, and rain advisories are direct indicators of the negative impacts to beneficial uses at beaches. The State of California has mandated beach water monitoring, which began in 1999. Weekly monitoring is required between April and October for beaches with more than 50,000 visitors annually or located adjacent to stormdrains flowing during the summer. The waters are tested for coliform, including fecal, and enterococcus bacteria. Whereas beach closures prohibit water contact due to sewage spillages, beach postings are advisories that the public not contact water based on monitoring information that indicates high bacteria levels. Rain advisories are a preventative measure put in place that warns people not to swim during a rain event or for three days after a rainstorm due to predictions of poor water quality.

The south coast study region has experienced more beach closures by comparison to the rest of California. The southern extent of the study region has had the most closures. A comparison of beach closures versus beach postings in the south coast study region is provided in Table 4.3-4. The table lists the number of closures and postings in "beach mile days" (the distance of beach posted or closed multiplied by the number of days of posting or closure) from 2004-2007

by county within the study region. Table 4.3-5 lists all beach closures in the study region from 2007-2008. Water quality conditions remain of concern for the south coast study region. Seven of the ten beaches with the highest water pollution in the state are located in the study region, with five of those in Los Angeles County. In addition, Los Angeles County continues to receive the poorest water quality reports for the state with the Los Angeles River outlet having “very poor water quality” in 2008 (Heal the Bay 2008). Many beaches in California are long and sometimes closings are targeted for a certain section of the beach. Therefore, some beaches may have more than one closing at the same time. Multiple closures at the same beach have been aggregated in this list.

**Table 4.3-4: Beach closures and postings by county: year-to-year comparison**

	2004		2005		2006		2007	
County	Closure	Posting	Closure	Posting	Closure	Posting	Closure	Posting
Santa Barbara	0.0	8.5	0.0	18.4	0.0	25.5	0.0	26.0
Ventura	0.0	25.0	0.0	21.7	0.0	3.5	0.0	2.1
Los Angeles	4.3	106.6	3.9	136.8	66.2	175.6	0.0	131.7
Orange	11.5	470.9	71.7	198.5	15.0	809.9	1.7	497.7
San Diego	248.8	28.1	357.5	52.6	418.6	70.5	327.7	34.1
Study Region Counties Total	264.7	639.1	433.0	428	499.8	1085.0	329.4	559.9
California Total	345	692	439	518	501	1129	346	718

Note: Units are expressed in Beach Mile-Day. Beach Mile-Day is the distance of beach posted or closed times the number of days of posting or closure.

Source: State Water Resources Control Board, Beach Watch 2008.

**Table 4.3-5: Beach closures in 2007-2008 in the south coast study region by county**

County	Beach	Duration (# Days)
Los Angeles	Belmont Pier, eastside	11
Los Angeles	Belmont Pier, westside	11
Los Angeles	Cabrillo Beach, harborside at boat launch	5
Los Angeles	Cabrillo Beach, harborside at lifeguard tower	5
Los Angeles	Cabrillo Beach, oceanside	5
Los Angeles	Castlerock Storm Drain, Castle Rock Beach	4
Los Angeles	Dockweiler State Beach, Ballona Ck mouth	5
Los Angeles	Dockweiler State Beach, Culver Blvd. drain	5
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 10th PI	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 16th PI	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 36th PI	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 3rd PI	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 54th PI	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 55th PI	11

<b>County</b>	<b>Beach</b>	<b>Duration (# Days)</b>
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 5th Pl	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 62nd Pl	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, 72nd Pl	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, Coronado Ave.	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, Granada Ave.	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, Molino Ave.	11
Los Angeles	Long Beach City Beach, Prospect Ave.	11
Los Angeles	Santa Ynez Storm Drain, Castle Rock Beach	4
Los Angeles	Venice Beach, Topsail St.	5
Orange	San Clemente, north beach, Avenida Pico	3
Orange	Seal Beach, 1st Street	2
San Diego	Border Field State Park, Border Fence, north	106
San Diego	Border Field State Park, Monument Rd.	106
San Diego	Coronado at North Beach (near Navy fence)	6
San Diego	Coronado, NASNI Beach	6
San Diego	Coronado, Ave. del Sol	6
San Diego	Coronado, Loma Ave.	6
San Diego	Coronado, Silver Strand	25
San Diego	Imperial Beach- Camp Surf Jetty	46
San Diego	Imperial Beach, Imperial Beach Pier, north	68
San Diego	Imperial Beach, Carnation Av.	65
San Diego	Imperial Beach, Cortez Av.	65
San Diego	Imperial Beach, Palm Av.	65
San Diego	Imperial Beach. south end of Seacoast Dr.	41
San Diego	Mission Bay, Sail Bay, Whitting Ct.	6
San Diego	Mission Bay, Santa Clara Cove, Portsmouth Ct.	6
San Diego	Ocean Beach, San Diego River outlet (Dog Beach)	2
San Diego	Oceanside, Buccaneer Beach, Loma Alta Ck	4
San Diego	Oceanside, Buena Vista Lagoon Outlet	3
San Diego	Oceanside, Cassidy St.	8
San Diego	Oceanside, St. Malo Beach (downcoast from St. Malo Rd.)	8
San Diego	Point Loma, Lighthouse	2
San Diego	Point Loma, Point Loma Treatment Plant	2
San Diego	San Diego Bay, Bayside Park, J Street	4
San Diego	San Diego Bay, Glorietta Bay Park, boat launch	4
San Diego	San Diego Bay, north of Kellogg St.	4
San Diego	San Diego Bay, Silver Strand	4
San Diego	Sunset Cliffs, downcoast of Newbreak Beach	2



San Diego	Tijuana Slough NWRS, 3/4 mile no. of Tijuana River	106
San Diego	Tijuana Slough NWRS, Tijuana Rivermouth	109

Source: Heal the Bay 2008.

#### **4.3.5 Sediment Quality and Areas of Impairment**

Sediment quality is another important characteristic to consider when examining the conditions of coastal and marine resources. For the south coast study region, sediment contamination is prevalent and can result in ecological and human health risks. A recent study was conducted as part of the Southern California Bight Regional Monitoring Program that looked at sediment throughout the region (Schiff, Maruya and Christensen 2006). Three hundred fifty-nine sediment samples were taken from the following types of areas: onshore, offshore, embayments, estuaries, and Publicly Owned Treatment Works. This study found that 94% of all sediment samples contained at least one contaminant (Schiff, Maruya and Christensen 2006). The greatest DDT contamination was found in coastal areas near outfalls, where urban runoff was the likely source of contamination. Similarly, the highest concentrations of trace metals were in embayments, where there is minimal opportunity for contaminant flushing, as water circulation is restricted. In contrast, the Channel Islands experience constant ocean flow and quickly moving currents, such that this area had the least sediment contamination, in terms of both accumulation and concentration (Schiff, K., K. Maruya and K. Christensen 2006).

Though most of the study region had contaminated sediment (Schiff et al. 2006), the majority of this contamination was not been found to have significant biological impacts. For example, only approximately 20% of the sampling sites had levels frequently associated with adverse biological impacts (referred to as the Effects Range Median), and only 1% were deemed to exhibit “moderate to high risk” (Schiff, K., K. Maruya and K. Christensen 2006). Marinas, Los Angeles estuaries, and large publicly owned treatment works outfalls were the highest at-risk areas. DDT, heavy metals, and PCB (Polychlorinated biphenyl) were among the most common sediment contaminants. Total DDT was the most commonly found organic contaminant; approximately 71% of sediment samples contained that persistent contaminant. The area with the highest DDT concentrations was Palos Verdes (Schiff, K., K. Maruya and K. Christensen 2006). The Southern California Bight Monitoring Program has found minimal change in the area where sediment contamination exists; it has not grown or spread in the last decade according to their region-wide sampling (Schiff, K., K. Maruya and K. Christensen 2006).

The most notable example of significant sediment contamination is the Palos Verdes Shelf superfund site. The site has high levels of DDT and PCBs in its sediment from years of wastewater discharge via outfalls (NRT 2006). The chemicals eventually settled out and formed an “effluent-affected sediment layer” (USEPA 2008e). As part of a major settlement, Montrose Chemical Corporation, among others companies, were found responsible for releasing harmful chemicals into the ocean, and were held responsible for remedial action (USEPA 2008e). Response action included determining the best method for remediating contaminated sediment, which included a capping effort. In addition, the Montrose Settlements

Restoration Program was developed to address natural resource impacts (see Section 4.6 for more details).

Recently, the State of California has made efforts to try to address sediment quality issues. The SWRCB has initiated a process to develop sediment quality objectives that will be included in the Water Quality Control Plan for Enclosed Bays and Estuaries of California (BPTCP 2008, CEPA 2008a). Sediment quality objectives will establish “an adequate margin of safety” for water bodies to ensure beneficial uses (CEPA 2008). The SWRCB targets enclosed bays and estuaries, as they are the most prone to sediment contamination (BPTCP 2008).

#### **4.4 Effects of Land Use on Coastal Waters**

Ecological interactions between the land and the sea may be considered in MPA site selection as modification of watershed land cover and ecological processes can affect downstream rivers and coastal waters. A variety of land use practices in watershed areas results in degraded quality of receiving waters. Map 4.2-1 show the “human footprint” in coastal watersheds in the study region as described by percent of land cover in agriculture and urban usage. Generally, pollution caused by such practices is not concentrated at any one point, but is diffuse in nature. This type of pollution is called nonpoint source pollution. Additionally, there are spatially specific discharges of pollutants associated with industrial sources or wastewater treatment that are considered point sources. In order to understand how human activities in watersheds can affect the quality of receiving waters in the south coast study region, it is useful to begin with a consideration of how local geology plays a role in watershed processes.

##### **4.4.1 Impacts of Local Geology on Water Quality**

The northern boundary of the study region is where mountains known as the Transverse Range, which are orientated east-west, create a boundary between central and southern California (CCC 2003). The region is characterized by changing coastal features, such as beach loss, cliff retreat, and coastal erosion (CABRILLO 2008).

The land adjacent to the ocean plays an important role in land-sea processes and water quality. Depositional and erosional coastal features are discussed in this section. Depositional features are coastal landforms or features, large in scale, that result from deposition of sediment over time (Garrison 2004, pg. 287). Conversely, erosional features are produced by erosive forces that cut away the coastline (Garrison 2004, pg. 278).

**Depositional features:** The south coast study region exhibits some notable depositional coastal features that include: beaches, coastal plains, deltas, spits, and barrier islands. Examples of some of these features are described here. The study region has a series of floodplain areas, referred to as coastal plains. Waters traveling down the watershed will drop sediments and other suspended particles out once they reach the floodplains (CCC 2003). The Los Angeles Coastal Plain is the largest in southern California, which is also an urban and

industrial area (Perry 2008). Rivers coming down the watershed are also an important source of sand for beach replenishment (CCC 2003). However, many rivers in the study region only have intermittent flow. This factor in combination with implications of urban development has created erosion and receding beaches (CCC 2003). Deltas, such as the Malibu Delta, are another landform feature in the south coast. The extent of this feature varies depending on the volume of water. During heavy rain events, deltas can be quite pronounced (Perry 2008). Prior to the development of the Los Angeles/Long Beach Harbor, a strip of land protected a shallow lagoon and mainland from the open ocean. That geologic feature no longer exists and likely has affects on the natural systems. Many of these geological features have an influence on water quality conditions, as they can affect water flow, erosion and sedimentation, and settling rate of sediments and pollutants. However, given the urbanization in much of the south coast, the services of these features have been reduced and water quality is impacted.

**Erosional features:** Terrestrial processes, such as streamflow and mass wasting, can create coastal features that are susceptible to erosion. Marine processes, such as wave action and currents, can have a similar role in erosional coastal features (Perry 2008). These coastal features include: headlands, coastal cliffs, and submarine canyons. Headlands are pinnacle features along the coast and can create the boundaries for littoral cells or geographic segments along the California coast (CCC 2003). Point Loma is an example of a headland formed by erosional processes. Coastal cliffs are another geologic feature subject to erosion by wave energy and wind. They have steep cliff faces that experience mass wasting, where erosional forces cause massive slides or rock falls into the ocean (Perry 2008). Another erosional feature, wavecut platform, is created in combination by two processes, and Natural landslides and erosional processes provides sediment needed for coastal processes, as well as nutrients such as iron that are often limited in near-shore waters; however, increased sediment delivery results in disruption of biological communities due to the smothering of marine habitats and increasing turbidity of the nearshore water column (MBNMS, 2003).

#### **4.4.2 Point Sources**

There are specific locations (point sources) where pollution enters coastal waters that are generally regulated by state or federal agencies. The origin of these point sources include municipal wastewater treatment and disposal systems, desalination plants, power plants, aquaculture sites, and research marine laboratories. Each of these are described below and in Table 4.4-1.

##### **Wastewater Treatment Facilities**

Approximately 20 municipal wastewater treatment facilities are located adjacent to the south coast study region, and at least eighteen discharge directly into the ocean (Table 4.4-1). The largest treatment facility is the City of Los Angeles' Hyperion Treatment Plant. It is one of the biggest dischargers of wastewater in the state, with an average discharge of 420 million gallons per day (CDFG GIS data, City of Los Angeles 2008a). This facility is operating near full capacity with 100% secondary treatment. Hyperion discharges directly into Santa Monica Bay through a outfall 5-miles offshore (outside of the study region), but some of the secondary

effluent is processed onsite and transported. The second largest discharge is the County of Los Angeles, which discharges approximately 385 million gallons per day. This plant is servicing regional municipal waste, industrial wastewater, and sludge from other county plants located upstream. The discharge is treated and then released via outfalls into the Pacific Ocean two miles off the Palos Verdes Peninsula (CSDLA 2008). In other areas of the study region, such as the San Diego Region, individual on-site waste treatment and disposal systems are increasingly becoming permanent alternatives to centralized sewage systems (SDRWQCB 2007). These on-site facilities have significant potential to cause water pollution, health hazards, and nuisance if not properly sited, designed, constructed, and maintained.

### **Seawater Desalination Plants**

Desalination is a water-producing technology that converts salt water into drinking water. There are several methods available for desalination, they include: 1) reverse osmosis, and 2) distillation (CCC 1993). Both involve feed water, or input water, and waste discharge. The waste discharge is liquid containing high salt concentrations, chemicals, and possibly toxic metals.

The technologies differ in how they process the feed water to yield drinking water and the associated by-products. Reverse osmosis involves processing water through high-pressure, permeable membranes that remove dissolved minerals (including salt). Distillation is a process that heats the water to separate out the dissolved minerals by evaporation. There are three ways desalination by-products are disposed. They can be discharged directly into the ocean, into a sewer for treatment, or dried on site and transported to a landfill (CCC 1993). Environmental concerns associated with seawater desalination include the potential for the water intake process to kill marine organisms and the effects discharge (direct ocean discharge) may have on local marine communities (CCC 2004).

Designs for new desalination plants are currently being developed in southern California, though expense of the process limits the viability of this industry. There are only three existing plants in the study region (see Table 4.5-1). In addition to these three plants, Poseidon Resources' Carlsbad Desalination Project was recently approved for construction by the California State Lands Commission (Poseidon Resources 2008). Furthermore, another eight plants are proposed in the study region. Most of these sites are/would be co-located with powerplants (CCC 2004).

**Table 4.4-1: Point sources in the south coast study region**

<b>Point Source</b>	<b>Effluent</b>	<b>Pollution Rating</b>
<b>Municipal Wastewater Treatment Facilities</b>		
City of Los Angeles Hyperion Treatment Plant	treated sanitary wastewater	major
LA County Sanitation Districts' Joint Water Pollution Control Plant (JWPCP)	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Orange County Sanitation District's Sewage Treatment Plant	treated sanitary wastewater	major

<b>Point Source</b>	<b>Effluent</b>	<b>Pollution Rating</b>
San Diego, City of, Metro WW Dept's Point Loma Outfall	treated sanitary wastewater	major
San Elijo Joint Powers Auth.'s San Elijo WPCF	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Encina Wastewater Authority's Encina Ocean Outfall	treated sanitary wastewater	major
City of Oceanside's Oceanside Ocean Outfall	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Southeast Regional Reclamation Authority's SERRA Ocean Outfall	treated sanitary wastewater	major
City of Oxnard's Waste Water Treatment Plan (WWTP)	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Aliso Water Management Agency's Aliso Ocean Outfall	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Int'l Boundary & Water Commission's South Bay IWTP	treated sanitary wastewater	major
City of Santa Barbara's El Estero WWTP NPDES	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Goleta Sanitary District's WWTP	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Carpinteria Sanitary District's WWTP	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Montecito Sanitary District's WWTP	treated sanitary wastewater	major
City of Avalon's WWTP NPD	treated sanitary wastewater	major
Summerland Sanitary District's WWTP	treated sanitary wastewater	minor
U.S. Navy Naval Air Station, North Island's San Clemente Island	treated sanitary wastewater	minor
<b>Desalination Plants</b>		
Chevron U.S.A. Inc.'s Gaviota Oil, Gas, and Desalination	desalination brine	Minor
U.S. Navy Naval Air Station's San Nicholas Island	desalination brine	Minor
Southern California Edison Co's Pebbly Beach Desalination Plant	desalination brine and possibly cooling water	Minor
<b>Powerplants</b>		
Southern California Edison Co.'s Songs Unit 3	cooling water	major
Southern California Edison Co.'s Songs Unit 2	cooling water	major
AES Corporation's Redondo Beach Generating Station	cooling water	major
Cabrillo Power LLC's Encina Power Plant	cooling water	major
Reliant Energy's Ormond Beach Generating Station	cooling water	major
El Segundo Power LLC's Generating Station	cooling water	major
AES Hunting Beach LLC's AES Huntington Beach	cooling water	major

<b>Point Source</b>	<b>Effluent</b>	<b>Pollution Rating</b>
Los Angeles City's Scattergood Generating Station	cooling water	major
Reliant Energy's Ocean Vista Power Station at Mandalay Beach	cooling water	major
Southern California Edison Co.'s Songs Unit 1	cooling water	major
<b>Other Permitted Pollution Discharge Points</b>		
Cultured Abalone Aquaculture	Aquaculture wastewater	minor
UC San Diego, Scripps Inst. Of Oceanography	Marine lab and public aquarium waste seawater	minor
USC Wrigley Institute Marine Science Center	Marine lab waste seawater	minor
Chevron U.S.A.'s El Segundo Refinery	Refinery wastewater	major
Nuevo Energy Company's Platform Esther	Treated sanitary waste from oil platform	minor
Nuevo Energy Company's Platform Eva	Treated sanitary waste from oil platform	minor

Source and pollution rating: CDFG GIS data, CCC 2004.

## **Stormwater outfalls**

Another kind of point source within the study region includes wet weather outfalls, which are a source of untreated storm water. These exist throughout the study region. For example, in the City of Los Angeles, there are 60 storm drain outfalls that release approximately 100 million gallons of untreated water each day into Santa Monica and San Pedro Bays (City of Los Angeles 2008b). While stormwater outfalls are considered a point source, they are closely related to the topics discussed in the following section, 4.4.3.

### **4.4.3 Nonpoint Sources**

Nonpoint source pollution is the leading cause of degraded water bodies in southern California and across the country (SWRCB 2004, EPA 2002). Unlike point sources, nonpoint source pollution is difficult to control and address because it derives from many diffuse sources. In the study region, nonpoint source pollution occurs during rain events where runoff moves over the land, picks up and transports pollutants, and deposits them into surface waters (e.g. estuaries, coastal waters, the ocean). Common nonpoint source pollutants are sediment, pesticides, fertilizers, trash, salt, oils, heavy metals, grease, bacteria, and nutrients, among many other substances (SWRCB 2000).

There are five major categories of nonpoint source pollution: 1) agriculture, 2) urban, 3) resource extraction, 4) hydrologic modification, and 5) marinas and recreational activities. Each of these sources is described below.

## **Agriculture**

The agriculture industry is an essential part of California's economy (LARWQCB 1994). The primary crops vary in the study region from north to south. In Ventura County, fruits, nuts, vegetables, and nursery plants are the commonly grown crops; whereas, farms in the San Diego region grow avocados, citrus, cut flowers, and nursery plants (LARWQCB 1994, SDRWQCB 2007). The nonpoint source pollution typically associated with agriculture includes nutrients, animal waste, sediments, and pesticides that enter receiving waters by direct runoff to surface waters or seepage into ground water. These pollutants degrade aquatic habitats by causing eutrophication, turbidity, temperature increases, toxicity, and decreased oxygen (SWRCB 2008b). Agricultural activities are regulated by state and regional water boards through point source and nonpoint source programs (LARWQCB 1994, SDRWQCB 2007, SARWQCB 2008). To help address water quality issues related to agriculture, the regional water boards work with local governments to promote the incorporation of Best Management Practices. Best Management Practices along with small grants are part of an incentive approach to encourage growers to reduce runoff and conserve water (Map 4.2-1).

## **Urban Areas**

Southern California is the most populated coastline in the country, with two of the largest coastal cities—Los Angeles and San Diego (SWRCB 2008b). The study region is largely urbanized, and the modification to land surface caused by that development affects runoff magnitude and type of runoff pollutants (Booth and Jackson 1997). Urban areas include buildings, roads, parking lots, and other residential, industrial, or commercial paved surfaces. Replacement of natural land cover with impervious surfaces increases stream channel erosion, flooding, water contamination, sedimentation, and degradation of aquatic habitat (Center for Watershed Protection 2003). This may result in increased runoff as well as higher concentrations of harmful pollutants within runoff. The pollutants commonly found in the study region's urban runoff are sediment, urban debris, plastics, road salts, viruses, pathogenic bacteria, heavy metals, pesticides, and petroleum hydrocarbons (LARWQCB 1994, SWRCB 2008b). Santa Monica Bay is one example of a water body impacted by pollutant loading from urban runoff. On average, 30 billion gallons of storm and urban runoff reach the Santa Monica Bay each year by way of over 200 outlets (SMBRC 2004, LARWQCB 1994). This location is currently part of a restoration effort to improve water quality, reducing urban runoff is difficult because it does not reach Santa Monica Bay by discrete pathways. Smaller municipalities, as well as road construction, throughout the study region also generate urban nonpoint source pollution (Map 4.2-1).

## **Resource Extraction**

Resource extraction is another source of nonpoint source pollution that can have impacts on water quality from even minor pollution incidents (SWRCB 2000). This category includes activities that extract resources from the earth, such as mining, drilling and pumping petroleum products. There are a several reasons why resource extraction can impact water quality. One reason is that extraction can cause erosion or sedimentation into nearby streams. Another indirect impact may include leaching or discharge of harmful chemicals. In addition, oil

extraction poses a threat to water quality because during extraction and transportation spills may occur, even the smallest of which may have notable impacts on local ecosystems.

Industries involved with resource extraction in the study region are important to local economies. California is ranked third in the country for non-fuel mineral production, such as sand and gravel (Kohler 2007). Sand and gravel mining are the most common mining activities in the Los Angeles area and the San Diego Region (LARWQCB 1994 and SDRWQCB 2007). Nonpoint sources associated with oil and gas productions are spills during transportation, water runoff from work sites, and seeping and overflow issues related to reserve and production pits (LARWQCB 1994, SWRCB 2000).

### **Hydrologic Modification**

Floodplains are a landscape feature that collect water traveling down the watershed and reduce flows. As a result, water and pollutants have the opportunity to settle out and/or infiltrate into the soil (Booth and Jackson 1997). They serve as natural buffers by removing suspended solids and contaminants from the water. In urban settings, where the flood control services of floodplains are lost, hydrologic modifications are used in lieu of the natural feature. In general, hydrologic modifications are designed to control water flow (LARWQCB 1994). A number of activities fall within the category of hydrologic modifications, such as alteration of stream and river channels, installation of dams and water impoundments, and dredging (SWRCB 2000).

While hydrologic modifications are intended to address urban water issues, they sometimes lead to degraded water quality (SWRCB 2000). Hydrologic modification is a notable nonpoint source in the south coast due to urbanization in the region (LARWQCB 1994). It can reduce the quality of aquatic habitats by altering temperature and sediment transport (SWRCB 2008b).

### **Ports, Harbors, Marinas and Associated Vessels**

Marinas, as well as other embayments, along with associated vessels can have particularly adverse impacts on water quality, as most pollutants are directly discharged into the water (SWRCB 2008b). In the south coast study region, recreational boating is an important activity in terms of social and economic benefits (CADMV 2008, Rust and Potepan 1997). In 2007, there were 301,098 recreational vessels measuring less than 13 feet with jet propulsion in the study region (CADMV 2008). Southern California's small vessels make up about 30% of the state's total and 99% of the vessels in the study region are pleasure boats (CADMV 2008). The boating industry is an important part of the economy, contributed \$11.0 billion in southern California, and provides 183,000 jobs (Johnson 1998, Rust and Potepan 1997) (more in section 5.0). Unfortunately, boating-related activities can also cause water pollution from antifouling paint, sewage, spills, wastewater, and trash (SWRCB 2008b).

Antifouling paint used on boat hulls to reduce fouling growth contains harmful chemicals, such as copper and lead (USEPA 1993, Carson et al. 2002). These chemicals can have adverse effects on aquatic species (e.g. mussels, sea urchins) by impeding growth, reproduction,



spawning, eating, and survival (Carson et al. 2002). In San Diego and Newport Bay, levels of dissolved copper exceed water quality standards (USEPA 2001, Carson et al. 2002). Efforts are in place to transition boats over to non-metal antifouling paints.

Commercial vessels are another potential source of pollution. There are a number of different types of commercial vessels, such as charter fishing, commercial fishing, crew and supply, ferries and excursion vessels, tug boats, etc. In 2004, roughly 300 commercial vessels identified their home port within southern California (ARB 2004). However, there are significantly more large vessels transiting in and through the study region. The majority of these transits are large commercial vessels, such as container ships and bulk product carriers, which travel within 2 miles of shore and carry up to 1 million gallons of bunker fuel (similar to crude oil).

The historical number of oil spills along the Pacific Coast is small, but the potential size and impact of such a spill on the marine environment can be significant (MBNMS 2006). While southern California has only experienced a few big oil spill events, on a daily basis there are small oil and fuel spills that individually may not have significant ecological impacts but cumulatively do (Taylor 1998). These incidental spills generally occur in marinas and harbors where there is minimal or no flushing to dilute the spill. Fishing boats, pleasure crafts, the Navy, and facilities are some of the minor spill sources in the study region (Taylor 1998). For more detailed information on the large-scale oil events in the study region, review Section 4.3, on Coastal Water Quality.

Ballast water from commercial vessels and cruise ships is another concern, as it is a potential source of non-indigenous species. Non-indigenous species are organisms not native to an area. Once established, they can cause negative affects on the marine environment (Falkner et al. 2006). Some known non-indigenous species associated with ballast waters include the Zebra mussel, Chinese mitten crab, Japanese shore crab, and Amur river clam (Falkner et al. 2006). Southern California, on average, has more introduced species in its coastal waters, bays, and harbors, than sites north of Point Conception (Maloney et al. 2006). According to a study that sampled at sites along the entire coast, Point Fermin had the most introduced species with eight types of species, which make up 2.2% of total taxa. An interesting point to note is the sites with the most introduced species also are within proximity to major shipping ports. For example, two of the sites, Point Fermin and Pin Rock, are located near Los Angeles/Long Beach harbor, and Point Loma is located near San Diego bay (Maloney et al. 2006). The California State Lands Commission regulates ballast water.

## **4.5 Coastal Energy Projects**

A large number of energy projects exist within and adjacent to the south coast study region. Some of these projects may have effects on the marine ecology of the study region by impacting water quality, oceanographic patterns, habitat suitability, and other environmental conditions. Some of these energy projects are briefly described below and may be considered in MPA planning.

Energy demand in California is increasing by an average rate of 1.6% each year. In 2007 nearly 11.9% of California's electricity supply came from renewable resources, such as wind and geothermal, while the remainder came from fossil fuels, nuclear power and large hydro-electric plants (energyalmanac.ca.gov). Coastal energy production is greater in the south coast study region than in any of the study regions (Larson 2002). This energy production comes in the form of offshore oil drilling, nuclear power plants and coal and natural gas power plants, among other sources.

California's demand for energy is reflected in its oil consumption. California is the third largest oil-producing state in the country but the second largest oil consumer in the nation. California consumes more oil than it produces (Larson 2002). Therefore, California is heavily dependent on marine transportation for crude oil and refined petroleum products. Approximately 50% of crude oil used in the state comes by ocean tanker. A total of 21.3% comes from Alaska, while the remaining 29.3% comes from foreign sources. (Larson 2002).

#### **4.5.1 Liquid Natural Gas Projects**

The United States has four liquefied natural gas receiving and regasification terminals, but no terminal is located on the West Coast (California Energy Commission 2003). A number of companies have proposed LNG import sites in California, some of which are in waters offshore from the south coast study region. Pipelines associated with such a project outside of state waters could possibly traverse the study region.

#### **4.5.2 Oil Platforms**

California has a permanent moratorium on offshore oil and gas leasing in state waters, and there is a leasing moratorium in federal waters. The federal moratorium is currently being reevaluated. However, development on existing state and federal leases is not affected and may still occur within offshore areas leased prior to the implementation of leasing restrictions.

The 1969 blowout and oil spill from Union Oil of California's (Unocal) platform A in the Santa Barbara Channel received international attention and was a major catalyst in the development of modern environmental law in the United States. The spill influenced the passage of major state and federal legislation, such as the National Environmental Protection Act (NEPA), Clean Water Act, California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA), California Coastal Initiative in 1972 (Proposition 20), and California Coastal Act of 1976. Pursuant to these and other statutes, development permits for onshore and offshore oil and gas facilities cannot be issued without provisions to protect terrestrial, marine, visual, recreational, and air resources.

As of May, 2008, there are 26 production platforms, one processing platform, and six artificial oil and gas production islands located in the waters offshore California (CERES 2006a). Of these 27 platforms, four are located in state waters offshore Santa Barbara and Orange Counties (Map 4.5-1), and 23 are located in federal waters offshore Santa Barbara, Ventura, and Los Angeles Counties. Four platforms, in state waters off Santa Barbara County were

abandoned and removed in 1996. There are also 80 marine terminals in state waters and numerous land-based oil production, transportation, and storage facilities. Most of these marine terminals are located in the south coast study region.

#### **4.5.3 Electric Generating Power Plants**

As of 2002, there were 1,200 generators producing power state-wide. Coastal power plants comprise 41% of California's electric generating capacity (Larson 2002). In 2005, there were 21 coastal power plants producing 50 mega-watts of power or greater, and 13 of these plants are located in the south coast study region (Map 4.5-1).

Power plants in California are located on the coast in part because most of California's population lives within 50 miles of the coastline. Thus, fewer costly high-voltage transmission lines are needed and the power is more reliable. Other siting factors relate to large volume oil transportation and importation to marine oil terminals, and the availability of abundant cooling water.

In 1978, the State Coastal Commission produced a set of maps placing most of the coast off-limits to new power plants, although existing sites could be used for expansions. Starting in the 1980's through the present, many small coastal power plants (less than 50 mega-watts) were built for use by hospitals, local municipalities, academic institutions, hotels, and private companies. These coastal power plants generate electricity for their own use; however, they can sell surplus electricity to California's Independent System Operator.

Large coastal power plants (at least 50 mega-watts of generating capacity) use a once through cooling system that withdraws water from a nearby open water source such as a bay, estuary, or ocean. California coastal power plants are permitted to withdraw and discharge approximately 16,700 million gallons of cooling water per day. Generating electricity involves burning fuel in a boiler to turn water into superheated steam. The spent steam is condensed back into water, and the discharged water is up to 20 degrees warmer than when it was withdrawn. This withdrawal and discharge of cooling water has an impact on ocean organisms and habitats. For instance, drawing water from coastal waters can lead to impingement and entrainment. Impingement means aquatic organisms are trapped against or within components of the cooling system. Entrainment means aquatic organisms are drawn through the cooling system. Impingement usually affects larger organisms such as fish that are trapped within or against the cooling water system structures and either die of starvation or exhaustion ([www.energy.ca.gov](http://www.energy.ca.gov)). Entrainment usually kills smaller organisms in early life stages by exposing them to water temperature increases, mechanical damage, and/or toxic stress.

Owners of coastal power plants are experimenting with deterrents to keep marine organisms out of water intake systems. The California Coastal Commission required environmental impact mitigation for Southern California Edison's San Onofre coastal power plant. Southern California Edison spent \$5 million on the white seabass hatchery in Aqua Hedionda Lagoon, a restoration project in the San Dieguito wetlands near Del Mar, and \$50 million to build a 150-

acre artificial reef a half-mile offshore. This artificial reef is considered to be the largest such structure in the country (more information on this artificial reef is included in section 5.11.2).

Recently, the SWRCB is in the process of developing a state policy for water quality control to establish requirements for implementing section 316(b), of the federal Clean Water Act for existing coastal and estuarine power plants (SWRCB, CEPA 2008a). Section 316(b) of the Clean Water Act requires that power plants use the best technology available to minimize ecological damage caused by impingement and entrainment during operational procedures. Efforts by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency to adopt regulations to implement section 316(b) have been unsuccessful, which is why the SWRCB has decided to address this issue.

#### **4.5.4 Wave Energy**

Wave energy electric generating system technologies are just now entering initial commercial deployment in California (California Energy Commission 2008). Most interest in wave energy projects is in the north central coast and north coast study regions and there are currently no systems installed in the south coast study region.

South of Point Conception, the best wave energy resources occur to the west of the Channel Islands, nearly 60 miles or more from the nearest mainland transmission lines. However, the energy producing prospects for this region are considered poor (Kane 2005). Adverse impacts on marine organisms and habitats associated with future wave energy projects in the south coast study region could come from directional drilling through the shoreline, cable burial on the ocean floor, setting of anchors or other permanent structures into the seafloor, and cable laying and other operational activities.

### **4.6 Water Quality Projects in the South Coast Study Region**

There are a number of water quality projects in the south coast study region. Some of these projects are dedicated to analyzing regional and local water quality, while others focus on restoring water quality and other ecological characteristics. The subsections below describe some of the major water quality monitoring programs and provide examples of the region's restoration projects.

#### **4.6.1 Water Quality Monitoring Programs**

The following are some water quality monitoring programs that exist or have existed in the south coast study region:

- **Southern California Bight Regional Monitoring Program** is a regional monitoring program with standardized data collection methods to assess and analyze sediment conditions, water quality and contaminant input sources for southern California. This regional effort involves local, state and federal entities and is coordinated by the

Southern Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP). There have been three surveys implemented and completed and another is currently underway. The methods, data collection, and results require the participation of a diverse network of citizens and scientists. The information developed is vetted by a multi-party review. This regional monitoring effort was established when the National Research Council identified the need to better coordinate and link up local monitoring efforts. More information about the Bight Monitoring Program can be found at <http://www.sccwrp.org/sitemap.html#Regional>.

- **California Coastkeeper Alliance** is a non-profit organization that focuses on clean water and a healthy coastal environment by advocating for relevant community-based policy that aims to support both clean water and healthy ecosystems. The Alliance is made up of regional Waterkeeper organizations. In the study region, there are five Coastkeeper organizations: Santa Barbara, Ventura, Santa Monica, Orange County, and San Diego. The Alliance coordinates with the regional organizations working on local projects to connect their individual efforts. To help improve and/or maintain healthy water quality, Waterkeeper members throughout the study region participate in monthly watershed water quality monitoring (California Coastkeeper Alliance 2008). These results are posted on the regional organizations' websites (<http://www.cacoastkeeper.org/water-quality-maps.php>).
- **Stormwater Monitoring Coalition** is a collaborative program with southern California stormwater management agencies to better align monitoring efforts, create consistency, provide technical guidance and tools, and share information. Stormwater Monitoring Coalition participants include: County of Orange, County of Los Angeles, County of San Diego, Ventura County Watershed Protection District, City of Long Beach, City of Los Angeles, SWRCB, Regional Water Quality Control Boards Los Angeles Region, Santa Ana Region and San Diego Regions, EPA Region 9, Southern California Coastal Waters Research Project, and CalTrans. (<http://www.sccwrp.org/tools/stormwater.html>)
- **Local Ocean Water Monitoring Programs:** There are six programs within the study region. They are responsible for regularly sampling beaches in the study region to monitor bacteria levels. High bacteria levels can result in unsafe water quality, where beaches may be posted or closed. Typically, high rains or sewage spills increase levels of bacteria in beach areas. The six local or county monitoring programs include:
  - County of Santa Barbara, Environmental Health Services, Ocean Monitoring Program (<http://sbcphd.org/ehs/ocean.htm>)
  - County of Ventura, Environmental Health Division, Ocean Water Quality Monitoring Program (<http://www.ventura.org/rma/envhealth/programs/ocean/index.htm>)
  - County of Los Angeles, Department of Public Health, Ocean Water Monitoring Program (<http://www.lapublichealth.org/eh/progs/envirp/rechlth/ehrecoc.htm>)
  - City of Long Beach, Health and Human Services, Water Quality Program ([http://www.longbeach.gov/health/organization/eh/water/water\\_samples.asp](http://www.longbeach.gov/health/organization/eh/water/water_samples.asp))
  - County of Orange, Health Care Agency, Environmental Health Division, Ocean Water Protection Program (<http://www.ocbeachinfo.com/>)

- County of San Diego, Department of Environmental Health, Beach and Bay Program ([http://www.sdcountry.ca.gov/deh/water/beach\\_bay.html](http://www.sdcountry.ca.gov/deh/water/beach_bay.html))
- **Surface Water Ambient Monitoring Program (SWAMP)** is a statewide surface water quality monitoring effort between the SWRCB, Regional Water Quality Control Boards, and other monitoring efforts. Information on SWAMP can be found at: [http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/swamp/](http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/swamp/). There are several programs under SWAMP; they include:
  - Clean Water Team is a citizen monitoring effort out of the SWRCB to collect information on water quality, fish habitat, bird populations, and stream health. ([http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/swamp/cwt\\_volunteer.shtml](http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/swamp/cwt_volunteer.shtml))
  - State Mussel Watch Program/ Toxic Substance Monitoring Program was a site-specific monitoring program in place for over twenty years that sampled mussels and clams to detect and assess the existence of toxic substances. This effort ended in 2003. During its existence, it focused data collection on water bodies with known or suspected water quality problems. ([http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/swamp/mussel\\_watch.shtml](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/swamp/mussel_watch.shtml))
  - Toxic Substance Monitoring Program is another program that existed within SWAMP that was discontinued in 2003 but had been in existence for 27 years. That program was also site-specific and sampled fish and other aquatic specimens from known or suspected impaired water bodies. Specimens were analyzed for trace elements, pesticides, and organic compounds, such as PCBs. ([http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/swamp/programs.shtml](http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/swamp/programs.shtml))

#### **4.6.2 Water Quality Restoration Projects**

In addition to water quality monitoring programs, the study region also includes a number of restoration projects. Examples of such restoration projects include Montrose Settlements Restoration Program and the Santa Monica Bay Restoration Project. Tidal wetlands restoration is the focus of the Montrose Program, it was created to improve fish nursery habitat as part of a mitigation plan for DDT-contaminated waste that discharged from Montrose Chemical Corporation's plant for over thirty years (Natural Resource Trustees 2006). The Santa Monica Bay Restoration Project was established under the National Estuary Program and the program's responsibility is to assess Bay pollution and develop a restoration plan (LARWQCB 1994). Additional information on restoration projects in the study region are detailed section 3.0 on the ecological setting of the study region and locations of some restoration projects are shown on map 3.1-1.

## **5.0 Socioeconomic Setting**

California's marine and coastal environments form part of the state's identity and support important economies that depend on healthy ocean resources. Socioeconomic conditions affect marine resource use patterns, coastal livelihoods, and human activities. A brief overview of coastal counties, ocean economy, demographics, and resource use in the study region is provided as regional context for MPA planning.

Information provided in this section has also been collected from a variety of sources. Data from the U.S. Census Bureau, California Department of Finance, California Employment Development Department, the National Ocean Economics Program, and Dean Runyan Associates were compiled for each county and are discussed below. Furthermore, information has been collected from public documents (general plans, resolutions, etc.) related to marine uses from coastal public entities (counties, cities, special districts, parks).

For each county, two types of information are provided: general economic data on top industries for the county and specialized information on top ocean-related industries. Information describing the overall economy came from the California Economic Development Department. The California Economic Development Department reports on industry sectors identified in the North American Industry Classification System. The specialized information on the ocean-related economy came from the National Ocean Economics Program, which also is based on the North American Industry Classification System. The industry sectors referenced by the two types of information were not necessarily the same because the sectors central to the ocean economy may not have a proportional impact on the overall economy.

The National Ocean Economics Program's Ocean Sector and Industry Data provide information for industries, which depend on and derive their source from the ocean and shoreline. These data are referenced below for six ocean industry sectors (defined by the National Ocean Economics Program), and include the number of establishments, number of people employed, wages paid, and gross state product. The ocean industry sectors include:

1. Coastal Construction (marine construction).
2. Living Resources (fishing, fish hatcheries and aquaculture, seafood markets and seafood processing).
3. Offshore Minerals (limestone, sand and gravel; oil and gas exploration and production)
4. Tourism and Recreation (amusement and recreation services, boat dealers, eating and drinking places, hotels and lodging places, marine, recreational vehicle parks and campgrounds, scenic water tours, sporting good retailers, zoos and aquaria).
5. Transportation (deep-sea freight transportation, marine passenger transportation, marine transportation services, search and navigation equipment, and warehousing).

Please note that recreational fishing is included in the Tourism and Recreation category and not in the Living Resources category.

## **5.1 Coastal Counties**

There are five coastal counties located adjacent to the south coast study region. Each of the counties is briefly discussed below. They include, from north to south:

- Santa Barbara
- Ventura
- Los Angeles
- Orange
- San Diego

It should be recognized that individuals residing outside of these five counties also utilize the coast and oceans within the study region and that the socioeconomic importance of marine resources within the south coast has broader effects beyond the counties described below.

### **5.1.1 Santa Barbara**

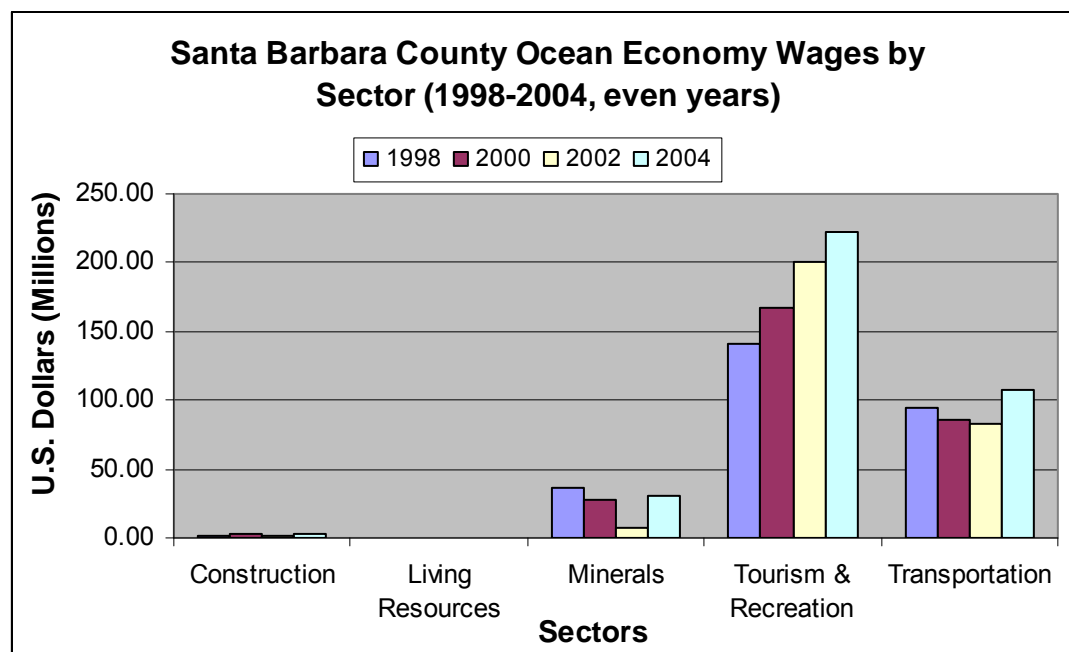
Santa Barbara County encompasses 2,738.5 mi<sup>2</sup> and has a shoreline span of roughly 59.3 miles (U.S. Census 2008, data comes from related GIS data layer). Santa Barbara is one of the larger counties in the study region but has the smallest population and also has the fewest people per square mile (see Table 5.3-1).

The top employers in Santa Barbara are predominately service-based, not resource-based industries. Services, government, trade and transportation, and goods producing are the primary industries in the county (Economic Development Department 2008 and U.S. Census 2006). Approximately 35% of employment comes from the service industry; the other top industries provide no more than 5%. The tourism industry falls within the services sector. In 2006, travel spending in Santa Barbara totaled \$1,443.0 million annually (Dean Runyan Associates 2008).

In addition, economic information was gathered for the ocean-related sectors found in the study region. These sectors, which depend upon ocean resources, include construction, living resources, minerals, ship and boat building, tourism and recreation, and transportation. Wages by sector provide an economic comparison of how important each sector is in any given county. Note that not all sectors were represented in the counties. For Santa Barbara County, the tourism and recreation sector provided the highest economic contribution, in terms of wages, compared to all other ocean-related sectors with an average \$182.9 million per year (National Ocean Economics Program 2008). Transportation was the second highest sector with wages averaging \$92.8 million annually. The other remaining sectors were roughly \$25 million per year or less (See Figure 5.1-1).



**Figure 5.1-1: Santa Barbara County ocean economy wages by sector**



Source: National Ocean Economics Program 2008.

Note: Values were not converted to year 2000 equivalents. The Living Resources sector only provided wages during 2002, however the amount was not large enough to show on the graph, given the scale.

### 5.1.2 Ventura County

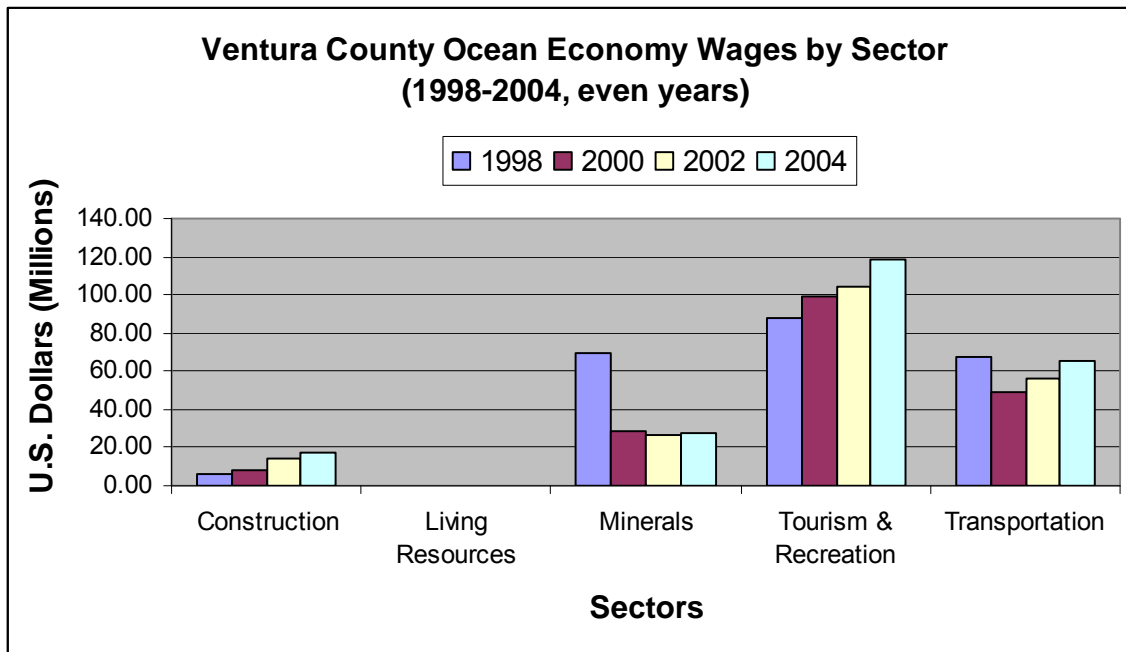
Ventura County encompasses 1,845.3 mi<sup>2</sup> and has a shoreline span of roughly 40.2 miles (U.S. Census Bureau 2008). It is one of the least populated counties in the study region (see Table 5.3-1). The economic condition in Ventura County, similar to Santa Barbara, is reflective of the less crowded, smaller population.

Ventura County's top industries are service-related industries with approximately 33% of the county's employment (Economic Development Department 2008). The top third and fourth industries in Ventura County are goods producing, and trade, transportation and utilities. The relative contribution to employment by these top industries also has a similar pattern to Santa Barbara. The third, fourth, or fifth ranked industries provide a much smaller percentage to Ventura's employment with 5% or less than the top industries (Employment Development Division 2008). Tourism provides only 3% of employment and the industry provides Ventura County with \$1,282.7 million annually in travel spending (Dean Runyan Associates 2008).

For ocean-related sectors, the tourism and recreation industry contributed the most in wages from 1998-2004 (looking at even year data) with an average of \$102 million per year (National Ocean Economics Program 2008). Included in that sector is recreational fishing, which is considered an important part of Ventura County's heritage, social identity, and economy. Squid is an important fishery, both recreationally and commercially, in Ventura (Langdon-Pollock 2004). The transportation sector followed but provided slightly more than half the earnings

provided by tourism and recreation. There was a dramatic drop in the minerals sector from 1998 to 2000 and that nearly \$40 million loss in wages per year that has not recovered. The smallest sector is living resources with less than half a million dollars annually in wages and data was unavailable for 1998 and 2000 (Figure 5.1-2).

**Figure 5.1-2: Ventura County ocean economy wages by sector**



Source: National Ocean Economics Program 2008.

Note: The Living Resources sector only provided wages during 2002 and 2004 and the average contribution was not large enough to show on the graph, given the scale.

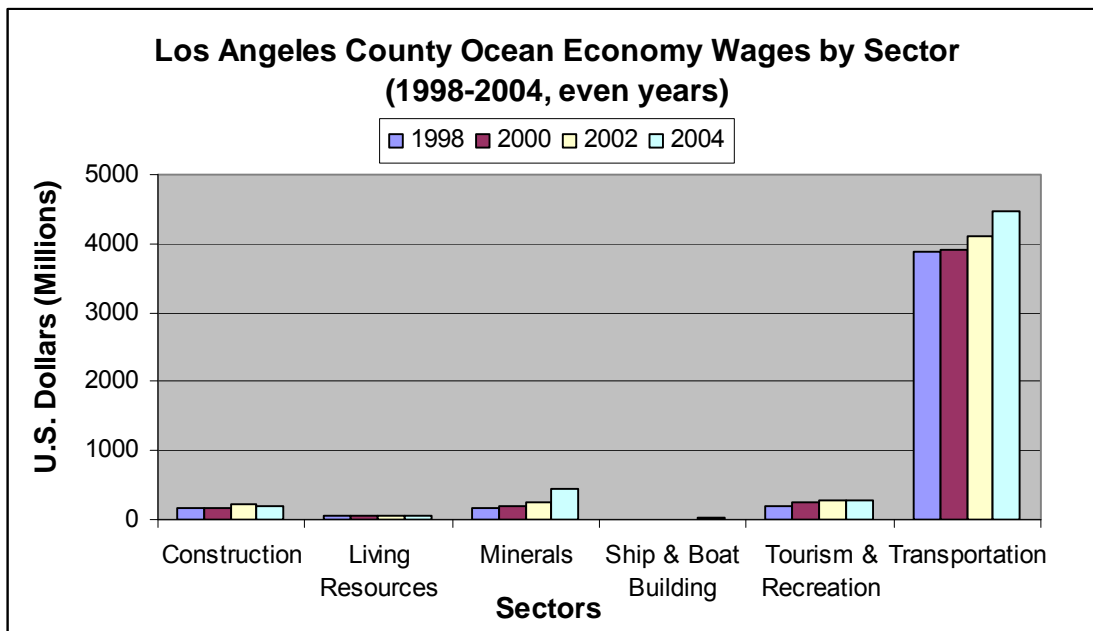
### 5.1.3 Los Angeles County

Los Angeles County encompasses 4,060.9 mi<sup>2</sup> and includes San Clemente and Santa Catalina Islands (U.S. Census Bureau 2008). Its mainland coast has a shoreline span of roughly 65.8 miles. While Los Angeles County has one of the largest land areas, it also has the largest population with nearly 10 million people estimated in 2006 (U.S. Census Bureau 2008). Approximately 16.7% of that population lives below poverty level, which is the highest poverty level in the study region (U.S. Census Bureau 2008).

The county has a diverse, evenly distributed economic base. Services, goods producing, government, and manufacturing sectors each provided between 4 to 6 million jobs in 2006 (Economic Development Department 2008). However due to the broad distribution, they only make up 3 – 4% of employment within Los Angeles County. Tourism is not as important to the county's economy as it is in the study region's other counties. Only 6.2% sales tax receipts are visitor related (Dean Runyan Associates 2008).

The transportation sector, by far, provides the highest contribution to wages within Los Angeles County's ocean economy. Total wages for the transportation sector are in the billions, whereas all other sectors are in the millions (Figure 5.1-3 ). The tourism and recreation and the construction sectors follow with average wages of roughly \$247 million and \$184 million respectively (National Ocean Economics Program 2008). Moving from the north, Los Angeles County is the first with a consistent living resources sector, which produced on average roughly \$46 million annually in wages. While ship and boat building showed about \$17 million annually in wages for 2004, there was no data for the prior three years (Figure 5.1-3).

**Figure 5.1-3: Los Angeles County ocean economy wages by sector**



Source: National Ocean Economics Program 2008.

Note: There was no data for Ship and Boat Building for 1998, 2000, or 2002.

#### 5.1.4 Orange County

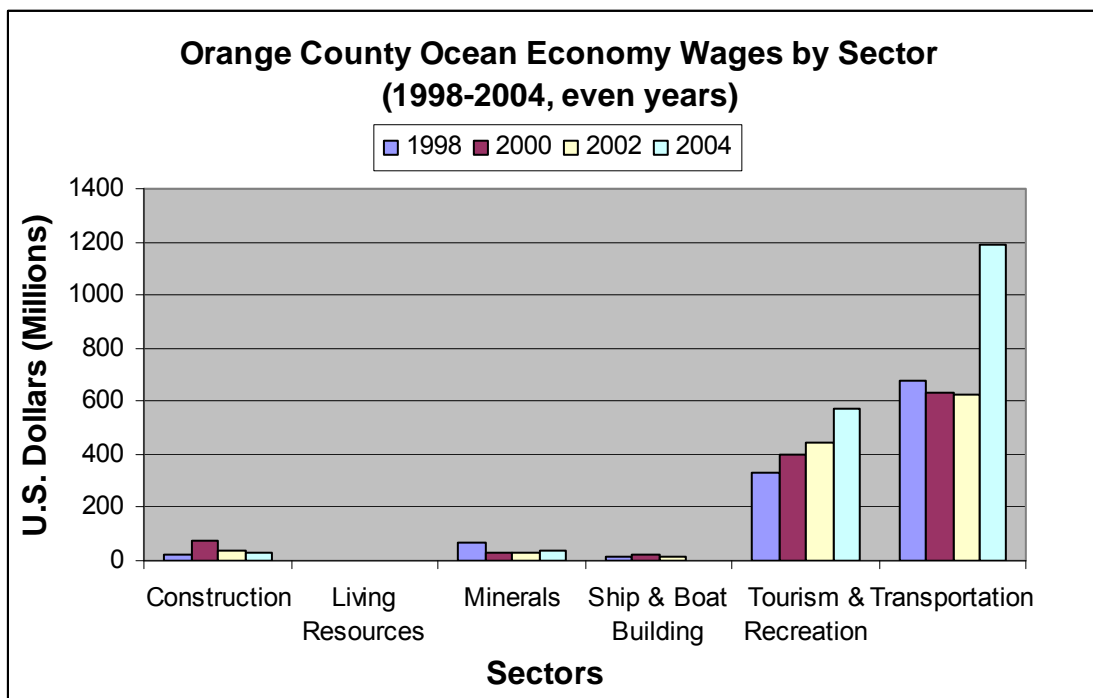
Orange County encompasses 789.4 mi<sup>2</sup> and has a shoreline span of 40.1 miles (U.S. Census Bureau 2008). While Orange County is the smallest in area, it has one of the largest and densely populated in the study region as shown in Table 5.3-1 (U.S. Census 2008). Despite the large population, it has the lowest unemployment rate in the study region and only a small percentage living below poverty (U.S. Census 2008).

The type and distribution of top industries for Orange County are similar to that of Santa Barbara County. Again, there is a pattern where the top industry(s) accounts for a much greater percentage of the employment than the subsequent top five industries. The services industry, broken into three groups, employed the most people in 2007 (34% of the total employment). Government, and trade and transportation are the next highest sectors with

each accounting for 4% of employment. Tourism in this county only accounts for 4.2% of total employment (Dean Runyan Associates 2008).

The ocean-related economy for Orange County is unique compared to the rest of the study region. Transportation was the top sector and provides on average \$780.8 million annually in wages. Note that transportation experienced a significant increase in 2004, at this time it is unclear if there was some isolated event or a dramatic upward trend. The tourism and recreation sector followed with an average of \$437.9 million in annual wages produced. The remaining four sectors only contribute a small percentage to the total wages in Orange County's ocean-related economy (Figure 5.1-4).

**Figure 5.1-4: Orange County ocean economy wages by sector**



Source: National Ocean Economics Program 2008.

Note: There was data for Living Resources for all four years but its contribution in wages was too small to be captured in the figure based on the scale used. There was no data for Ship and Boat Building for 2004.

### 5.1.5 San Diego County

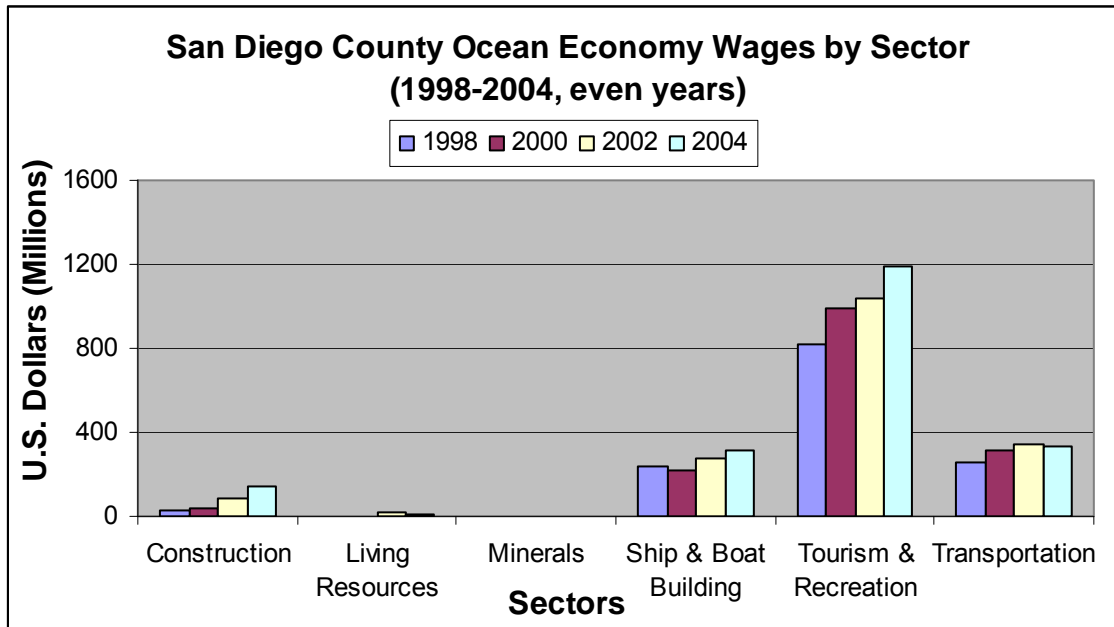
San Diego County has a shoreline span of roughly 69.1 miles and encompasses 4,199.9 mi<sup>2</sup>, making it the largest county in the study region. The population of 2.9 million people is the third highest, behind Los Angeles and Orange County (U.S. Census Bureau 2008).

San Diego has a broad range of industries that support the county's economy. The services, trade and government sectors make up the economic base (Economic Development Department 2008). The services sector employed the highest number of people in 2007 with 34% of total employment. Tourism falls within that sector but does not make up a significant

portion of the employment. The industry is still important to the overall economy; San Diego County received the second highest percentage of visitor-related tax receipts in the study region with 9.9% of total tax receipts for in 2006 (Dean Runyan Associates 2008).

Although tourism does not have a significant effect in the county's overall economy, it does play an essential role in the ocean-based economy. On average, the tourism and recreation sector contributes \$1,010 million in annual wages and it is steadily increasing (National Ocean Economics Program 2008). This figure is not surprising given that recreational fishing is very popular in this region and there is wide support for this industry (Langdon-Pollock 2004). Transportation, and ship and boat building followed respectively with \$314 and \$262 million annually. Data on wages was unavailable for the minerals for 1998 and 2000 (Figure 5.1-5).

**Figure 5.1-5: San Diego County ocean economy wages by sector**



Source: National Ocean Economics Program 2008.

Note: There was no data for Minerals for 1998 and 2000.

## 5.2 Major Coastal Communities

It is important to look at major coastal cities within the study region when considering socioeconomic factors, as important community-level characteristics may be missed if only county statistics are considered. Therefore, the following section provides a closer look at five of major coastal communities located adjacent to the Pacific Ocean in the study region. To characterize the coastal cities' populations and economic conditions, statistics regarding unemployment rate, income level, and percent below poverty are provided (see Table 5.2-1).

**Table 5.2-1: Population and economic characteristics for major cities along the Pacific Ocean in the south coast study region**

<b>City</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Total Population (2003 Estimate)<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Unemploy ment rate (2000)<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Per- capita income (1999)<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Median household income (1999)<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Percent below poverty (1999)<sup>1</sup></b>
San Diego	San Diego	1,266,753	4.9%	\$23,609	\$45,733	14.6%
Long Beach	Los Angeles	475,460	8.4%	\$19,040	\$37,270	22.8%
Chula Vista	San Diego	199, 060	5.9%	\$18,556	\$44,861	10.6%
Huntingt on Beach	Orange	194,248	5.0%	\$31,964	\$64,824	6.6%
Oxnard	Ventura	180,872	5.6%	\$15,288	\$48,603	15.1%

Source: <sup>1</sup> U.S. Census Bureau 2008.

<sup>2</sup> U.S. Census Bureau 2006.

### 5.3 Population Projections

Most of the population of California lives near the coast. Approximately 76% of California's population lives in coastal counties that represent only 25% of the state's total area (Kildow and Colgan 2005). In particular, the south coast study region has highly urbanized population centers directly on the coast. As of 2000, Orange and Los Angeles Counties have the greatest population densities (Table 5.3-1). Orange County has the least amount of land, while Los Angeles County has the most people. San Diego County has a similar population size to Orange County but has the land size of Los Angeles. The major cities adjacent to the Pacific Ocean within The study region include: San Diego (1.3 million), Long Beach (0.5 million), Chula Vista (0.2 million), Huntington Beach (0.2 million), and Oxnard (0.2 million) (California Department of Finance 2008).

Population growth trends in coastal counties may result in increasing pressure on and impacts to coastal and marine resources and habitats. Based on a demographic model that incorporates fertility, migration, and survival rates, population projections indicate that Ventura County will have the highest percent change in population growth over the next fifty years, followed by San Diego County with similar growth (see Figure 5.3-1). The other three counties adjacent to the study region are expected to see a similar growth pattern, where there will be a slight population increase within this decade and a much larger percent population change from 2000 to 2050. Santa Barbara, which has the smallest population and the lowest density, will experience the least growth and percent population change between 2000 and 2050. Aside from Santa Barbara, rapid growth is occurring in the counties where the average population density is currently the lowest.

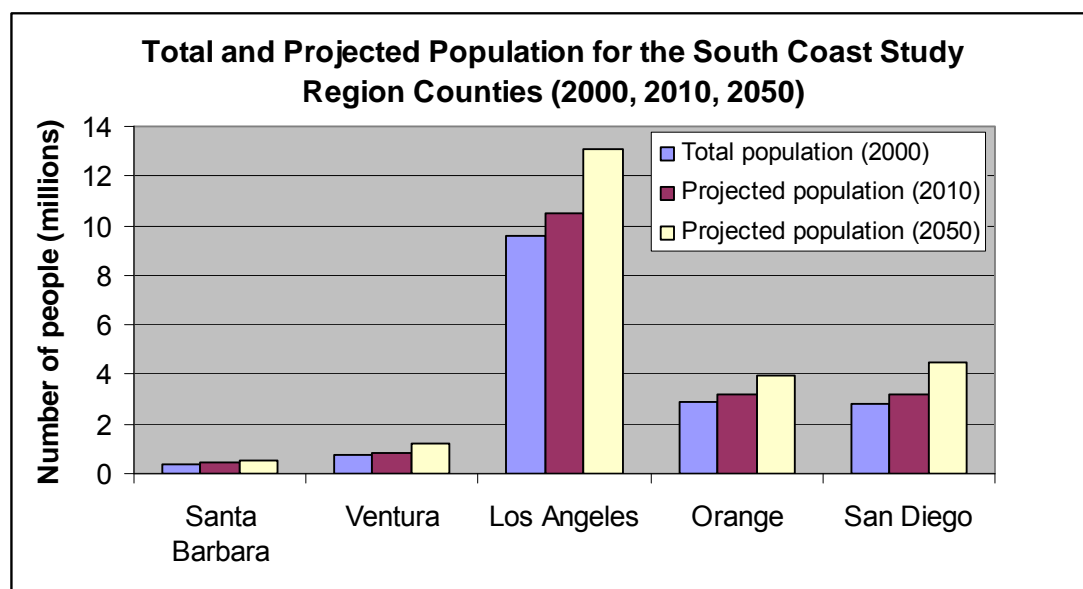
**Table 5.3-1: Total population, population change, projected growth, and density in coastal counties in the south coast study region**

Coastal County	Total population 2000 <sup>1</sup>	Projected population 2010 <sup>1</sup>	Population change (2000-2010) <sup>1</sup>	Projected population 2050 <sup>1</sup>	Population change (2000-2050) <sup>1</sup>	Population density in 2000 (people/mi <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>2</sup>
Santa Barbara	401,115	434,497	8.3%	534,447	33.2%	145.9
Ventura	758,884	855,876	12.8%	1,229,737	62.0%	408.2
Los Angeles	9,578,960	10,514,663	9.8%	13,061,787	36.4%	2,344.10
Orange	2,863,834	3,227,836	12.7%	3,987,625	39.2%	3,607.50
San Diego	2,836,303	3,199,706	12.8%	4,508,728	59.0%	670

Sources: <sup>1</sup> California Department of Finance 2007.

<sup>2</sup> U.S. Census Bureau 2008.

**Figure 5.3-1: Total and projected population for Santa Barbara, Ventura, Los Angeles, Orange, and San Diego Counties for 2000, 2010, and 2050**



Source: California Department of Finance 2007.

## 5.4 Commercial Fisheries

CDFG collects landings data for all commercial fish landed at California ports. Fish dealers and receivers are required to report poundage and ex-vessel revenue (price paid to fisherman) by species or species groups, gear type, area fish were caught, date fish were landed, vessel name, fisherman name, and fish business name (dealer that purchased the fish) on landing receipts. These receipts must be submitted to CDFG on or before the first and fifteenth of each month. The data provided in this section were extracted from the Commercial Fisheries Information System (CFIS), which houses California's commercial landings data. Data are available electronically from this database from 1969 to the present. Longer landings data

trends are available for many species statewide starting in 1916. Commercial fish landings data have been published in the CDFG Fish Bulletin publication series and are available online at [www.ceo.ucsd.edu/fishbull/](http://www.ceo.ucsd.edu/fishbull/). For purposes of this section, data from the past 10 years (1998-2007) were extracted from the CFIS database. All fish and invertebrate species caught in waters within the defined study area are included in the landings data analyses. Appendix III and Map 5.4-1 show commercial landings data for the following fisheries: spiny lobster, prawns, market squid, white seabass, Pacific bonito, sea urchin, rock crabs, nearshore sharks, coastal pelagic species (Pacific sardine, jack mackerel, Pacific mackerel, and northern anchovy), rockfish, sanddabs, and California halibut. For most species, mapped data are from landing receipts submitted to CDFG from fish processors. For some species (including halibut, lobster, squid, and urchin), logbook data submitted by fishermen are mapped, as these data sets are considered to have higher accuracy than landing receipts. Further information regarding the geographic location of where various commercial fisheries occur is being collected by Ecotrust and will be available in the fall of 2008.

**Gear Types:** A variety of gear types are deployed by commercial fishermen. Some of the gear types utilized in the study region include various forms of round haul nets, hook-and-line, trawl, trap, entangling nets (including gill net), and hand capture by divers. Round haul nets are used to encircle coastal pelagic species along the mainland coast and Channel Islands. Hook-and-line gear is used extensively in the nearshore finfish fisheries. Trawl gear is used to capture various bottom species such as California halibut, ridgeback prawn, and sea cucumbers. Traps are utilized to capture various invertebrates and finfish such as spiny lobster, rock crabs, spot prawn, and California sheephead. Entangling nets are used to take species such as California halibut and white seabass. Sea urchin fishermen dive for red sea urchins using air supplied via hose directly from a compressor system on the boat ("hookah"). The divers use hand-held rakes to collect the sea urchins into mesh bags.

#### **5.4.1 Port Complexes**

For historical reporting purposes, CDFG organizes California ports geographically into nine major port complexes along the entire state. The study area encompasses three of these major port complexes: Santa Barbara (Santa Barbara and Ventura counties), Los Angeles (Los Angeles and Orange counties), and San Diego (San Diego County). For this regional profile, commercial fish landings data was not organized by these three major port complexes, as these groupings were too broad to be useful in MPA planning. Therefore, landings and ex-vessel revenue summaries are presented for each of the five coastal counties within the study area. In recent years (1998 to 2007), average annual landings in the south coast study region totaled nearly 254 million pounds with an average annual ex-vessel revenue of \$67.6 million (adjusted for inflation from 2007\$ values) (Table 5.4-1).



**Table 5.4-1: Average annual commercial landings and ex-vessel revenue for the five coastal counties in south coast study region, 1998-2007<sup>1</sup>**

Coastal County	Average Annual	
	Landings (lb)	Ex-vessel Revenue
Santa Barbara	6,808,887	\$7,903,694
Ventura	82,170,596	\$19,973,947
Los Angeles	161,048,211	\$30,844,663
Orange	543,694	\$2,111,740
San Diego	3,123,792	\$6,797,586
All County Totals	253,695,179	\$67,631,630

Note: Dollar values are adjusted for inflation (2007\$).

<sup>1</sup>2007 data are preliminary (May 1, 2008).

## Fishing Communities and Aquaculture Activities

A brief profile of major ports within the county is given below.

**Santa Barbara:** Santa Barbara Harbor is the only major port in this county. There are two minor ports (Guadalupe and Surf Beach) that are outside the bounds of the study region.

In 2007, there were 175 commercial vessels, 222 commercial fishermen, and 61 fish businesses and two aquaculture businesses that reported landings in Santa Barbara County (CFIS, May 2008). From 1998 through 2007, the top ten fisheries based on average annual landings in pounds were, in decreasing order, sea urchin, market squid, rock crab, ridgeback prawn, sea cucumber, spiny lobster, California halibut, shark (sharks, skates, and rays, excluding white and angel sharks), white seabass, and nearshore fishes (Table 5.4-2). Aquaculture products grown were red abalone, mussels and oysters. Appendix III lists the top commercial species and their fisheries in the study region.

The top ten most valuable fisheries from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, sea urchin, spiny lobster, rock crab, ridgeback prawn, California halibut, nearshore fishes, spot prawn, sea cucumber, market squid, and white seabass (Table 5.4-3).

**Ventura:** The Ventura County major ports include Ventura, Port Hueneme, and Oxnard (Channel Island Harbor). In 2007, there were 184 commercial vessels, 232 commercial fishermen, and 89 fish businesses that reported landings in these ports (CFIS, May 2008). The top ten fisheries, based on average annual landings in pounds from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, were market squid, Pacific sardine, mackerel/anchovy, sea urchin, sea cucumber, rock crab, California halibut, ridgeback prawn, Pacific bonito, and tuna (Table 5.4-2). It should be noted that highly migratory fisheries (e.g. tuna) are caught primarily outside of

the study region. However, these fisheries are still considered economically important to this county.

The top ten most valuable fisheries from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, market squid, sea urchin, spot prawn, spiny lobster, California halibut, mackerel/anchovy, Pacific sardine, sea cucumber, rock crab, and ridgeback prawn (Table 5.4-3).

**Los Angeles:** The Los Angeles County major ports are San Pedro and Terminal Island. Minor ports include Long Beach, Redondo Beach, Marina Del Rey, Avalon, Wilmington, and Santa Monica. In 2007, there were 265 commercial vessels, 304 commercial fishermen, and 77 fish businesses that reported landings in these ports (CFIS, May 2008). The top ten fisheries, based on average annual landings in pounds from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, were Pacific sardine, market squid, mackerel/anchovy, tuna, sea urchin, swordfish, Pacific bonito, sharks (sharks, skates, and rays, excluding white and angel sharks), sea cucumbers, and white seabass (Table 5.4-2). It should be noted that highly migratory fisheries (e.g. tuna and swordfish) are caught primarily the study region. However, these fisheries are still considered economically important to this county.

The top ten most valuable fisheries from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, market squid, tuna, swordfish, Pacific sardine, sea urchin, mackerel/anchovy, spiny lobster, California halibut, spot prawn, and DTS (Dover sole, thornyhead, sablefish) complex (Table 5.4-3).

**Orange:** The Orange County ports include Dana Point, Newport Beach, and Seal Beach. In 2007, there were 81 commercial vessels, 72 commercial fishermen, and 46 fish businesses that reported landings in these ports (CFIS, May 2008). The top ten fisheries, based on average annual landings in pounds from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, DTS complex, spiny lobster, sea urchin, spot prawn, swordfish, mackerel/anchovy, rock crab, croakers, market squid, and California sheephead (Table 5.4-2). It should be noted that highly migratory fisheries (e.g. swordfish) are caught outside of the study region. However, these fisheries are still considered economically important to this county.

The top ten most valuable fisheries from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, spiny lobster, spot prawn, DTS complex, swordfish, sea urchin, California sheephead, croaker, rock crab, mackerel/anchovy, and slope rockfish (Table 5.4-3) .

**San Diego:** The San Diego County major ports include San Diego, Mission Bay, Oceanside, and Point Loma. Aquaculture takes place in Carlsbad Lagoon. In 2007, there were 153 commercial vessels, 145 commercial fishermen, 53 fish businesses and one aquaculture business that reported landings in these ports (CFIS, May 2008). The top ten fisheries, based on average landings in pounds from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, tuna, sea urchin, swordfish, spiny lobster, Pacific sardine, sharks (sharks, skates, and rays, excluding white and angel sharks), rock crabs, DTS complex, spot prawn, and California sheephead (Table 5.4-2). Aquaculture products consisted of mussels and oysters. It should be noted that highly migratory fisheries (e.g. tuna and swordfish) are caught primarily outside of state waters and the study region. However, these fisheries are still considered economically important to this county and are included in the analyses.

The top ten most valuable fisheries from 1998 through 2007 were, in decreasing order, spiny lobster, swordfish, tuna, sea urchin, spot prawn, DTS complex, sharks (sharks, skates, and rays, excluding white and angel sharks), rock crab, California sheephead, and California halibut (Table 5.4-3).

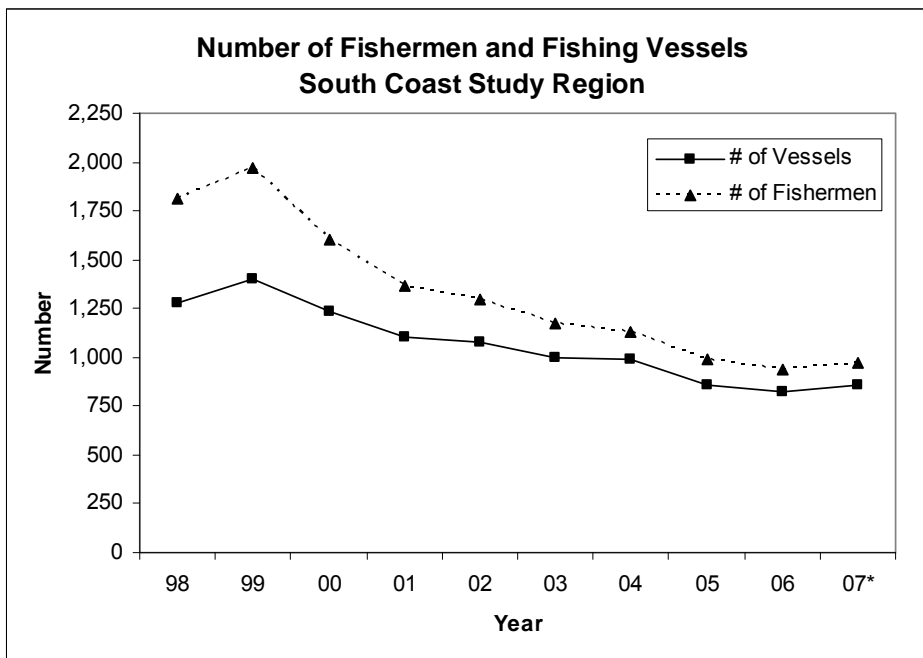
## **Fishermen and Vessels**

The overall number of commercial fishermen and vessels for the study region combined has declined during the period from 1998 through 2007 (Figure 5.4-1). The total number of fishermen and vessels by county can be viewed in Figures 5.4-2 through 6. The number of fishermen, by county and fishery, can be viewed in Appendix III. The number of fishermen shown in Figures 5.4-1 through 5.4-6, and in Appendix III, may not reflect the number of participants who have their primary residence in a county since fishermen can make multiple landings in any county throughout the state. The counts of fisherman and vessels represent those making at least one landing in that county.

## **Aquaculture Businesses**

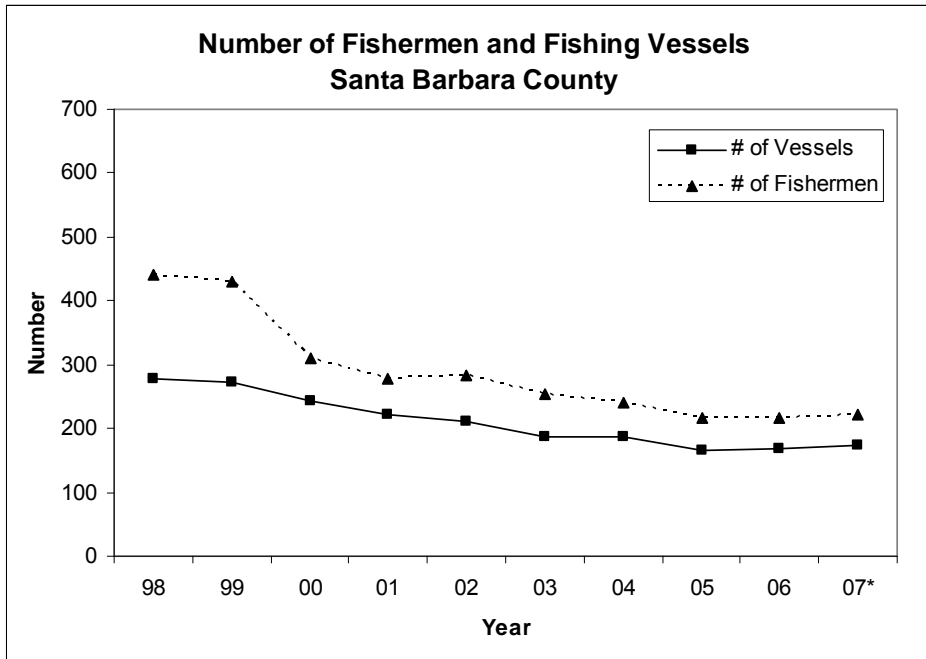
The number of aquaculture businesses has remained constant for the period 1998 through 2007.

**Figure 5.4-1: Total number of commercial fishermen and vessels for all ports within the south coast study region, 1998-2007**



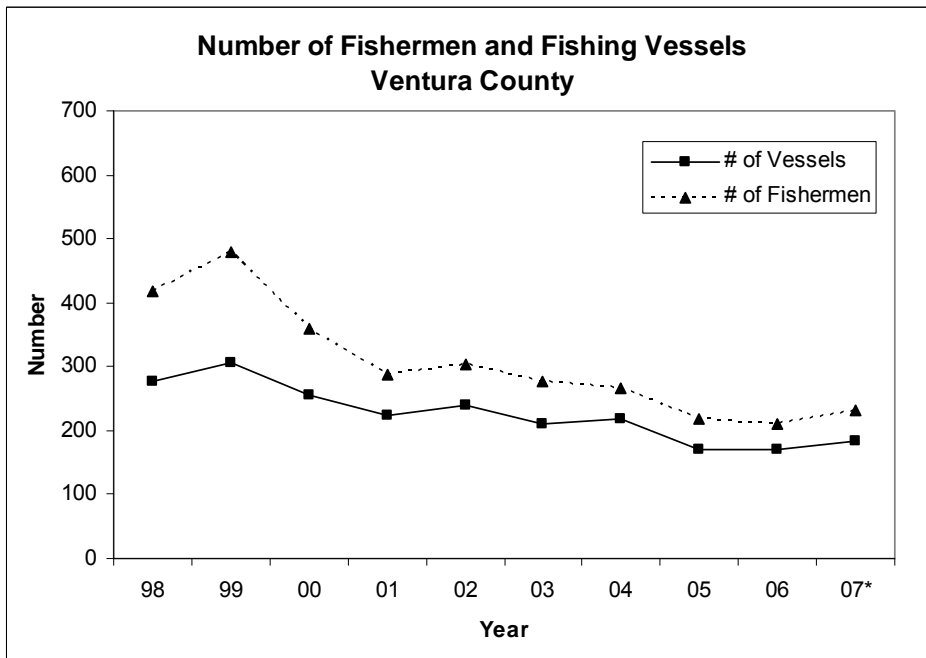
Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 8, 2008). 2007 data are preliminary.

**Figure 5.4-2: Total number of commerical fishermen and vessels for Santa Barbara County, 1998-2007**



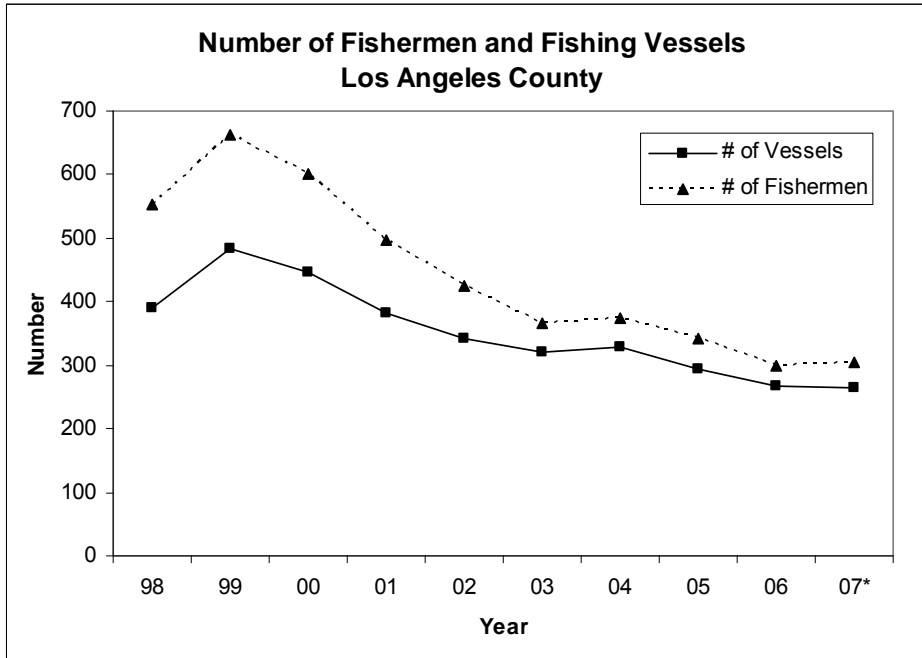
Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 8, 2008). 2007 data are preliminary.

**Figure 5.4-3: Total number of commerical fishermen and vessels for Ventura County, 1998-2007**



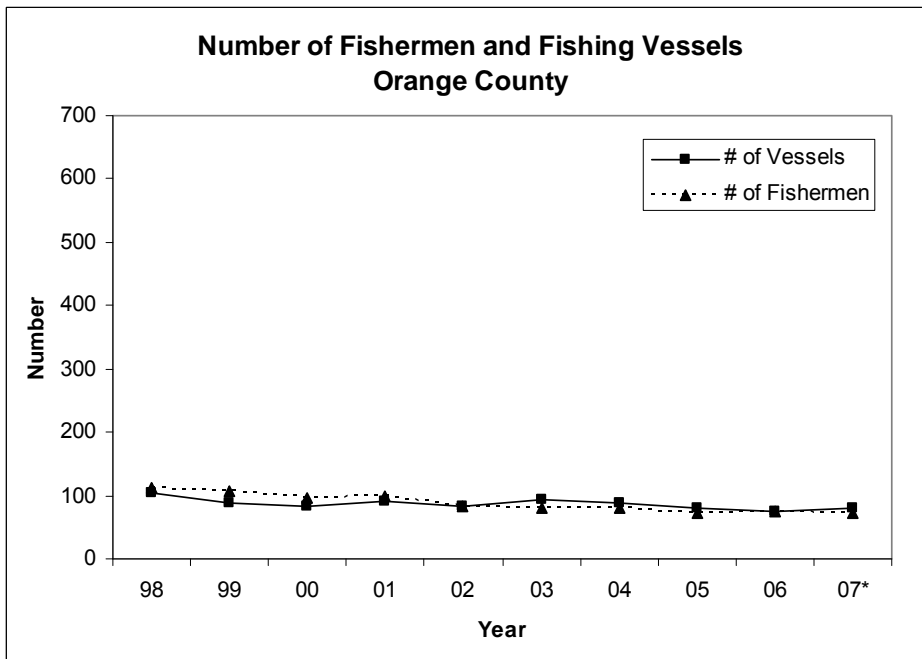
Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 8, 2008). 2007 data are preliminary.

**Figure 5.4-4: Total Number of commercial fishermen and vessels for Los Angeles County, 1998-2007**



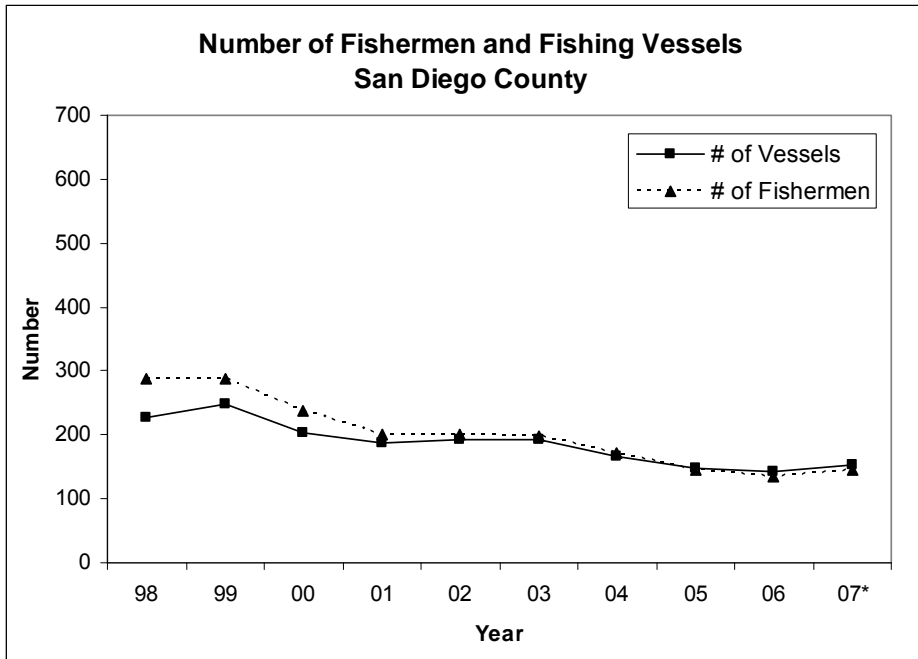
Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 8, 2008). 2007 data are preliminary.

**Figure 5.4-5: Total number of commercial fishermen and vessels for Orange County, 1998-2007**



Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 8, 2008). 2007 data are preliminary.

**Figure 5.4-6: Total number of commerical fishermen and vessels for San Diego County, 1998-2007**



Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 8, 2008). 2007 data are preliminary.

#### 5.4.2 Average Annual Commercial Fisheries Landings and Ex-vessel Revenue for Species or Market Category by County, 1998-2007

Commercial catch is reported either by species or, in certain cases, “market categories.” Market categories include a variety of similar species, or species commonly sold as a generic category of fish, such as, minor shelf rockfish. This section provides landings information for the principle commercial species or market catagories landed in the study region by county. Table 5.4-2 shows the average annual landings for these principle fisheries from 1998-2007. See Table 5.4-3 for a similar summary for the average annual ex-vessel revenue of landings.

**Table 5.4-2: Average annual landings (pounds) for principle commercial fisheries in the south coast study region by county, 1998-2007<sup>1</sup>**

Species and Market Category	Average Annual Landings (pounds) by County for Study Region					Average Annual Landings
	Santa Barbara	Ventura	Los Angeles	Orange	San Diego	
California halibut	74,669	147,759	119,248	2,181	31,113	374,970
California	16,545	35,552	22,883	13,292	36,671	124,943

Species and Market Category	Average Annual Landings (pounds) by County for Study Region					
	Santa Barbara	Ventura	Los Angeles	Orange	San Diego	Average Annual Landings
sheephead						
Yellowtail	1,664	4,005	51,113	1,046	16,274	74,102
Coastal pelagic finfish species <sup>2</sup>	2,066	12,229,004	96,182,113	40,407	249,555	714,746
Crab <sup>3</sup>	616,610	190,475	111,882	34,395	149,234	1,102,596
Croaker	242	18,020	42,291	29,774	477	90,804
DTS <sup>6</sup>	660	97,234	108,635	112,307	131,686	450,522
Kellett's whelk	32,959	1,675	27,173	7,745	12,720	82,272
Market squid	807,180	66,144,244	53,017,529	22,841	14,937	120,006,731
Nearshore fishery <sup>7</sup>	35,099	17,667	22,241	4,029	4,299	83,335
Other flatfish <sup>4</sup>	5,376	16,896	23,097	592	490	46,451
Ridgeback prawn	361,313	139,297	23,234	23	18	523,885
Sea cucumber	192,232	310,523	137,818	752	9,625	710,950
Sea urchin	4,299,401	2,217,951	2,189,611	79,275	745,921	9,532,159
Sharks, Skates, and Rays <sup>5</sup>	64,679	69,824	181,056	4,955	198,118	518,632
Shelf rockfish	5,019	27,038	23,606	3,380	9,401	68,444
Slope rockfish	306	45,695	13,487	8,827	17,719	86,034
California spiny lobster	172,837	85,299	113,511	105,233	237,866	714,746
Spot prawn	19,101	82,712	38,158	33,645	47,112	220,728
White seabass	55,479	79,816	131,454	402	21,909	289,060
Grand Total	6,763,437	81,960,686	152,580,140	505,101	1,935,145	243,804,509
Percent of total landings	3%	34%	62%	0%	1%	

Notes: <sup>1</sup> 2007 data are preliminary.

<sup>2</sup> Pacific mackerel, Pacific sardine, jack mackerel, northern anchovy, and bonito.

<sup>3</sup> Rock crabs and sheepcrab.

<sup>4</sup> Sanddabs spp., sole spp., and flatfish other than California halibut.

<sup>5</sup> Includes all sharks and rays except white shark and angel shark.

<sup>6</sup> Dover sole, thornyhead, sablefish.

<sup>7</sup> Includes nearshore fishery management species, excluding California sheephead.

**Table 5.4-3: Average annual ex-vessel revenue for 1998-2007<sup>1</sup> for principle commercial fisheries in the south coast study region**

Species and Market Category	Average Annual Ex-vessel Revenue by County					
	Santa Barbara	Ventura	Los Angeles	Orange	San Diego	Ex-vessel Revenue
California halibut	283,311	527,847	440,615	11,714	102,807	1,366,294
California sheephead	47,232	113,318	84,767	48,134	141,152	434,603
Yellowtail	1,968	5,297	51,227	1,740	20,573	80,805
Coastal pelagic finfish species <sup>2</sup>	658	681,070	4,972,436	24,072	30,189	5,708,425
Crab <sup>3</sup>	767,382	241,779	149,882	38,181	162,896	1,360,120
DTS <sup>6</sup>	1,059	195,824	296,602	253,641	350,262	1,097,388
Market squid	109,862	11,154,992	9,202,089	5,688	2,835	20,475,466
Nearshore fishery <sup>7</sup>	205,233	60,446	51,032	8,706	13,038	338,455
Other flatfish <sup>4</sup>	4,371	13,275	34,531	1,178	760	54,115
Ridgeback prawn	461,139	219,153	30,165	10	75	710,542
Sea cucumber	148,112	292,233	150,338	558	7,787	599,028
Sea urchin	2,966,611	1,645,686	1,873,095	66,899	586,068	7,138,359
Sharks, Skates, and Rays <sup>5</sup>	76,249	71,511	172,586	4,601	254,657	579,604
Shelf rockfish	11,602	39,398	39,217	5,977	14,924	111,118
Slope rockfish	346	44,416	21,657	17,035	23,942	107,396
Spiny lobster	1,345,167	676,436	861,080	816,755	1,766,956	5,466,394
Spot prawn	147,713	715,277	358,942	304,995	393,870	1,920,797
White seabass	108,325	180,954	247,217	944	51,878	589,318
Grand Total	\$6,686,340	\$16,878,912	\$19,037,478	\$1,610,828	\$3,924,669	\$48,138,227
Percent of total landings	14%	35%	40%	3%	8%	

Notes: Reported ex-vessel revenue are adjusted for inflation (2007\$).

<sup>1</sup> 2007 data are preliminary.

<sup>2</sup> Pacific mackerel, Pacific sardine, jack mackerel, northern anchovy, and bonito.

<sup>3</sup> Rock crabs and sheepcrab.

<sup>4</sup> Sanddabs spp. sole spp., and other flatfish.

<sup>5</sup> Includes all sharks and rays except white shark and angel shark.

<sup>6</sup> Dover sole, thornyhead, sablefish.

<sup>7</sup> Includes nearshore fishery management species, excluding California sheephead.

### 5.4.3 Total Commercial Landings

In general, total landings and ex-vessel revenue by county are dependent on species availability in the study region over the period 1998 through 2007 (Figures 5.4-7 through 12). This is particularly true of market squid landings since the availability of this species is affected



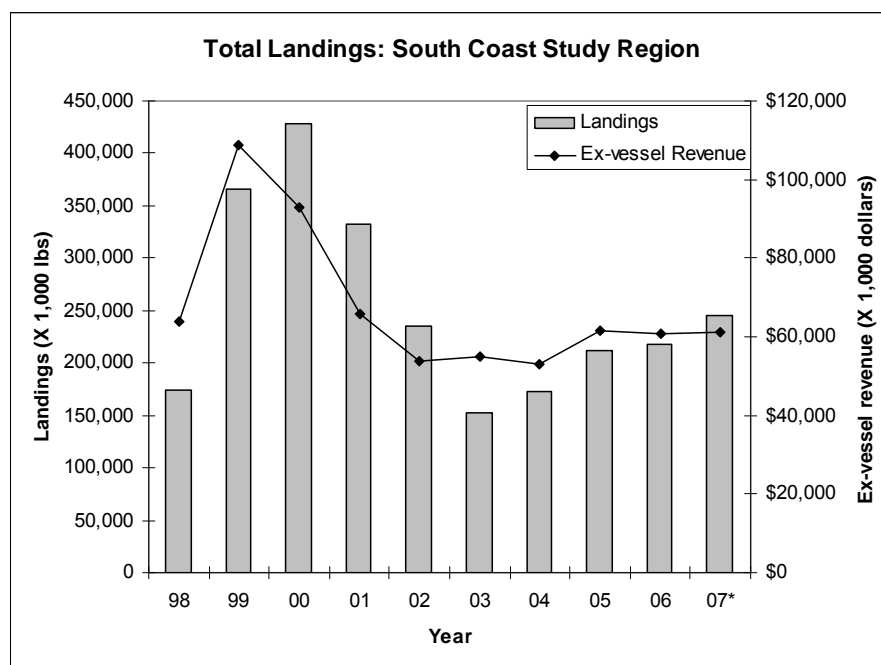
by oceanic conditions such as El Nino and La Nina events. Some fisheries have added value to landings over time, such as landing and selling fish live (e.g., nearshore rockfish and California halibut) and the way some fish species are handled at sea (e.g., tuna processed for sushi-grade). Graphs of landings and ex-vessel revenue for each major commercial fishery are provided in Appendix III.

A critical component of commercial fisheries related to establishing or modifying MPAs is the area in which each fishery occurs. More specifically, the relative effort occurring in specific areas, as well as, the relative ex-vessel revenue derived from these areas are key components to MPA planning. Landing receipts collected by CDFG require that catch locations for all market categories be included. This data is reported by coded 10-minute blocks. However, this data is usually filled in by the processors, rather than by the fishermen, and contains inaccuracies. The MLPA Initiative plans to establish a contract to collect data to help fill the gaps in spatial catch information.

More information on commercial fisheries is included in Appendix III, including:

- Fishery summary tables, including number of fishermen and vessels, gear types, and average annual landings (1998-2007)

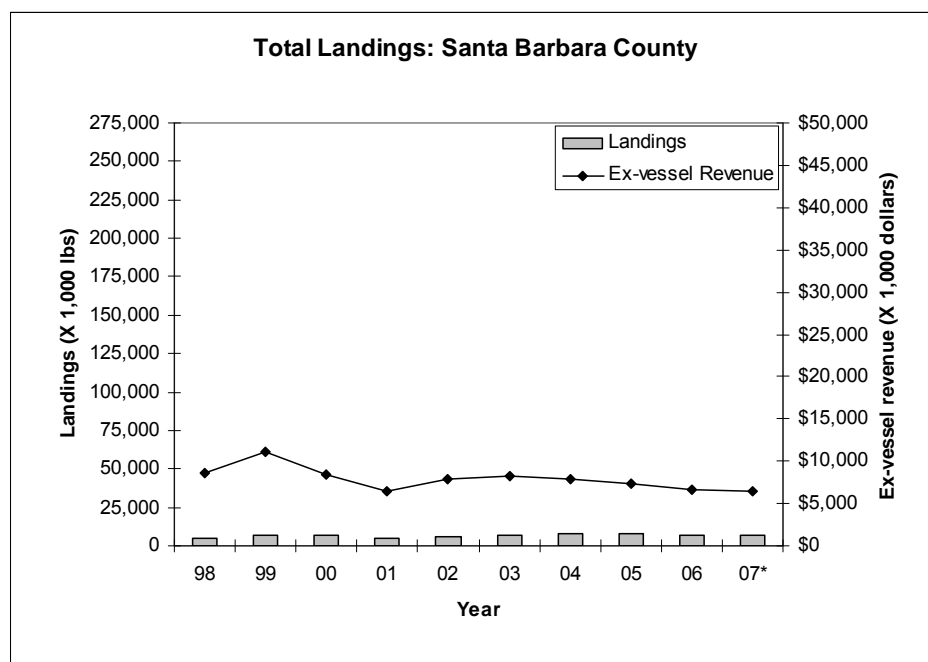
**Figure 5.4-7: Total landings and ex-vessel revenue for the south coast study region, 1998-2007**



Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 2, 2008). Data for 2007 are preliminary.

Note: Ex-vessel revenue were adjusted for inflation (2007\$).

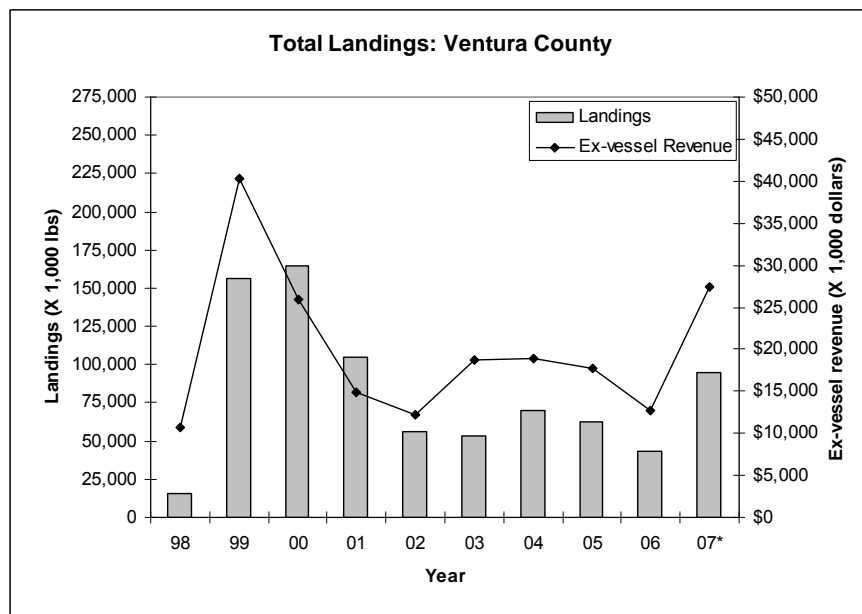
**Figure 5.4-8: Total landings and ex-vessel revenue from Santa Barbara County, 1998-2007**



Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 2, 2008). Data for 2007 are preliminary.

Note: Ex-vessel revenue were adjusted for inflation (2007\$).

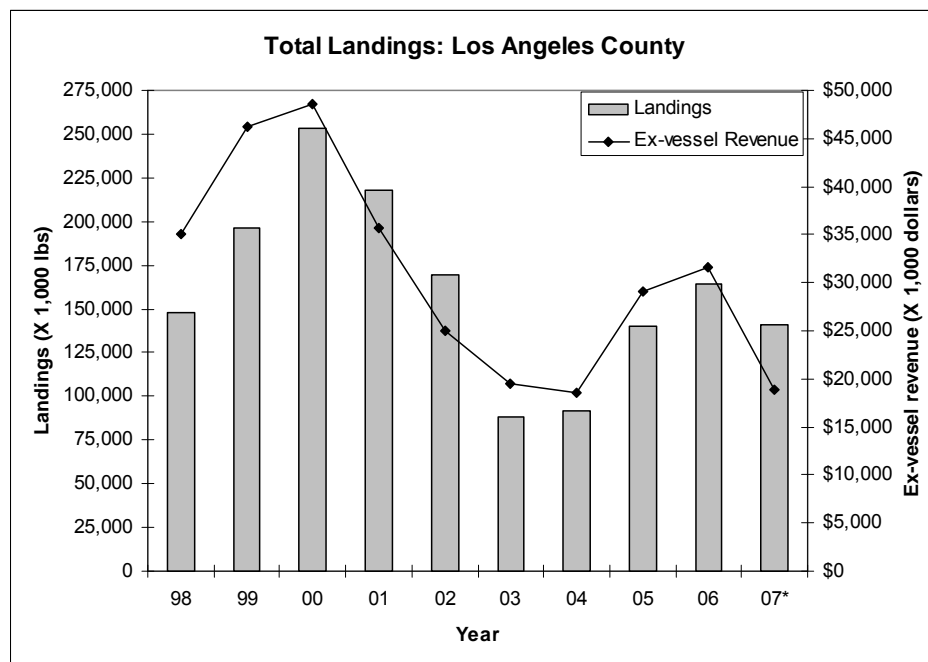
**Figure 5.4-9: Total landings and ex-vessel revenue from Ventura County, 1998-2007**



Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 2, 2008). Data for 2007 are preliminary.

Note: Ex-vessel revenue were adjusted for inflation (2007\$).

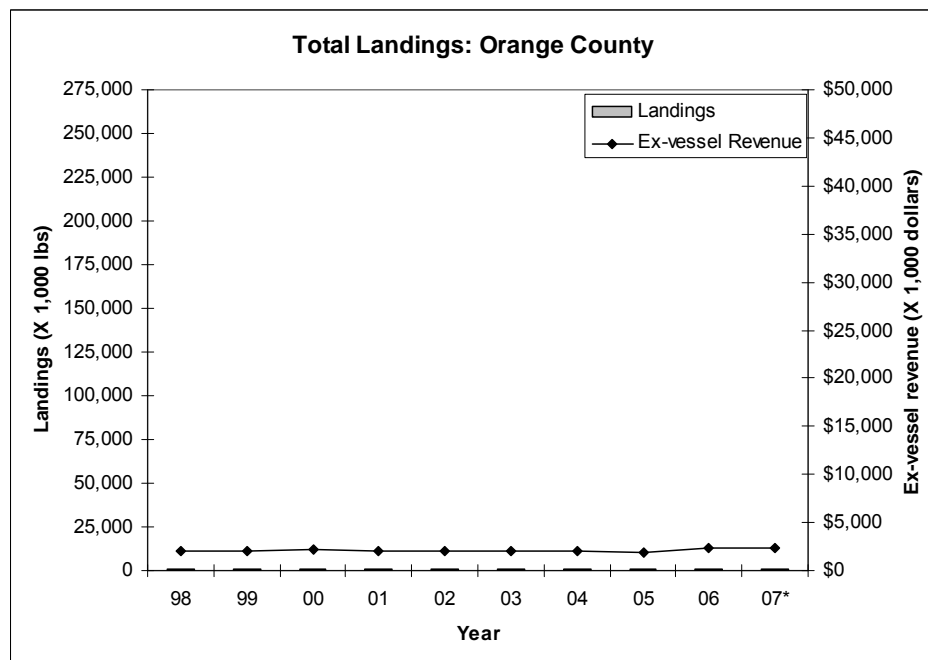
**Figure 5.4-10: Total landings and ex-vessel revenue from Los Angeles County, 1998-2007**



Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 2, 2008). Data for 2007 are preliminary.

Note: Ex-vessel revenue were adjusted for inflation (2007\$).

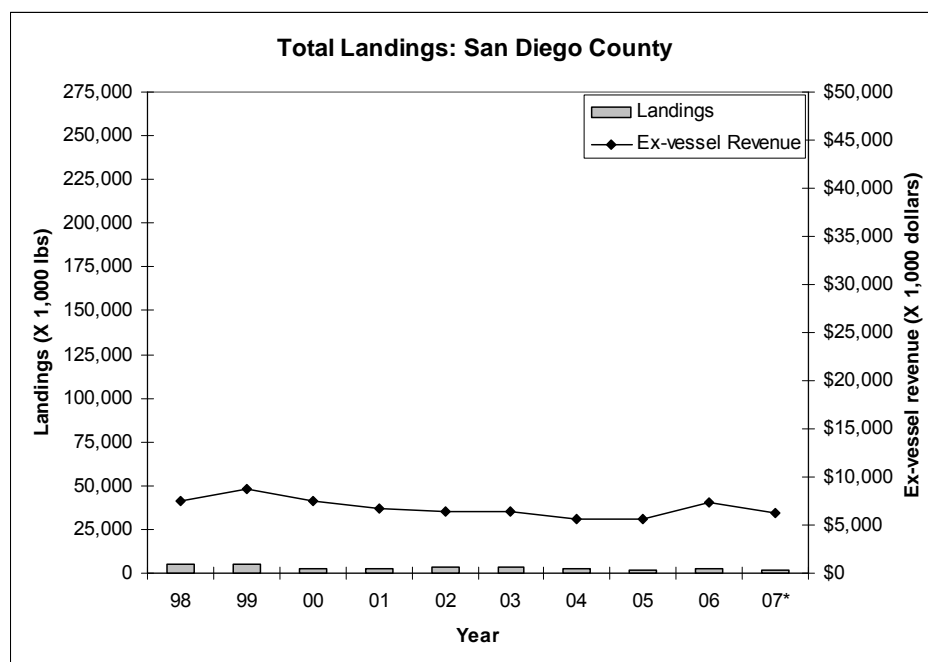
**Figure 5.4-11: Total landings and ex-vessel revenue from Orange County, 1998-2007**



Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 2, 2008). Data for 2007 are preliminary.

Note: Ex-vessel revenue were adjusted for inflation (2007\$).

**Figure 5.4-12: Total landings and ex-vessel revenue from San Diego County, 1998-2007**



Source: Data were compiled from the Commercial Fishery Information System database (extraction date: May 2, 2008). Data for 2007 are preliminary.

Note: Ex-vessel revenue were adjusted for inflation (2007\$).

## 5.5 Kelp and Aquaculture Leases

The presence of existing aquaculture leases and harvestable kelp bed leases in the south coast study region could pose a challenge with the establishment of state marine reserves or state marine parks that do not allow for commercial take. Administrative kelp bed areas are located throughout the south coast study region. Aquaculture leases on state water bottoms occur only in Santa Barbara County.

### 5.5.1 Synopsis of Kelp Bed Lease Status, Kelp Harvest Regulations, and Algae Harvest

Administrative kelp bed areas in California waters are numbered (CCR, Title 14, §165.5 (j)(1)(2)(3)), defined by compass bearings from known landmarks, and have applicable commercial regulations (see CCR, Title 14, §165 and 165.5) pertain to the harvest of giant kelp (*Macrocystis pyrifera*) or bull kelp (*Nereocystis lutkeana*) only. The entire coastline, including the Channel Islands, is divided up into number administrative kelp beds, although not all areas contain kelp beds. The administrative kelp beds are designated as closed, leasable, leased (from the state), or open. Closed beds may not be harvested. Leased beds provide the exclusive privilege of harvesting to the lessee. Open beds may be harvested by anyone with a kelp harvesting license.

Giant kelp was first harvested along the California coast during the early 1900s. Since 1917, kelp harvesting has been managed by the CDFG under regulations adopted by the California Fish and Game Commission. Regulations currently allow kelp to be cut no deeper than four feet beneath the surface, although the surface canopy can be harvested several times each year without damaging kelp beds. Kelp harvesting licenses are required to take kelp for commercial use. There are 74 designated giant kelp beds which can be leased for up to 20 years; however, no more than 25 mi<sup>2</sup> or 50% of the total kelp bed area (whichever is greater) can be exclusively leased by any one harvester. In addition to leased beds, there are open beds that can be harvested by anyone with a valid kelp harvesting license.

There are 48 administratively numbered kelp beds within the south coast study region. Of the 48 kelp beds 23 are open, 4 are closed, 20 are leaseable, 1 bed is currently leased (Table 5.5.1-1 and Map 8.2-1). Bed 27, located from Goleta Point to Coal Oil Point, is currently being leased. This bed has a five-year lease which was signed in March of 2008.

**Table 5.5-1: Kelp bed location and lease status in the southern coast study region including the Channel Islands**

<b>Kelp Administrative Bed Number</b>	<b>Geographic Extent</b>	<b>Lease Status of Bed</b>
<b>Mainland Beds</b>		
1	California/Mexico International Boundary to southern tip of San Diego Bay	Open
2	Southern tip of San Diego Bay to southern tip of Point Loma	Open
3	Southern tip of Point Loma to south jetty of Mission Bay	Leaseable
4	South jetty of Mission Bay to Scripps Pier	Leaseable
5	Scripps Pier to mouth of San Dieguito River	Leaseable
6	Mouth of San Dieguito River to middle of Loma Alta Lagoon (at South Oceanside)	Leaseable
7	Middle of Loma Alta Lagoon to middle of the city of San Onofre	Open
8	Middle of the city of San Onofre to the middle of San Juan Creek	Open
9	Middle of San Juan Creek to Abalone Point	Open
10	Abalone Point to the south jetty of Newport Bay	Closed
13	San Pedro Breakwater Lighthouse to Point Vincente	Open
14	Point Vincente to southern tip of the Redondo Beach Breakwater	Open
15	Santa Monica Pier to Malibu Point	Closed
16	Malibu Point to Point Dume	Leasable
17	Point Dume to Point Magu	Leasable
18	Middle of mouth of Ventura River to Pitas Point	Open
19	Pitas Point to Rincon Point	Leasable
20	Rincon Point to Loon Point	Leasable
21	Loon Point to eastern boundary of the Montecito Hotel	Leasable
22	Eastern boundary of the Montecito Hotel to the tip of the Santa Barbara Breakwater	Closed
23	Tip of the Santa Barbara Breakwater to Santa Barbara Lighthouse	Open

<b>Kelp Administrative Bed Number</b>	<b>Geographic Extent</b>	<b>Lease Status of Bed</b>
24	Santa Barbara Lighthouse to middle of Rogue Creek (Arroyo Burro)	Closed
25	Middle of Rogue Creek to middle of Hope Ranch Creek	Open
26	Middle of Hope Ranch Creek to Goleta Point	Leasable
27	Goleta Point to Coal Oil Point	Leased
28	Coal Oil Point to middle of Gato Canyon	Open
29	Middle of Gato Canyon to middle of Refugio Creek	Leaseable
30	Middle of Refugio Creek to middle of Canada de Molino	Leaseable
31	Middle of Canada de Molino to middle of Alegria Canyon	Leaseable
32	Middle of Alegria Canyon to Point Conception	Leaseable
<b>Channel Island Beds</b>		
101	San Clemente Island. Pyramid Head to China Point	Open
102	San Clemente Island. China Point to Seal Cove	Leaseable
103	San Clemente Island. Seal Cove to Northwest Harbor	Leaseable
104	San Clemente Island. Northwest Harbor to Pyramid Head	Open
105	Santa Catalina Island. Entire Island	Open
106	Santa Barbara Island. Entire Island	Leaseable
107	San Nicolas Island. South of a line drawn 75° from the east end to a line drawn 283° from the west end.	Leaseable
108	San Nicolas Island. North of a line drawn 283° from the west end to a line drawn 75° from the east end.	Leaseable
109	Anacapa Islands. All islands.	Open
110	Santa Cruz Island. San Pedro Point to Bowen Point	Open
111	Santa Cruz Island. Bowen Point to West Point	Leaseable
112	Santa Cruz Island. West Point to San Pedro Point	Open
113	Santa Rosa Island. Skunk Point to South Point	Open
114	Santa Rosa Island. South Point to Sandy Point	Open
115	Santa Rosa Island. Sandy Point to Carrington Point	Open
116	Santa Rosa Island. Carrington Point Skunk Point	Open
117	San Miguel Island. (south) Cardwell Point to Point Bennett	Open
118	San Miguel Island. (north) Point Bennett to Cardwell Point	Open

Note: These data accurate as of May 7, 2008.

Giant kelp is harvested from Imperial Beach in San Diego County, near the California/Mexico border, to Santa Cruz (Santa Cruz County). The annual harvest has varied from a high of 395,000 tons in 1918 to a low of 887 tons in 2007 (Table 5.5.1-2). Such fluctuations are primarily due to climate change and natural growth cycles as well as market supply and demand.

Kelp may be harvested in certain areas within the study region by recreational fishermen. For the non-commercial use of authorized marine plants, there is no closed season, closed hours, or minimum size limit, and the daily bag limit on all marine aquatic plants is 10 pounds wet weight in aggregate.

No eelgrass (*Zostera* sp.) or surfgrass (*Phyllospadix* sp.) may be cut or disturbed in the process of recreational or commercial kelp harvest. An unknown amount of edible seaweed/agar may be harvested within the study region. The annual commercial landings of kelp in the south coast study region are listed in Table 5.5.1- 2. The decrease in 2006 and 2007 harvested kelp was due to the closure of a major kelp harvester in the south coast study region.

**Table 5.5-2: Commercial kelp harvest (tons) in the south coast study region**

Year	Pt. Conception to California/Mexico Border mainland (tons)	Channel Islands (tons)	Combined (tons)
2002	22,652.10	3,110.00	25,762.10
2003	28,454.52	18,788.00	47,242.52
2004	17,289.00	21,966.00	39,255.00
2005	22,953.95	45,954.00	68,907.95
2006	1,362.40	0	1,362.40
2007	887.25	0	887.25

Source: Kelp Harvester's Monthly report (logbook). Kelp harvesting consists primarily of giant kelp (*Macrocystis pyrifera*).

Note: The 2007 data may change due to the late intake of Kelp Harvester's Logs.

## 5.5.2 Aquaculture and Leases of State Water Bottoms

Each owner of an aquaculture facility must register with CDFG by March 1 of each year. In addition, the California Fish and Game Commission may lease state water bottoms or water columns to any person for aquaculture.

### Aquaculture Facilities

All the aquaculture facilities in the south coast study region are land based. While some are outside the study region, such as the Port Hueneme Harbor Aquaculture Park, others are inside the study region and have rearing pens within the study region. These sites include a facility at the Santa Barbara Harbor and one at the Aqua Hedionda Lagoon. All these facilities are approved to raise abalone, mussels, key hole limpets and fishes.

Sea water is pumped into these facilities and discharged back into the ocean. In the past, most facilities raising abalones were infected with a paraitic South African sabellid worm (*Terebrasabella heterouncinata*) that deforms the shell on these animals and increases mortality. Native snails and limpets around one discharge site in the central coast study region were also infected by this worm which caused deformed shell growth. Low levels of infestation of this worm at aquaculture facilities are difficult to detect and control.

CDFG funds a marine hatchery through its Ocean Resources and Enhancement and Hatchery program. This facility is located in Carlsbad. The primary function of the hatchery is to provide juvenile white seabass (*Atraciton nobilis*), two-three inches in length, to field-rearing systems (rearing pens). This hatchery facility is outside the study region boundaries; however, the rearing pens are within the study region in the following locations: Oxnard (Channel Islands Harbor), San Diego, Mission Bay, Dana Point, Newport Beach, Huntington Harbor, Alamitos Bay, Santa Catalina Island, King (Redondo) Harbor, Marina Del Rey, Port Hueneme, and Santa Barbara.

There are also facilities working on abalone genetic and disease research in aiding CDFG's recovery and enhancement efforts. These facilities are land based operations outside the south coast study region.

### State Water Bottom Leases

There are active shellfish aquaculture leases in Santa Barbara County where oysters, clams, mussels, scallops, and abalone are grown for commercial sale and consumption. There are three active leases in the south coast study region, and all of these leases are in Santa Barbara County covering 241 acres (Table 5.5.2-1).

An active state water bottom lease is issued to an aquaculturist who has 1) California Fish and Game Commission approval in the form of a lease, 2) time remaining on the lease period, and 3) is currently meeting planting and harvesting requirements as set forth in CCR, Title 14, §237, (i) through (j). A lease defines the boundary and acreage of a specified state water bottom parcel and defines the terms and conditions of usage of that area for a specified time at an annual cost based on a rate per acre as a result of a competitive bidding in a lease auction. No changes to terms or conditions of the lease can be made without California Fish and Game Commission approval (Tom Moore, CDFG Marine Region Aquaculture Coordinator, personal communication).

**Table 5.5-3: Summary of active south coast aquaculture lessees, lease acreage, acreage in use, approved species, and approved culture methods**

Lessee	Lease Number	Lease Acreage	Acreage in Use (estimate)	Approved Species For Cultivation in Lease Agreement	Approved Culture Methods in Lease Agreement
<b>Santa Barbara County</b>					
Eaglenet Sea Farms	M-653-09	10	0	Red Abalone	Anchored Ocean Habitats
Neushul Mariculture, Inc.	M-654-03	25	5	Algae Cultivation only: <i>Macrocystis</i> spp.,	All algae shall be planted in a manner approved by



Lessee	Lease Number	Lease Acreage	Acreage in Use (estimate)	Approved Species For Cultivation in Lease Agreement	Approved Culture Methods in Lease Agreement
				<i>Pelagophycus</i> spp., <i>Gelidium</i> spp., and <i>Euchema uncinatum</i> (male only).	the lessor
Santa Barbara Mariculture Co.	M-653-02	71.7	35	Rock, speckled, and Japanese scallops, manila clams, Pacific and Kumamoto oysters, and Mediterranean mussels	Longline, Rafts, Rack and Bag, Longline on Stakes, Rack and Tray, Groundline and Bag, Bottom Culture, and Floats
<b>TOTAL</b>					
Active Aquaculture Lease Totals in Region	3	106.7	40		

Source: Tom Moore, CDFG Marine Region Aquaculture Coordinator, State Water Bottom Lease Summary Information May 29, 2008.

## 5.6 Recreational Fisheries

Recreational fisheries within the south coast study region are variable and diverse due to the high degree of species richness in the Southern California Bight and the predominance of target species that are migratory and/or influenced by large scale oceanographic events. According to data collected by the CDFG's California Recreational Fisheries Survey (CRFS), 145 finfish species were harvested within state waters by recreational anglers in the study region from 2005 to 2007.

The basses (*Paralabrax* spp.), rockfishes (*Sebastes* spp.), California scorpionfish, yellowtail, white seabass, and Pacific barracuda are all examples of important species targeted by boat-based anglers throughout the study region (Table 5.6-1). Surperches (*Embiotocidae* spp.), Pacific mackerel, Pacific sardine, silversides (topsmelt and jacksmelt), and croakers (*Scianidae* spp.) are commonly targeted by shore-based anglers.

Also important to the recreational fishery in the south coast study region are the harvest of invertebrates such as California spiny lobsters, rock scallops, various species of clams, and in recent years, Humboldt squid. Invertebrates such as market squid, mussels, and ghost shrimp are also harvested by recreational anglers for use as live bait.

**Table 5.6-1: Estimated average annual recreational catch (fish x 1000) harvested in the south coast study region, 2005-2007**

Type of fish	Shore catch	Boat catch	Total catch	Primary catch species	Species harvested
tunas and mackerels	1,757	196	1,953	Pacific mackerel and Pacific bonito	5
croakers	501	102	603	queenfish and white croaker	8
anchovies	580	5	585	northern anchovy	2
silversides	569	12	581	topsmelt and jacksmelt	2
herrings	446	3	449	Pacific sardine	2
basses	29	365	394	barred sandbass and kelp bass	5
surfperches	342	9	351	barred surfperch	15
rockfishes	7	299	306	vermillion rockfish	36
other fishes	82	38	120	California lizardfish and ocean whitefish	24
sea chubs	41	33	74	halfmoon and opaleye	3
flatfishes	12	55	67	Pacific sandab and California halibut	13
jacks	31	27	59	yellowtail and jack mackerel	3
scorpionfish	11	46	57	California scorpionfish	1
barracuda	1	53	54	Pacific barracuda	1
sharks and rays	20	4	24	shovelnose guitarfish and leopard shark	17
wrasses	6	16	22	California sheephead	3
greenlings		7	7	lingcod	3
sculpins	3	2	5	cabezon	2

Source: CRFS data extracted from the RecFIN database at: <http://www.recfin.org/forms/est2004.html>. Query consists of harvested catch (A+B1) by supergroup in inland and ocean waters within three miles of shore for southern California. Extraction date: August 27, 2008.

### 5.6.1 Modes of Fishing

The distribution of recreational fishing catch (see Table 5.6-2) and effort varies by mode of fishing and availability of access. A fishing mode is the method of access used to fish. The following are common modes of recreational fishing throughout the south coast study region:

#### Boat-based modes

- Commercial passenger fishing vessels (CPFVs)
- Private and rental boats

#### Shore-based modes

- Beach and bank fishing
- Fishing from man-made structures

Statistics on catch and effort for recreational fishing modes are from the CRFS and additionally from fishing activity logbooks for CPFV mode. Catch and effort data on recreational invertebrate fisheries are currently only available from CPFV logbook records. However, beginning with the 2008-2009 season, CDFG will implement a California spiny lobster report card program. This program will provide information on all recreational take of California spiny lobster in the future. More information on recreational data sources is available in the Recreational Fishery Profile, Appendix IV.

**Table 5.6-2: Estimated percentage of annual catch<sup>1</sup> by type of fish and fishing mode in south coast study region, 2005-2007**

Type of fish	Fishing mode			
	Man-made	Beach and bank <sup>2</sup>	CPFV	Private and rental boats
anchovies	99%	0%	0%	1%
basses	5%	2%	50%	43%
California scorpionfish	18%	2%	58%	23%
croakers	68%	15%	1%	16%
flatfishes	13%	5%	26%	56%
greenlings	3%	4%	31%	63%
herrings	99%	0%	0%	1%
jacks	53%	0%	14%	33%
other fishes	59%	9%	18%	14%
Pacific barracuda	2%	1%	70%	27%
rockfishes	1%	1%	69%	29%
sculpins	19%	44%	4%	33%
sea chubs	30%	25%	25%	20%
sharks and rays	75%	9%	1%	14%
silversides	81%	17%	0%	2%
surfperches	53%	44%	0%	2%
tunas and mackerels	90%	0%	3%	7%
wrasses	20%	8%	37%	35%

Source: CRFS data extracted from the RecFIN database at <http://www.recfin.org/forms/est2004.html>

Query based on A+B1 catch by mode for fish supergroup for inland and marine waters less than 3 miles from shore in southern California. Extraction date: September 4, 2008.

Notes: <sup>1</sup> Catch proportioned by numbers of fish harvested.

<sup>2</sup> Beach bank catch estimates are based on samples from the Santa Barbara/ San Luis Obispo County line to the California/Mexico border.

## Boat-Based Modes

**Commercial Passenger Fishing Vessels (CPFVs):** CPFVs, also called party boats, are crewed vessels that carry recreational anglers to ocean fishing locations for a fee. CPFVs are generally limited by travel time, and can be characterized by trip duration (multi-day, overnight, three-quarter day, half day, twilight). CPFVs in the study region operate out of ports in all five south coast counties from Santa Barbara to San Diego. There are over 200 CPFVs operating

in the south coast study region, ranging in passenger capacity from two to 150 persons, with an average passenger load of 35 persons per trip (CFIS 2008). CPFVs in the study region fish in nearshore waters of the mainland coast, Santa Catalina, Santa Barbara, San Nicholas, and San Clemente Islands, and around the Channel Islands, as well as in Mexican waters and offshore banks.

- **Consumptive Diving from CPFV's:** Most CPFVs primarily cater to anglers using hook-and-line gear. However, a small proportion of vessels engage in consumptive diving trips. Recreational dive boats must submit a CPFV fishing activity logbook record for trips when fishing occurs. Within the study region, approximately 50 recreational dive vessels have submitted logbook records for trips where take occurred, although three to five vessels have accounted for 50 to 75% of this consumptive trip effort (CFIS 2008). Catch species reported in logbooks typically include California spiny lobster, rock scallop, rockfishes, basses, and California sheephead.

**Private and Rental Boats:** Private boats are privately owned vessels, and rental boats are vessels that are rented without a crew. Private and rental boat vessels include kayaks, sailboats, skiffs, and large motor boats. In general, these vessels fish the same areas within the study region as CPFVs, although this varies by vessel type and size.

The south coast study region coastline is well protected, and distribution of fishing effort is dependent on the population size of the counties rather than limited access points or rough sea conditions. Some fishermen travel farther to find good fishing during fair weather. Similarly, in larger boats, anglers will venture to offshore banks and coastal islands within the study area for highly migratory species.

- **Kayaks in the Private and Rental Boat Fishery:** Kayak fishing activity is part of the private and rental boat fishery. However, kayak effort is not well represented in the recreational survey data due to the low level of sampling effort at beach access points and geographic dispersal of the fishery. Species favored by kayak anglers include yellowtail, California halibut, basses and white seabass (Table IV-4). In addition to finfish, kayakers also target California spiny lobster.
- **Consumptive Diving in the Private and Rental Boat Fishery:** Dive trips aboard private vessels is also a component of the private and rental boat fishery. Private boat divers target California spiny lobster, rock scallop, and a variety of finfish. Finfish commonly targeted by private boat spearfishermen are referenced in Appendix IV.

## **Shore-Based Modes**

Shore-based modes include all land-based fishing access, including beaches, rocky shores, and man-made structures. Shore trips also include scuba and free dive trips where the point of access was shore based and no vessel was used.

**Beach and Bank:** The beach and bank mode consists of shore-based anglers and divers and is sampled by CRFS. Primary target species and species groups in this region include surfperches, croakers, California halibut, silversides and nearshore rockfishes (Table IV-3).

Shore access areas in ocean and estuarine waters are numerous throughout the south coast study region due to public roads and highways built parallel to the coastline and numerous state, county, and local beach access sites from Point Conception to the California/Mexico border. Limited access does occur in some locations in northern Los Angeles and Orange counties due to limited public parking. Other limited access sites to the general public are large coastal military bases such as Camp Pendleton and Point Mugu Airbase.

- **Clamming from Beaches and Banks:** Recreational clamming effort is mostly concentrated in estuaries and bays and open ocean beaches throughout the south coast study region. Clamming involves digging into mud or sand flats and ocean beaches with rakes, pitch forks, shovels, or trowels to harvest clams out of the substrata. The target species includes common littleneck, Washington, gaper, and Pismo clams. Statistics on catch and effort are not available.
- **Consumptive Diving from Beaches and Banks:** Information on shore-based spearfishing and diving is sparse. Estimates of effort are also not well represented due to the low level of sampling effort at beach access points and geographic dispersal of the fishery. An important fishery in the south coast study region is the California spiny lobster fishery. Additional target species include white seabass and nearshore rockfishes.

**Man-made Structures:** Man-made structures consist of piers, jetties, and breakwaters. If these structures are public, a fishing license is not required. These structures are relatively numerous throughout the south coast study region and are sampled by CRFS (Map 5.6-3). Primary target species and species groups for this mode of fishing typically include Pacific sardine, Pacific mackerel, surfperches, croakers, and silversides.

### **Inland and Open Ocean Marine Fishing Areas**

Catch estimates for marine recreational fisheries within the south coast study region have been divided into inland and open ocean marine areas due to the differences in habitats, fishing modes, and species compositions (Table 5.6-3). The inland marine areas are those that are protected from ocean waves by natural or man-made structures and typically include harbors, bays, and estuaries. Recreational fisheries in these areas have different catch proportions and species composition than coastal fisheries. For example, black perch is the dominant surfperch catch in inland marine fisheries, while barred surfperch is more common in coastal fisheries. Some fisheries, such as bonefish and spotted sandbass, occur only in inland marine habitats. Open ocean areas are exposed and subject to wave action, and recreational catch species include species such as yellowtail, kelp bass, and rockfishes which are not typically caught in bay habitats.

**Table 5.6-3: Top ten catch species by fishing mode for trips in inland marine versus open ocean trips within three miles of shore, 2005-2007**

Inland marine waters		Ocean waters within three miles of shore
<b>Man-made structures</b>		
northern anchovy		Pacific mackerel
Pacific mackerel		Pacific sardine
jacksmelt		northern anchovy
white croaker		queenfish
topsmelt		jacksmelt
Pacific sardine		Pacific bonito
queenfish		yellowfin croaker
yellowfin croaker		walleye surfperch
black perch		barred surfperch
California lizardfish		topsmelt
<b>Beach and bank</b>		
topsmelt		barred surfperch
white croaker		yellowfiin croaker
yellowfin croaker		opaleye
spotfin croaker		jacksmelt
jacksmelt		California corbina
spotted sandbass		walleye surfperch
black perch		spotfin croaker
California corbina		black perch
bonefish		grass rockfish
Pacific mackerel		halfmoon
<b>Private and rental boats</b>		
barred sandbass		Pacific mackerel
spotted sandbass		white croaker
Pacific mackerel		kelp bass
California halibut		barred sandbass
kelp bass		vermilion rockfish
black perch		Pacific sanddddab
Pacific bonito		Pacific bonito
opaleye		Pacific barracuda
California scorpionfish		yellowtail
yellowfin croaker		California scorpionfish
<b>Commercial passenger fishing vessels</b>		
		barred sandbass
		kelp bass
		Pacific bonito
		Pacific barracuda
not applicable		vermilion rockfish

Inland marine waters	Ocean waters within three miles of shore
	California scorpionfish
	Pacific mackerel
	blue rockfish
	halfmoon
	bocaccio

Soucre: CRFS data extracted from the RecFIN database at: <http://www.recfin.org/forms/est2004.html>

Query consists of harvested catch (A+B1) by common name in inland and ocean waters within three miles of shore by mode for southern California. Extraction date: August 8, 2008

### 5.6.2 Recreational Fishing Effort

Recreational fishing effort differs by fishing mode and area in the study region (Table 5.6-4). The highest effort occurs within the open ocean and shore modes.

**Table 5.6-4: 2007 estimated angler trips in southern California by fishing mode**

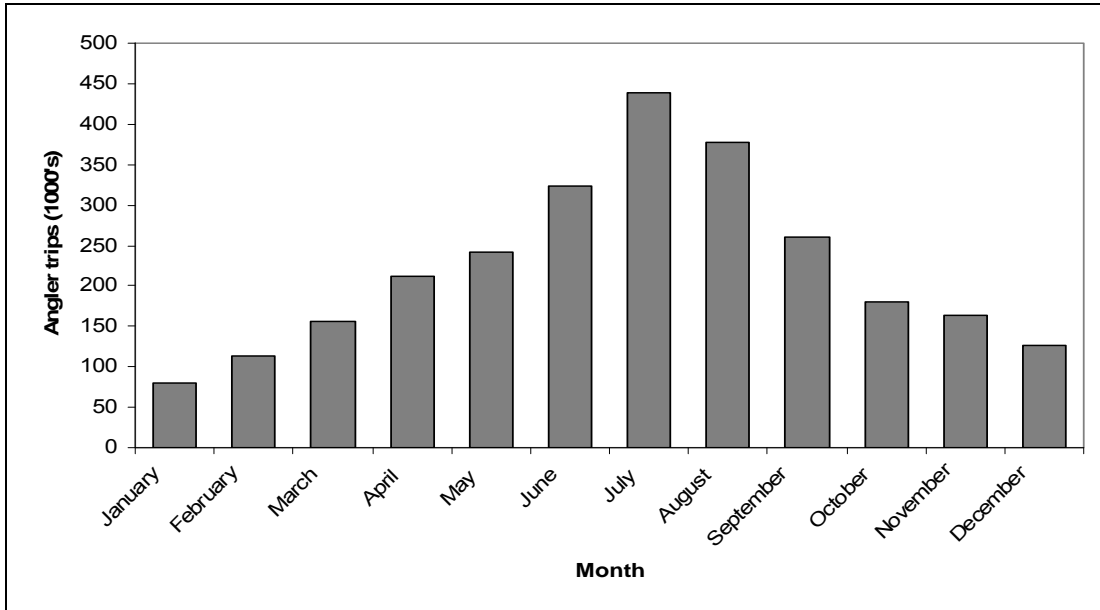
Fishing mode	Effort open ocean	Effort inland marine	Effort total
CPFVs	377,345	N/A	377,345
Private and rental boats	180,248	60,221	240,469
Beach and bank	406,840	359,869	766,709
Man-made structures	975,972	365,371	1,341,343

Sources: CPFV fishing activity logbooks submitted to CDFG by CPFV operators were used for the estimates of CPFV effort; CRFS data extracted from the RecFIN database at: <http://www.recfin.org/forms/est2004.html> (extracted August 28, 2008) were used for effort in the other fishing modes.

Fishing occurs year round in the study region, although effort markedly increases in the summer months, peaking in July. According to effort estimates produced by CRFS, over 40 percent of fishing trips occur in the months of June, July and August (Figure 5.6-1).

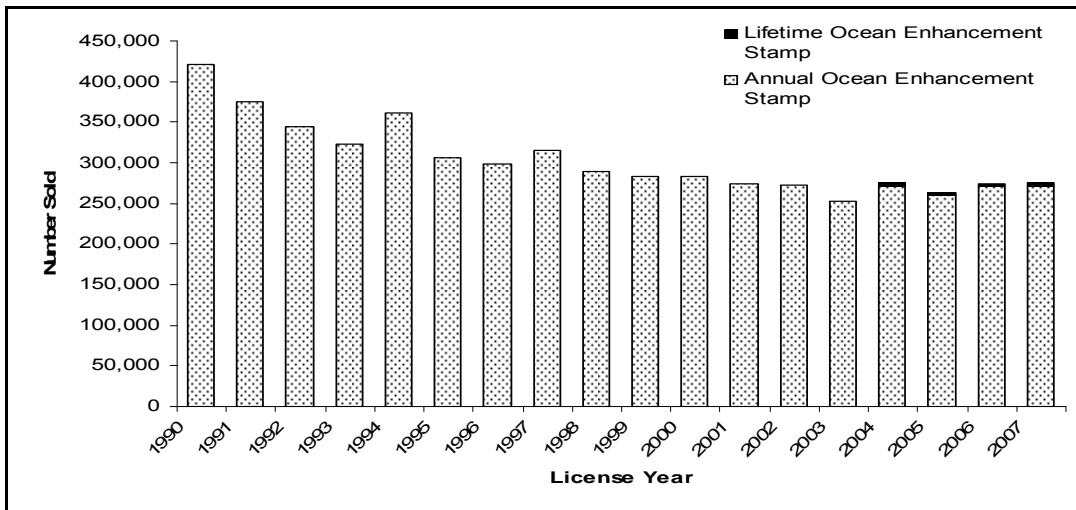
Overall, recreational fishing effort in the study region appears to be in decline according to license sales. In addition to an annual license, an Ocean Enhancement stamp is required for marine recreational fishing south of Point Arguello which is located just north of Point Conception (with the exception that a license and enhancement stamp is not required when fishing from public piers). Sales on enhancement stamps have declined steadily from about 422,000 in 1990 to roughly 275,000 in 2007, representing a 35 percent decrease. However, sales have been relatively stable since 2001 (Figure 5.6-2).

**Figure 5.6-1: Estimated average annual number of finfish trips in the study region within state waters by month, 2005 to 2007**



Source: CRFS data extracted from the RecFIN database at: <http://www.recfin.org/forms/est2004.html>  
 Query consists of angler trips for all modes in inland and ocean waters within three miles of shore for southern California. Extraction date: August 18, 2008.

**Figure 5.6-2: Sales of ocean enhancement stamps for marine sportfishing south of Point Arguello, 1990-2007**



Source: License statistics obtained from CDFG License and Revenue Branch :  
<http://www.dfg.ca.gov/licensing/statistics/statistics.html#Sport%20Fishing%20Licenses>



### **5.6.3 Spatial Distribution of Fishing Effort**

Recreational fisheries within the south coast study region which have the greatest potential to be affected by the implementation of new or expanded MPAs are those which target primarily residential, non-migratory species. These include the following: nearshore rockfishes, California sheephead, ocean whitefish, kelp bass, surfperches, and California spiny lobster. Recreational fisheries for coastal migratory species associated with reef habitats, such as yellowtail, could also be affected. Spatially explicit data on recreational fishing effort are provided from these two primary sources:

1. CDFG has compiled CRFS data (for sampled trips from 2005 to 2007) for CPFV fishing effort which focused on primary target species. This provides an estimate of the relative number of fish landed in discrete locations, which is in turn an estimate of the relative value of particular locations to the CPFV industry. These data are available as a series of maps panning the south coast study region (Map 5.6-1).
2. For private and rental boat recreational fishing, CDFG has compiled spatially-explicit data within the south coast study region from 2005 to 2007. These data are presented in microblock (one minute of latitude by one minute of longitude) maps (Map 5.6- 2). The microblocks compiled are those reported by fishermen and provided to CRFS samplers.

Additional information on the geographic distribution of recreational fishing effort is being collected by Ecotrust and will be available in the fall of 2008.

### **5.6.4 Recreational Fishery Profile**

Appendix IV contains reference information for the south coast study region's recreational fishery. It has been organized into the following sections:

- (a) Data Used to Characterize the Fishery
- (b) CRFS Fishery Statistics, 2005 to 2007
- (c) Historic MRFSS Fishery Statistics, 1998 to 2003
- (d) CPFV Logbook Data ,1998-2008: Invertebrate Catch Statistics
- (e) Synopsis of Applicable Regulations

### **5.6.5 Commercial and Recreational Fisheries**

Many species are targeted in the south coast study region by both commercial and recreational fisheries. Due to changes in statistical methods used to estimate catch and effort for the recreational fishery, catch estimates prior to 2004 are not comparable to current CRFS estimates. To compare catch proportions for principle fisheries targeted by both sectors annual landings were averaged from 2005 through 2007. The principle fisheries including corresponding market categories for the commercial and recreational fisheries are provided in Table 5.6-4.

**Table 5.6-4: Average annual landings (2005-2007) for principle commercial and recreational fisheries within the south coast study region**

Principle market category	Commercial <sup>1</sup>		Recreational <sup>2</sup>	
	Average annual landings, 2005-2007 (lbs)	Percentage of combined landings	Average annual landings, 2005-2007 (lbs)	Percentage of combined landings
California halibut	486,061	70%	206,319	30%
California sheephead	242,316	82%	52,852	18%
California spiny lobster	762,089	not available		
Coastal pelagic species <sup>3</sup>	97,144,796	99%	1,022,826	1%
Croakers <sup>4</sup>	84,414	24%	268,845	76%
Nearshore fishes <sup>5</sup>	77,441	25%	229,021	75%
Other flatfishes <sup>6</sup>	38,527	57%	29,469	43%
Rockfish unspecified	25,168	37%	43,304	63%
Sharks, skates and rays <sup>7</sup>	275,824	52%	256,548	48%
Shelf rockfish	77,318	19%	320,470	81%
Slope rockfish	65,491	99%	435	1%
White seabass	224,207	74%	78,661	26%
Yellowtail	155,546	34%	304,774	66%

Source: <sup>1</sup> Commercial data includes all landed catch for all ports within the south coast study region. Extracted: May 8, 2008.

<sup>2</sup> Recreational catch estimates were obtained from RecFIN and include (A+B1) catch for southern California for all modes and all waters (does not include Mexico catch). Data extracted September 2, 2008.

Notes: <sup>3</sup> Pacific mackerel, Pacific sardine, jack mackerel, northern anchovy, and Pacific bonito

<sup>4</sup> All croaker species excluding white seabass

<sup>5</sup> Nearshore Fishery Management Plan species excluding California sheephead

<sup>6</sup> All flatfishes excluding California halibut

<sup>7</sup> All sharks, skates and rays excluding white shark

## 5.7 Scientific Collecting

California Code of Regulations, Title 14, Section 650 authorizes the take or possession of marine plants or animals for scientific, educational, or propagation purposes with a permit issued by the CDFG. Permits may be issued to:

1. Employees of local, state and federal agencies who take specimens in connection with their official duties.
2. Faculty, professional staff, college level students of, or individuals hired by public or private companies, educational institutions, zoological gardens or aquariums, in or out of state.
3. Individuals who take wildlife or marine plants for other permittees or pursuant to environmental protection documents required by law.
4. Individuals who possess a valid federal Bird Marking and Salvage Permit. Holders of this federal permit are not required to obtain a state permit to take migratory birds, other than raptorial birds.

Three types of permits are issued: resident, non-resident, and student. Resident and non-resident permits are valid for two years, and student permits are valid for one year. Additional specific restrictions may apply in some areas. For example, in MPAs scientific collecting may be allowed on a case-by-case basis in all three classifications of state MPAs. There are standard exceptions to the scientific collecting permit, including state and federally-listed species, for which additional state and/or federal authorizations must be obtained.

Permit requestors must indicate the following components on their application:

1. Purpose
2. Methods/techniques
3. Species and numbers to be collected
4. Collection locations
5. Disposition of specimens

CDFG has an electronic database for processing scientific collecting permit applications, which is recorded on a statewide basis. The total number of permits issued in California from 1989 through 2007 is shown in Table 5.7-1. The trend in the number of permits issued clearly reflects the bi-annual permit cycle from 1989 through 2001, with a relatively constant trend in number of permits issued. However, an annual cycle emerged beginning in 2002 until the present. The trend has been an increase in the number of scientific collecting permits issued with 1,950 being issued in 2007.

**Table 5.7-1: Number of scientific collecting permits issued by CDFG statewide, 1989-2007**

Year	Number of Permits
1989	1,654
1990	455
1991	1,347
1992	812
1993	1,229
1994	931
1995	1,207
1996	989

Year	Number of Permits
1997	1,212
1998	913
1999	1,169
2000	975
2001	1,078
2002	1,218
2003	1,306
2004	1,740
2005	1,717
2006	1,804
2007	1,950

Scientific collecting permits are authorized by the type of organism to be collected (e.g. marine fishes, freshwater fishes, amphibians, mammals, birds). Numbered authorization categories for marine organisms are (1) marine fishes, (2) marine aquatic plants, and (3) marine/tidal invertebrates. Table 5.7-2 shows number of permits issued in California for marine authorizations in 2005 and 2007.

**Table 5.7-2: Number of scientific collecting permits with marine organism authorizations issued by CDFG statewide, 2005 and 2007.**

Year	Number of Unique Scientific Collection Permits			
	Marine Fishes	Marine Aquatic Plants	Marine Invertebrates	Marine Fishes, Aquatic Plants and Invertebrates <sup>1</sup>
2005	552	484	714	846
2006	680	531	762	917
2007	574	501	695	814

Note: <sup>1</sup> Each permit may have multiple authorizations, and therefore the numbers are not additive.

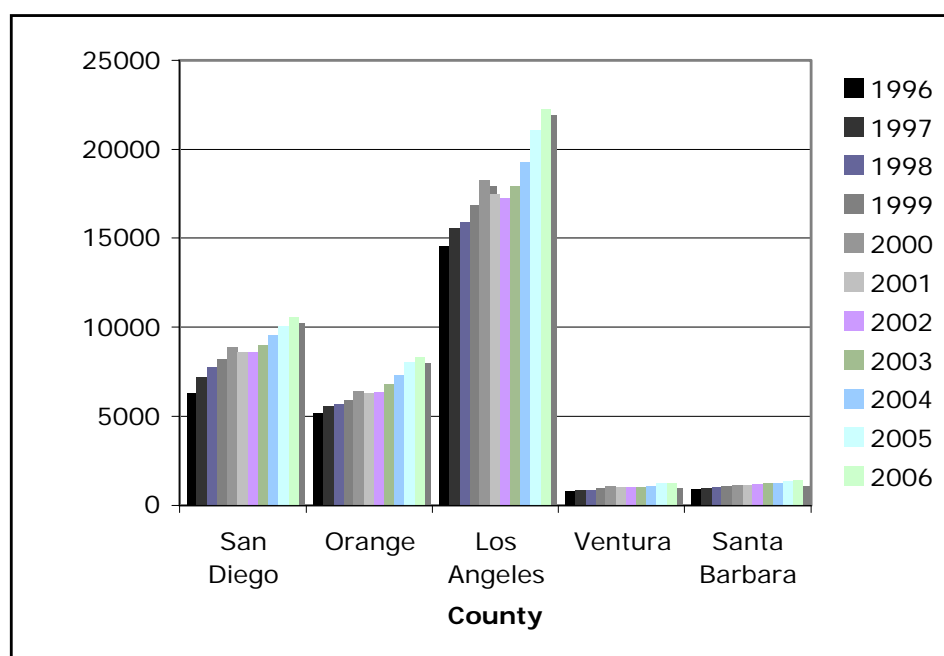
A total of 814 scientific collecting permits were issued to collect marine organisms in the 2007. This represents approximately 42% of the total applications issued for this twelve month period. In addition, the NPS has a scientific collecting permitting program (see <http://science.nature.nps.gov/research/ac/ResearchIndex>). Roughly 25% of these permits are issued for studies in the marine environment.

## 5.8 Coastal Tourism

California is the most visited state in the U.S. (California Travel and Tourism 2006). In 2006, California received approximately 14.6 million international visitors, over half of whom visited the Los Angeles-Long Beach area (CIC Research, Inc. 2008). California also received approximately 352.3 million domestic visitors, with Californians accounting for 84.9% of all

domestic visitors (D.K. Shifflet & Associates, Ltd. 2007). From 1998 to 2002, travel and tourism comprised the third largest employer in California and the fifth largest contributor to the gross state product (Kildow and Colgan 2005, California Lodging Industry Association 2008). According to a report by Dean Runyan Associates, tourists' total direct travel spending in California reached \$96.7 billion in 2007, a 3.6% increase from 2006 (2008). The year 2007 also represented the fifth straight year of positive growth. Travel spending directly supported 924,100 California jobs in 2007, down 0.5% from 2006, though earnings increased by 5% to total \$30 billion. Travel spending generated the greatest number of jobs in accommodation and food service (534,000), and arts, entertainment and recreation (226,500).

**Figure 5.8-1: Total travel spending by county, 1996-2006**



Source: Dean Runyan Associates 2008.

Coastal tourism and recreation contributed \$12.4 billion to California's gross state product in 2000 (Kildow and Colgan 2005). Visits to the beach and waterfront activities are the third most popular recreational activities in California after "sightseeing", and "theme and amusement parks" (California Travel and Tourism Commission 2006). Tourism and recreation are economic drivers in the south coast study region. Within the study region, Los Angeles County has the highest travel spending, generally increasing from \$14 to \$22.3 billion between 1996 and 2006, followed by San Diego and Orange counties, which also showed increasing trends in spending. Traveling spending in Ventura and Santa Barbara counties has remained fairly constant, but significantly below the travel spending in Los Angeles, San Diego and Orange, possible due to a less developed tourist infrastructure, smaller cities, or fewer attractions (see Figure 5.8-1).

The south coast study region boast seven of the ten most visited state parks in the entire state, with five of the seven being adjacent to the coast. Old Town San Diego Historic State Park, the most visited state park in the state, received 5,431,333 visitors in 2005/2006, and, while not adjacent to the coast, is within a mile of the ocean. The five parks adjacent to the shore are the Huntington, Bolsa Chica, San Onofre, Doheny, and Cardiff state beaches, which received over 11 million visitors in 2005/2006 (see Table 5.8-1). The region also contains two coastal national parks. Cabrillo National Monument, one of the top ten national parks in the state, received 826,615 visitors in 2005 (California Travel and Tourism Commission 2006). The Channel Islands National Park, which encompasses Anacapa, Santa Cruz, Santa Rosa, San Miguel, and Santa Barbara Islands, received 434,107 visitors in 2005 (National Park Service 2006a).

**Table 5.8-1: Attendance at California state parks adjacent to the shore in the south coast study region during the fiscal year 2005/2006**

<b>Park Name</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Total Attendance<sup>1</sup></b>
Huntington State Beach	Orange	2,899,770
Bolsa Chica State Beach	Orange	2,735,919
San Onofre State Beach	San Diego	2,418,209
Doheny State Beach	Orange	2,049,666
Cardiff State Beach	San Diego	1,715,856
Carlsbad State Beach	San Diego	1,671,327
South Carlsbad State Beach	San Diego	1,514,203
Torrey Pines State Beach	San Diego	1,501,778
San Elijo State Beach	San Diego	996,646
Carpinteria State Beach	Santa Barbara/Ventura	779,822
Malibu Lagoon State Beach	Los Angeles	620,187
Leo Carrillo State Park	Los Angeles/Ventura	557,235
San Clemente State Beach	Orange	545,528
Crystal Cove State Park	Orange	523,282
Robert H. Meyer Memorial State Beach	Los Angeles	501,864
Point Mugu State Park	Ventura	370,102
Silver Strand State Beach	San Diego	343,108
Malibu Creek State Park	Los Angeles	332,198
San Buenaventura State Beach	Ventura	234,556
McGrath State Beach	Ventura	167,357
El Capitan State Beach	Santa Barbara	100,395
Refugio State Beach	Santa Barbara	79,865
Emma Wood State Beach	Ventura	54,621
Gaviota State Park	Santa Barbara	43,910
Border Field State Park	San Diego	26,095
Point Sal State Beach	Santa Barbara	751
Dockweiler State Beach	Los Angeles	UNK
Point Dume State Beach	Ventura	UNK
Santa Monica State Beach	Los Angeles	UNK
Will Rogers State Beach	Los Angeles	UNK

<b>Park Name</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Total Attendance<sup>1</sup></b>
Mandalay State Beach	Ventura	UNK
Corona del Mar State Beach	Orange	UNK
Leucadia State Beach	San Diego	UNK
Moonlight State Beach	San Diego	UNK

Source: California Department of Parks and Recreation 2006

Note: <sup>1</sup>Some parks do not record attendance, therefore, total attendance is unknown (UNK).

## 5.9 Non-consumptive Uses

Non-consumptive uses include beach-going, swimming, surfing, sailing, kayaking, diving, wildlife viewing, photography, and other activities that do not involve the take or extraction of marine resources. In 1999 and 2000, more than 43% of all Americans participated in some form of marine recreation (Leeworthy and Wiley 2001). Americans flock to beaches and shores to swim, fish, boat, and view the natural scenery. In coming years, populations in the coastal zone are expected to grow and the total number of people participating in all forms of marine recreation is expected to increase with the largest increases expected for beach going activities (Leeworthy et al. 2005). Despite this expected increase in the total number of Americans participating in marine recreation, the percentage of all Americans engaged in marine recreation is expected to decrease (Leeworthy et al. 2005). California ranks second to only Florida in the number of participants in coastal recreation nationwide with nearly 18 million participants, most of whom participate in one of the 17 non-consumptive activities listed in Table 5.9-1 (Leeworthy 2001). Preliminary results from the California Coastal User Survey (Pendleton 2008) suggest the majority of activities for local coastal users from the south coast study region were non-consumptive. Los Angeles County residents reported that 92% of their activities during their last trip to the coast were non-consumptive, while 84% of activities for both Ventura County and Santa Barbara County residents were non-consumptive.

The National MPA Science Center and the Marine Biology Conservation Institute are conducting a study entitled 'The California Ocean Uses Atlas Project'. They will compile comprehensive data on all human uses of the ocean. Their study will produce maps of human uses, including many non-consumptive uses such as boating, beach going, kayaking, and scuba diving. Data from this study will be available in October 2008.

**Table 5.9-1: Participation in coastal recreation in California**

<b>Coastal Activity</b>	<b>Estimated Numbers Statewide for California</b>
Visit Beaches	12,598,069
Visit Waterside Besides Beaches	1,500,965
Swimming	8,398,997
Snorkeling	706,998
Scuba Diving	288,023
Surfing	1,114,372

<b>Coastal Activity</b>	<b>Estimated Numbers Statewide for California</b>
Wind Surfing	82,201
Motorboating	1,549,289
Sailing	1,087,755
Personal Watercraft Use	680,309
Canoeing	190,948
Kayaking	433,209
Rowing	280,265
Water-skiing	265,533
Bird Watching in Saltwater Surroundings	2,581,958
Viewing Other Wildlife in Saltwater Surroundings	2,551,711
Viewing or Photographing Scenery in Saltwater Surroundings	4,175,372

Source: Leeworthy 2001.

Note: Data includes civilian non-institutionalized population 16 years and older as sampled Sept. 1999. Extrapolated from a sample of 27,854 households.

### **5.9.1 Recreational Beach Use**

The study region's approximately 690 miles of mainland coastline and 354 miles of island coastline provide not only intrinsic natural and aesthetic values, but also recreational opportunities for its users and great economic benefits to the local, regional, and state economies. In 1998, California's beaches statewide generated \$14 billion in direct revenue (\$73 billion including indirect and induced benefits), \$2.6 billion in federal tax revenue, and 883,000 jobs (King 1999). A more recent study by Kildow and Colgan estimates that direct expenditures by beach goers in California average roughly \$25 per person per day and total spending by beach goers in the state is approximately \$3.75 billion (Kildow and Colgan 2005). Revenues at state parks adjacent to the coast in the study region from user fees and concessions reached nearly \$25 million during the 2005/2006 fiscal year (Table 5.9-2) (California Department of Parks and Recreation 2006). The highest revenues were at Bolsa Chica State Beach, Huntington State Beach, and San Onofre State Park, which also had the highest attendance (Table 5.9 – 1). These three parks account for over one third of the total revenue earned by state parks adjacent to the coast in the study region.

**Table 5.9-2: California state park revenue for parks located adjacent to the coast in the south coast study region 2005/2006**

<b>California State Park</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Total Revenue (Fiscal Year 2005/2006) <sup>1</sup></b>
Bolsa Chica State Beach	Orange	\$3,099,729
Huntington State Beach	Orange	\$2,838,061
San Onofre State Park	San Diego	\$2,791,464



<b>California State Park</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Total Revenue (Fiscal Year 2005/2006) <sup>1</sup></b>
South Carlsbad State Beach	San Diego	\$2,006,050
Doheny State Beach	Orange	\$1,874,237
Carpinteria State Beach	Santa Barbara/Ventura	\$1,809,601
San Elijo State Beach	San Diego	\$1,733,429
San Clemente State Beach	Orange	\$1,280,786
Crystal Cove State Park	Orange	\$1,086,114
Leo Carrillo State Beach	Los Angeles/Ventura	\$1,080,466
El Capitan State Beach	Santa Barbara	\$976,707
Silver Strand State Beach	San Diego	\$876,544
Point Mugu State Park	Ventura	\$832,560
McGrath State Beach	Ventura	\$668,622
Rufugio State Beach	Santa Barbara	\$618,978
Malibu Creek State Park	Los Angeles	\$485,873
Gaviota State Park	Santa Barbara	\$215,770
Emma Wood State Beach	Ventura	\$228,073
Malibu Lagoon State Beach	Los Angeles	\$162,698
San Buenaventura State Beach	Los Angeles	\$85,920
Cardiff State Beach	San Diego	\$75,110
Robert H. Meyer Memorial State Beach	Los Angeles	\$66,700
Border Field State Park	San Diego	\$233
Dockweiler State Beach	Los Angeles	\$0
Point Dume State Beach	Ventura	\$0
Santa Monica State Beach	Los Angeles	\$0
Will Rogers State Beach	Los Angeles	\$0
Mandalay State Beach	Ventura	\$0
Carlsbad State Beach	San Diego	\$0
Torrey Pines State Beach	San Diego	-\$125

Source: California Department of Parks and Recreation 2006 .

Note: <sup>1</sup> Some state parks do not charge an entrance fee nor a parking fee. Therefore, there is no revenue listed for these parks.

California beaches are owned by the public, and as a result, one does not necessarily need to pay to visit the beach. Beach visitors may value the beach beyond their direct expenditures such as gas or parking fees. This value, known as consumer surplus, has been estimated to range from a low of \$10.98 (in 2001 dollars) for visits to Cabrillo Beach in Los Angeles County to a high of over \$70 (in 2001 dollars) per person per trip for visits to San Diego beaches. Using a fairly conservative estimate of \$15/visit for the value of a beach day and a conservative estimate of beach attendance of 150 million beach days annually, Kildow and Colgan estimate the non-market value of beach visits in California to be approximately \$2.5 million annually (Kildow and Colgan 2005).

The impact of California's beaches on the state and national economy continues to grow; in comparison to Delaware, which ranks just behind California in overall federal funding for shoreline preservation, California generates 20 times more economic activity per federal dollar (King 1999).

In addition to the 30 state parks adjacent to shore, the counties and many of the cities in the south coast study region maintain one or more public beaches. The study region's miles of state, county, and city beaches, from thin ribbons of sand below steep cliffs to long, wide strips of sand, offer non-consumptive recreational activities such as swimming, sunbathing, sailing, diving, sightseeing, hiking, surfing, kayaking, canoeing, and whale watching.

Approximately 1.1 million surfers live in California, surfing at popular spots along the coast, many of which are in the study region (NOAA 2000). Some surfers consider Huntington Beach, also known as Surf City, one of the top ten surf spots in the world. Huntington Beach draws surfers and spectators alike from around the world during the more than thirty surfing events held there. The 10-day long U.S. Open of Surfing, the biggest surfing event in the world, takes place at Huntington Beach and draws over 250,000 tourists and locals (StockTeam 2007). Table 5.9-3 lists additional surf spots in the region.

**Table 5.9-3: Surfing locations in the south coast study region**

<b>County</b>	<b>Name of surfing location</b>		
Santa Barbara	Refugio El Capitan Sands	Campus Point Leadbetter Sandspit	Carpinteria State Beach Rincon Hammond's
Ventura	Little Rincon/ Mussel Shoals Gold Coast Beachbreaks	Pitas Point Emma Wood Ventura Overhead	C Street Ventura Harbor Oxnard
Los Angeles	County Line Leo Carrillo Zuma Point Dume Latigo Point Malibu Topanga Chart House	Sunset Blvd Santa Monica Pier Venice Beach Dockweiler State Beach Chevron Reef El Porto	Hermosa Beach Redondo Breakwater Torrance Beach/ Haggerty's PV Cove Lunada Bay Cabrillo Beach Manhattan Beach

County	Name of surfing location		
Orange	Seal Beach	40 St. Newport	Strands
	South Side/13th Street	36th St. Newport	Doheny
	Surfside	Newport Pier	T-Street/San Clemente
	Anderson Street	The Wedge	State Park
	Bolsa Chica	Corona del Mar	Cottons
	Goldenwest	Rockpile	Upper Trestles
	17th Street	Thalia Street	Lower Trestles
	HB Pier, Northside	Brooks Street	Middles
	Trails	Aliso Creek	Church
	HB Pier, Southside	Salt Creek	San Onofre
	54th & 56th Streets		
San Diego	Oceanside North Jetty	Cardiff Reef	PB Point
	Oceanside Pier NS	Seaside Reef	Old Man's/Tourmaline
	Tamarack	Del Mar Rivermouth	Pacific Beach
	Terra Mar Point	Del Mar Beachbreak	The Wave House
	Ponto	Del Mar	Mission Beach
	Grandview	Blacks	Ocean Beach
	Beacons	Scripps	Sunset Cliffs
	Moonlight Beach	La Jolla Shores	Coronado Beach
	D Street	Horseshoe	Imperial Pier NS
	Swami's	Windansea	Imperial Pier SS
	Pipes	Birdrock	Tijuana Slough
	San Elijo		

Source: Surflife 2008.

Kite surfing, or kite boarding, is also a rapidly growing sport in California. Kite surfers prefer many of the same beaches popular with surfers, though tend to be on the water when the weather is too windy for surfers. Along with surfing and kite surfing, windsurfers also frequent many of the study region's beaches though they are not as numerous as surfers.

The *California Coastal Access Guide* describes each coastal area along California's 1,100 miles of continent abutting the Pacific Ocean. There are dozens of coastal destinations between Point Conception in Santa Barbara County and the California/Mexico border, the region encompassed in this study (Table 5.9-4).

**Table 5.9-4: Facilities at beaches in the south coast study region**

County	# Campgrounds	# Stairways to Beach	# Paths to Beach	# Biking Trails	# Boating Facilities	# Fishing Sites
Santa Barbara	8	7	7	8	3	22
Ventura	10	4	9	10	5	14
Orange	9	24	27	19	24	46
Los Angeles	6	18	22	13	8	36
San Diego	8	29	23	14	19	62

Source: California Coastal Commission, California Coastal Access Guide, 2003.

### **5.9.2 Boating**

Boating is a popular and economically important activity in the south coast study region. In 2000, over four million people in California were involved in activities related to marine boating (California Resources Agency 2005). The contribution of boating to the gross state product was \$11 billion in 1995, representing 1.2% of the state economy (Rust and Potepan 1997). The nearshore ocean waters in the study region are fairly protected because of the geographic orientation of the Southern California Bight with its east-west orientation protecting the regions from large oceanic events. The Channel Islands also provide protection on the leeward side (south-east side) of each island. There are numerous bays, estuaries and harbors in the study area that provide protected waters that are conducive to boating.

The California Department of Boating and Waterways published a report titled “California Boating Facilities Needs Assessment” (California Department of Boating and Waterways 2002) as a survey and assessment of boating and boating facilities needs in California. The California Boating Facilities Needs Assessment breaks the state into regions, two of which encompass the south coast study region. Santa Barbara, Ventura, Los Angeles, and Orange Counties compose one of the two regions, and San Diego County comprises the other region. The California Boating Facilities Needs Assessment’s 25 most used waterways for residents from Santa Barbara through Orange County included the marine waterways of the Pacific Ocean (i.e. ocean waters not defined by another name), Channel Islands Harbor, Marina Del Rey, Mission Bay, Newport Harbor, Los Angeles-Long Beach Harbor, Dana Harbor, Santa Barbara Channel, San Pedro Bay, Santa Catalina Island, and Alamitos Bay. The Pacific Ocean was the most used waterway in Santa Barbara and Orange Counties with 7% of all boaters in the region using this waterway.

The California Boating Facilities Needs Assessment’s 20 most used waterways for residents in San Diego County included the marine waterways of the San Diego Bay, Mission Bay, Pacific Ocean, and Oceanside Harbor. San Diego Bay was the most used waterway in the region with 21.5% of all boaters in San Diego County using this waterway.

Non-consumptive boat data is also collected from the CDFG’s CRFS program. CRFS staff conduct interviews of anglers returning to public launch ramps as part of the data collection for recreational fishing effort and catch estimates. Under the Primary Private Boat Survey, boaters are interviewed at primary launch ramps approximately eight days per month (Van Buskirk, Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission 2007, personal communications). “Primary” launch ramps are defined as “those where the majority of the managed species, in any particular month, are landed” (Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission 2007). Supplemental data collected include the number of private and rental boats that are not recreationally fishing for finfish.

CRFS samplers intercepted a total of 22,278 private and rental boats within the study region. The most surveys took place in San Diego County while the fewest took place in Santa Barbara County. San Diego County also had the highest rate of boats that had fished for finfish

recreationally (69%), and Santa Barbara County had the lowest rate (45%). Santa Barbara County had the highest percentage of commercial fishing or non-fish vessels at approximately 10%. San Diego County had the lowest percentage of boats involved in other recreational and non-commercial fishing activities (28.5%). See Tables 5.9-5 and 5.9-6 for a complete summary of the CRFS results for all counties in the study region.

According to the California Department of Motor Vehicles, the study region had approximately 301,098 registered recreational vessels as of December 31, 2007 (Table 5.9-7).

**Table 5.9-5: Number of private and rental boats surveyed by the California Recreational Fisheries Survey in 2007**

Type of Activity	Counties					
	Santa Barbara		Ventura		Los Angeles	
	Vessels (#)	Within County (%)	Vessels (#)	Within County (%)	Vessels (#)	Within County (%)
Fished recreationally for finfish	656	45.3	1,549	50.3	3,267	51.1
Intended to fish recreationally, but no gear in water	11	0.8	53	1.7	114	1.8
Recreational shellfish	4	0.3	14	0.5	10	0.2
Recreational squid only					3	--
Fished commercially	132	9.1	154	5.0	50	0.8
Total Vessels Fishing	803	55.5	1,770	57.5	3,444	53.9
Recreational cruising	376	26.0	807	26.2	2,478	38.8
Burial at sea			2	--		
Bird watching						
Diving, non-consumptive	18	1.2	48	1.6	57	0.9
Enforcement (public agency)	3	0.2	18	0.6	11	0.2
Hunting, gun						
Boat maintenance	72	5.0	160	5.2	207	3.2
Research (public agency)	52	3.6	21	0.7	13	0.2
Whale watching	1	0.1	4	0.1		
Other commercial activity	26	1.8	108	3.5	29	0.5
Removing boat from slip, no trip	95	6.6	143	4.6	148	2.3
Unidentified	1	--	1	--	1	--
Total Vessels Not Fishing	644	44.5	1,312	42.5	2,944	46.1
Total All Boats	1,447	100.0	3,082	100.0	6,388	100.0

**Table 5.9-6: Number of private and rental boats surveyed by the California Recreational Fisheries Survey in 2007**

Type of Activity	Counties					
	Orange		San Diego		All Counties	
	Vessels (#)	Within County (%)	Vessels (#)	Within County (%)	Vessels (#)	Within County (%)
Fished recreationally for finfish	1,839	59.4	5,673	68.7	12,984	58.3
Intended to fish recreationally, but no gear in water	38	1.2	76	0.9	292	1.3
Recreational shellfish	3	0.1	8	0.1	39	0.2
Recreational squid only	2	0.1	1	--	6	--
Fished commercially	37	1.2	150	1.8	523	2.4
Total Vessels Fishing	1,919	62.0	5,908	71.5	13,844	62.2
Recreational cruising	965	31.2	1,684	20.4	6,310	28.3
Burial at sea			6	0.1	8	--
Bird watching			1	--	1	--
Diving, non-consumptive	38	1.2	135	1.6	296	1.3
Enforcement (public agency)			36	0.4	68	0.3
Hunting, gun			2	--	2	--
Boat maintenance	85	2.7	215	2.6	739	3.3
Research (public agency)	6	0.2	40	0.5	132	0.6
Whale watching	12	0.4	6	0.1	23	0.1
Other commercial activity	3	--	65	0.8	231	1.1
Removing boat from slip, no trip	65	2.1	143	1.7	594	2.7
Unidentified	5	0.2	22	0.3	30	0.1
Total Vessels Not Fishing	1,179	38.0	2,355	28.5	8,434	37.8
Total All Boats	3,098	100.0	8,263	100.0	22,278	100.0

**Table 5.9-7: Number of registered vessels in the south coast study region as of December 31, 2007**

County	Total number of registered vessels	Total number of pleasure vessels
Santa Barbara	10,679	10,253
Ventura	26,558	26,136
Los Angeles	124,420	123,145
Orange	70,014	69,126
San Diego	69,427	68,087

Source: California Department of Motor Vehicles as of December 31, 2007 from January 3, 2008 database.

There are at least 160 marina and launch ramp facilities in the south coast study region (roughly half of coastal marinas and ramps statewide), with over 35,000 boat slips and tie ups according to information compiled by CDFG (Sadrozinski, pers. comm.). Ports with marinas, public launch ramps, and hoists in the study region are listed in Tables 5.9-8 and 5.9-9.

**Table 5.9-8: Ports with marinas in the south coast study region**

<b>Ports with Marinas <sup>1</sup></b>	<b>County</b>
Santa Barbara Harbor	Santa Barbara
Ventura Harbor, Channel Islands Harbor, and Port Hueneme	Ventura
Marina Del Rey, King Harbor, Port of Los Angeles, Port of Long Beach, Alamitos Bay, San Pedro Bay and Avalon Harbor	Los Angeles
Huntington Harbor, Newport Harbor, and Dana Point Harbor	Orange
Oceanside Harbor, Mission Bay, and San Diego Harbor	San Diego

Note: <sup>1</sup>This list of marinas is by port area and may contain many marinas.

**Table 5.9-9: Public boat launch or hoists locations within the south coast study region**

<b>Public Boat Launch or Hoist Locations</b>	<b>County</b>
Santa Barbara Launch Ramp	Santa Barbara
Gaviota Pier/Hoist	Santa Barbara
Goleta Pier/Hoist	Santa Barbara
Ventura Launch Ramp	Ventura
Channel Islands Launch Ramp	Ventura
Marina Del Rey Launch Ramp	Los Angeles
Davies Launch Ramp	Los Angeles
Claremont Ramp	Los Angeles
Granada Ramp	Los Angeles
Marine Stadium Ramp	Los Angeles
Mother's Beach (hand launch)	Los Angeles
South Shore Launch Ramp	Los Angeles
Cabrillo Launch Ramp	Los Angeles
Avalon Pleasure Pier Hoist	Los Angeles
King Harbor Hoist	Los Angeles
Dana Point Launch Ramp	Orange
Newport Dunes Launch Ramp	Orange
Huntington Harbor Ramp	Orange
Sunset Aquatic Launch Ramp	Orange
North Star Beach (hand launch)	Orange
Shelter Island Launch Ramp	San Diego
Oceanside Launch Ramp	San Diego
Agua Hedionda Lagoon	San Diego
Santa Clara Point Launch Ramp	San Diego

<b>Public Boat Launch or Hoist Locations</b>	<b>County</b>
Dana Basin Launch Ramp	San Diego
Chula Vista Launch Ramp	San Diego
Glorietta Launch Ramp	San Diego
National City Launch Ramp	San Diego
Ski Beach Launch Ramp	San Diego
South Shores Launch Ramp	San Diego
De Anza Cove Launch Ramp	San Diego
La Jolla Shores (beach access)	San Diego

Source: California Coastal Commission, *California Coastal Access Guide*, 2003, Boat Ramps Locator 2008.

The south coast study region is also home to a large sailing community. At least 55 sailing or yacht clubs exist in the study region and many sponsor regattas and other sailing events (Yacht Club Guide 2008). Some people make their sailboat their primary residence. Many harbors have waiting lists for liveaboard permits that can be years long.

### 5.9.3 Recreational Scuba Diving

Scuba diving is a popular activity within the study region, especially around the Channel Islands. About 20% of California's 1.5 million certified divers are "active," meaning they dove within the past 12 months and plan to dive within the next year. California, which comprises an estimated 12% total of the national revenue generated by recreational scuba diving, generates approximately \$180 million annually in revenue from diving; equipment sales produce an additional \$60 million (Hornsby 2005). Growth in the sector was estimated at 10-20% per year in the 1980s and 5-7% in the 1990s (Weinstein). Diving also fosters related business, such as underwater photography and art galleries, and produces direct and indirect revenue via services and facilities serving the region. There are over thirty dive shops in San Diego County alone. Some of these shops specialize in the increasingly popular activity of underwater photography while others focus on custom wetsuits or equipment sales. Many of these shops also offer dive boat trips and scuba instruction. Guided Discoveries, a non-profit organization, runs a summer camp located in Toyon Bay on Santa Catalina Island where teenager campers can become scuba certified.

The clear waters, numerous dive sites, and diverse marine life draw divers to the Channel Islands from around the world. Diving trips to the Channel Islands require boat access. Many dive sites also exist along the mainland coast, and some of the popular diving sites are listed in Table 5.9-10. Some shore dive locations are shown on Map 5.6-3.

**Table 5.9-10: Popular scuba diving sites in the south coast study region exclusive of the Channel Islands**

<b>Scuba diving site</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Scuba diving site</b>	<b>County</b>
Naples Reef	Santa Barbara	Cardiac Hill	Los Angeles
Carpinteria Reef	Santa Barbara	Corona Del Mar	Orange



<b>Scuba diving site</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Scuba diving site</b>	<b>County</b>
Gaviota State Beach	Santa Barbara	Little Corona	Orange
Tajiguas	Santa Barbara	Reef Point	Orange
Refugio State Beach	Santa Barbara	North Crescent Bay	Orange
Arroyo Burro Park	Santa Barbara	South Crescent Bay	Orange
Mesa Lane	Santa Barbara	Shaw's Cove	Orange
Rincon Reef	Ventura	Fisherman's Cove	Orange
La Jennelle	Ventura	Heisler Park	Orange
Long Walk	Ventura	Diver's Cove	Orange
North Deer Creek	Ventura	Main Beach	Orange
Deer Creek Road	Ventura	Cleo Street Barge	Orange
Staircase	Ventura	Cress/Mountain Street	Orange
Neptune's Net	Ventura	Wood's cove	Orange
Leo Carrillo (Beach, Lil Cove and No. Lot)	Los Angeles	Montage Resort	Orange
Nicholas Canyon	Los Angeles	Dana Point Harbor	Orange
La Piedra	Los Angeles	Moss Point	Orange
El Pescador	Los Angeles	Treasure Island	Orange
El Matador	Los Angeles	Aliso Beach	Orange
Paradise Cove	Los Angeles	La Jolla Canyon	San Diego
Escondito Creek	Los Angeles	Scripps Canyon	San Diego
Latigo Beach	Los Angeles	Goldfish Point	San Diego
Latigo Canyon	Los Angeles	La Jolla Cove	San Diego
Point Dume	Los Angeles	Hospital Point	San Diego
Corral Beach	Los Angeles	The Wreck of the Ruby E	San Diego
Big Rock	Los Angeles	Marine Room	San Diego
Topaz Jetty	Los Angeles	Boomer Beach	San Diego
Malaga Cove	Los Angeles	Quast Hole	San Diego
Marineland	Los Angeles	Sunset Cliffs	San Diego
White Point	Los Angeles	Osprey Point	San Diego
Big Rock	Los Angeles	Rockslide	San Diego
Gladstone's	Los Angeles	Point Loma Kelp Beds	San Diego
Vet's Park	Los Angeles	Swami's	San Diego

Sources: Beach Crabs 2008 and Franko's Maps 2008.

#### **5.9.4 Other Recreational Activities**

More than ½ million people participated in some form of kayaking in California in 1999, 2.5 million people participated in wildlife viewing, and more than 4 million people took photos at the beach (Leeworthy and Wiley 2001). Kayaking, whale watching, and nature observation have all increased in popularity (Weinstein). There are at least 32 kayak rental shops in the coastal counties in the study region and some popular kayak trips are listed in Table 5.9-11.

Whalewatching and wildlife viewing is also very popular in the study region especially due to the number of marine mammals that pass through the Santa Barbara Channel. There are at least 21 boats that participate in whale watching activities from Santa Barbara to San Diego, many of which participate in both whalewatching and sportfishing depending upon the season. Boats out of Santa Barbara offer whale watching tours throughout the year. At least one helicopter company out of Long Beach offers tours of Santa Catalina Island and the southern coast of California.

**Table 5.9-11: Partial list of popular kayak trips in the south coast study region**

<b>Popular Kayak Trips/Sites</b>	<b>County</b>
Refugio State Beach to El Capitan State Beach	Santa Barbara
Hendry's County Beach to Santa Barbara Harbor	Santa Barbara
Santa Cruz Island: Cueva Valdez to Arch Rock	Santa Barbara
Anacapa Island	Ventura
Royal Palms State Beach to Carillo Beach	Los Angeles
Port of Los Angeles	Los Angeles
Newport Harbor to Reef Point	Orange
Reef Point to Aliso Beach County Park	Orange
San Diego Bay	San Diego
La Jolla Shores to Mission Bay	San Diego

Source: Trails.com 2008

### **5.9.5 Boardwalks, Tidepool Visitors, and Wildlife Watching From Shore**

Visitors and locals take advantage of the many boardwalks and bike paths that line some of southern California's most popular beaches. Beach goers can walk, jog, skateboard, bike and more along these paths. Beach goers and visitors support the many bike rental companies, retail stores, restaurants, and hotels that operate along these boardwalks such as the Venice Beach boardwalk, Santa Barbara's West Beach bike path, and the Mission Beach boardwalk in San Diego.

Tidepool visitation is another recreational activity within the study region. Tidepool locations in the study region were taken from "California Coastal Access Guide" by the California Coastal Commission, and the NPS (2006b), San Diego Natural History Museum (2008), and Orange County Parks (2008) websites and are listed in Table 5.9-12. Tidepool locations within the Channel Islands National Park are limited to only the most accessible areas; therefore, Table 5.9-12 does not represent an exhaustive list of tidepooling sites in the study region. Tidepool locations which coincide with monitoring sites for the Partnership for Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans (PISCO) and Multi-Agency Rocky Intertidal Network are also noted.

**Table 5.9-12: Tide-pooling sites in the south coast study region**

<b>County</b>	<b>Site</b>	<b>PISCO/Multi-agency Rocky Intertidal Network Monitoring Site</b>
Santa Barbara	Gaviota State Park	Yes
Santa Barbara	El Capitan State Beach	No
Santa Barbara	Refugio State Beach	No
Santa Barbara	Carpinteria State Beach	Yes
Santa Barbara	Santa Cruz Island - Smuggler's Cove	No
Santa Barbara	Anacapa Island - Frenchy's Cove	Yes
Santa Barbara	Santa Rosa Island - Becher's Bay	No
Santa Barbara	San Miguel Island - Cuyler Harbor	Yes
Ventura	Emma Wood State Beach	No
Ventura	Mussel Shoals Beach	Yes
Los Angeles	Leo Carrillo State Beach	No
Los Angeles	Stairs to Beach @ Latigo Beach	No
Los Angeles	Palos Verdes Estates Shoreline Preserve	No
Los Angeles	Malaga Cove - south end	No
Los Angeles	Bluff Cove	No
Los Angeles	Point Fermin Reserve	No
Los Angeles	Royal Palms County Beach	No
Orange	Little Corona Del Mar Beach	No
Orange	Crystal Cove State Park	Yes
Orange	Glenn E. Vedder Ecological Reserve	No
Orange	Dana Point	Yes
Orange	Treasure Island Beach	No
Orange	Three Arch Cove Beach	No
Orange	Doheny State Beach	No
Orange	San Clemente State Beach	No
San Diego	Cabrillo National Monument	Yes
San Diego	San Elijo State Beach	No
San Diego	Cardiff State Beach	No
San Diego	Scripps Beach	Yes
San Diego	La Jolla Underwater Marine Park	No
San Diego	Bird Rock	No
San Diego	Sun Gold Point	No
San Diego	Ocean Beach Park	No
San Diego	San Onofre State Beach	No

Watching wildlife from shore is a popular activity in the south coast study region. Pinnipeds, cetaceans, seabirds, and shorebirds can be viewed from numerous locations. Pinniped rookeries and haulouts are shown in Maps 3.2 -1c-d; Maps 3.2-1a-b give seabird diversity and colony location information. Piers and many prominent points of land can be used to view

whales and other cetaceans, while estuaries in the study region are often locations used for viewing sea and shore birds.

## **5.10 Cultural Uses**

The south coast study region is one of the most populated and culturally diverse regions in the country (Wolch 2001, Wolch and Zhang 2004). The discussion regarding cultural uses becomes quite complex, as there are many cultural groups that utilize the ocean and its resources. Some cultural groups known to use marine resources are Native American tribes, the Latino community, and the Asian-Pacific Islander (Wolch and Zhang 2004). The interaction and use of marine resources is likely unique for each group. These groups engage in both non-consumptive and consumptive activities along the coast.

## **5.11 Structural Alterations of Coastal Environments**

A number of activities that occur within the south coast study region result in structural changes to coastal environments. Some of these activities are described below and may be considered in MPA planning.

### **5.11.1 Beach Nourishment, Grooming, and Dredging**

Sandy beaches dominate the southern California coast and are important for ecological, social, and economic reasons (Dugan et al. 2000). Sandy beaches are a productive habitat with high biodiversity, abundance, and biomass for many species including macroinvertebrates, shorebirds, surf fish, and crabs (Peterson and Bishop 2005, Dugan et al. 2003). In particular, macroinvertebrates are an important food source for higher trophic levels (Dugan and Hubbard 2006). Therefore, activities that affect macroinvertebrates have a direct correlation to impacts on higher trophic levels as well. The following subsections explore processes that alter coastline features and discuss how those alterations may affect marine ecosystems.

#### **Beach Nourishment**

Beach nourishment is a process to offset sediment loss (particularly sand) through long shore drift or erosion (Dean et al. 2008). Nourishment material is transported from an outside area to the affected beach. If the beach nourishment project is poorly designed or implemented, then it can result in impacts to local ecosystems. Once a beach is nourished, it then requires regular renourishment since nourished beaches tend to erode faster than natural beaches (CDBW and SCC 2002).

There are a number of benefits of beach nourishment. It is typically used as part of a coastal defense scheme to provide storm protection to the coastline and shorefront properties (CDBW and SCC 2002). The practice also addresses sand budget issues by introducing new sediment

into the system (Dean et al. 2008). Finally, the additional beach area creates more recreational space, which is particularly important yet limited in populous areas like southern California (Dean et al. 2002, CDBW and SCC 2002).

Beach nourishment can result in negative impacts as well, and studies have found that beach nourishment can adversely affect sandy beaches, as well as nearshore coastal habitats (Peterson and Bishop 2005). Nourishment projects have been associated with reduction of productivity, diversity, and species recruitment (Schlacher et al. 2007). One major issue is the placement of sand fill can bury plants and organisms and alter habitats that species depend on.

Many of the beaches in the study region have beach nourishment projects. To date, there have been almost 600 beach nourishment projects in the study region (Coyne 2000).

### **Beach Grooming**

Beach grooming is an aesthetic management practice where sandy beach faces are groomed to remove all loose organic material (e.g. macrophytes wrack) and garbage. This is achieved using heavy equipment that drives along sandy beaches picking up loose debris as it passes over the beach surface.

This management practice can alter the beach ecosystem and have effects on invertebrate macrofauna community by reducing the food and nutrient source (drift macrophytes). It not only reduces community abundance but also reduces species richness (Dugan et al. 2003). Grunion, a fish species that spawns on sandy beaches, are also affected because their eggs can be exposed or crushed by the equipment during grooming (Martin et al. 2006). In the study region, >160 km of sandy beaches are regularly groomed (Dugan et al. 2003).

### **Dredging**

Dredging is an excavation activity used in coastal waterways and ports to keep them navigable by deepening channels (SWRCB 2003). It involves the physical removal of substrate, where large equipment gathers up bottom sediment and deposits the dredge spoils outside the waterway in deeper waters (USEPA 2008a). Dredging is also used to import sediment in beach nourishment projects. There are environmental consequences associated with dredging, which include: general disturbance to aquatic ecosystems, reduction in population and biodiversity of benthic communities, mortality of fish species, loss of spawning areas, and damage or loss of habitat (Newell, Seiderer, and Hitchcock 1998). These impacts affect both the area where material is removed and the area where it is deposited. However, the impacts can be minimized with proper management plans. southern California has a regional dredging team that develops Dredge Material Management Plans, which include efforts to minimize ecological impacts (National Dredge Team 1998). In addition, dredge activities are regulated under the Clean Water Act Section 401 and under California SWRCB's Water Quality Order (SWRCB 2003).

### **5.11.2 Coastal Structures**

The location and impacts of coastal structures may need to be considered when identifying sites for protected areas. Some structures can enhance marine ecosystems, while others have been found to have adverse impacts on marine living resources and habitats. The key types of coastal structures discussed in the following subsections are coastal armoring, artificial reefs, and underwater cables.

#### **Coastal Armoring**

Armoring is a technique used to protect coastal development from storms, waves, and other erosional forces. Hard structures, such as seawalls and rock revetments, are placed in front of beaches and coastal properties to prevent further erosion. In southern California, coastal armoring has been extensively used to counteract the receding coastline by local and state authorities and private landowners (Dugan and Hubbard 2006). In Ventura County, approximately 65% of the coast is lined with hard structures (Griggs 1998).

Environmental impacts of coastal armoring may be both physical and ecological (Dugan and Hubbard 2006). Once a structure is in place, it may exacerbate beach erosion and may prevent natural sand replenishment (Dugan et al. 2008). Armoring also may cause a loss of some habitats, loss or reduction of the intertidal zone, change in beach wrack composition, and reduction in macroinvertebrates and other marine species (Dugan and Hubbard 2006).

#### **Artificial Reefs**

A number of artificial reef structures exist within the south coast study region (see map 3.1 – 2). These structures are intentionally sunk in the ocean to provide hard-bottom habitat (NOAA 2008a). Common uses of artificial reefs are for fisheries enhancement and as environmental mitigation tool (Reed et al. 2006). In the south coast study region, there are at least 30 artificial reefs (DFG 2001) and at least 25 of these reef structures were planned and constructed by CDFG as part of an artificial reef program that began in 1958. These artificial reefs are designed to mimic rocky reef habitats and have been constructed from a variety of materials. Some of the initial reefs were made from sunken automobiles (Paradise Cove in 1958) and boxcars (Redondo Beach in 1958). Other efforts utilized tires or sunken ships, which proved less successful. Quarry rock and concrete boxes have been used in the most recent efforts and have been shown to attract and concentrate marine species. Since 1980, many of these quarry rock/concrete reefs have been constructed, including artificial reefs at Pendleton, Carsbad, near the California/Mexico border (international artificial reef), Bolsa Chica, and Mission Bay (Bedford 2001). The most significant artificial reef project in recent years is the San Onofre Nuclear Generation Station (SONGS) Mitigation Project, offshore from San Clemente in Orange County. In 1999, an experimental reef covering an area of over 22 acres was completed and monitoring for the project began (CCC 2006). Currently, expansion of this initial reef is underway with the expected size being 150 total acres.

There are potential benefits of reefs, such as creating new habitat and the potential to increase localized fish stocks (Reed et al. 2006, Kruer and Causey 2005, DFG 2001). However, artificial reefs may also pose risks to marine ecosystems. Studies have found that artificial reefs can actually decrease fish stocks because the fishing effort increases around the reef (Grossman, Jones and Seaman 1997). All these considerations are taken into account before an artificial reef can be placed in the ocean. An artificial reef cannot be constructed until it has gone through an extensive permit process (CCC 2007). Proposed projects must demonstrate how they minimize adverse environmental impacts.

## **Underwater Cables**

Underwater fiber optic cables exist offshore in the south coast study region. The cables are buried where the seafloor is sandy and they are anchored to the substrate in rocky areas. Cables can only be installed offshore upon review and approval of a coastal development permit by the California Coastal Commission or the local government if its local county program (LCP) is incorporated into the California Coastal Management Program (State of California 2008). In the south coast study region, the U.S. Navy has two optic cable lines that extend between Point Mugu and San Nicholas Island. In the installation, maintenance, and repair of cables can pose potential impacts offshore to marine resources, such as marine species that reside near proposed site and water quality. There are also onshore considerations, where construction activities may result in erosion, destabilization, damage habitat, and sedimentation. The California Coastal Commission (CCC) considers environmental impacts when reviewing proposed projects to install underwater cables. (CCC 2005).

### **5.11.3 Coastal Lighting**

Coastal lighting is used in several places throughout the study region. In locations outside of the study region, artificial lighting on the shoreline has been found to have negative effects on certain species related to their survival or reproductive activities. For example, in Florida scientists determined that artificial lighting causes turtle hatchlings to move towards the light, instead of towards the ocean (Salmon, Reiners, Lavin, Wyneken 1995). However, there is little known about effects of coastal lighting on species that inhabit California's beaches. The California Coastal Commission has created special conditions to minimize lighting impacts on marine and fauna resource when reviewing permits that involve coastal lighting (CCC 2008b).

## **5.12 Navigation**

### **5.12.1 Lighthouses and Navigation Aids**

The study region has a rich maritime heritage including lighthouses which are both inactive and active today (Table 5.12-1). These lighthouses serve not only as navigational aids, but are also popular tourist destinations.

**Table 5.12-1: Lighthouses in the south coast study region listed in alphabetical order<sup>1</sup>**

<b>Lighthouse</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Status</b>
Anacapa Island	Entrance to Santa Barbara Channel	Ventura	Active Aid to Navigation
Long Beach	San Pedro Middle Breakwater of Long Beach Harbor <sup>2</sup>	Los Angeles	Active Aid to Navigation
Los Angeles Harbor	San Pedro Breakwater	Los Angeles	Active Aid to Navigation
Point Conception	West Entrance to Santa Barbara Channel	Santa Barbara	Active Aid to Navigation
Point Fermin	Point Fermin/San Pedro Harbor	Los Angeles	Inactive
Port Hueneme	East Entrance to Santa Barbara Channel	Ventura	Active Aid to Navigation
Point Loma (New)	Southern End of Point Loma	San Diego	Active Aid to Navigation
Point Loma (Old)	Southern End of Point Loma	San Diego	Inactive
Point Vicente	PalosVerdes/ North of Los Angeles Harbor	Los Angeles	Active Aid to Navigation

Source: <sup>1</sup> [www.nps.gov/history/maritime/light/ca.htm](http://www.nps.gov/history/maritime/light/ca.htm).

Note: <sup>2</sup> Controlled from Los Angeles Harbor Light.

In addition, the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG) maintains lights, sound signals, buoys, day beacons, and other navigational aids at the Channel Islands, and waters within the study region. A listing of these navigation aids can be found at [www.navcen.uscg.gov/pubs/LightLists/v6COMPLETE.pdf](http://www.navcen.uscg.gov/pubs/LightLists/v6COMPLETE.pdf).

## **5.12.2 Vessel Traffic**

The busiest port complexes in the United States are located in the south coast study region. The Port of Los Angeles complex occupies 7,500 acres (30 km<sup>2</sup>) of land and water along 43 miles (69 km) of waterfront (<http://www.portoflosangeles.org/about/facts.asp>). The container volume was 7.4 million twenty-foot equivalent units in fiscal year 2004 and 6.7 million twenty-foot equivalent units in fiscal year 2003. The Port of Los Angeles is the busiest port in the United States by container volume, the 8th busiest container port internationally (5th busiest when combined with the neighboring Port of Long Beach). Alone, the Port of Long Beach is the second busiest seaport in the United States and the tenth busiest port internationally. The third busiest port complex in the south coast study region is the San Diego Harbor. This port handled 3.3 million metric tons of total cargo in fiscal year 2007-2008 (July 1 through June 30 the following fiscal year). The San Diego Harbor also has a large volume of military vessel traffic.



Substantial volumes of crude oil and petroleum products are transported off the California coast from Alaska, from foreign countries, and between California production sources. The Los Angeles/Long Beach and San Francisco Bay harbors receive a majority of the oil imported into the United States, and have a large number of refining facilities. Unfortunately, collisions or ship groundings off the California coast, or within its congested ports or harbor areas, have the potential to occur as a result of these operations.

## **Vessel Accidents**

The most recent major vessel collision off the California coast occurred in 1987 when the Atlantic Wing (a car carrier) and the Pac Baroness (a dry bulk carrier) collided off Point Conception, sinking the Pac Baroness. The spill of fuel oil was relatively small, but a cargo of toxic copper pellets went down with the ship. The decade of the 1990's began with two major spills in southern California that occurred during routine mooring operations at offshore marine terminals. In 1990, the tanker vessel American Trader grounded on its own anchor during mooring operations at the Golden West marine terminal off Huntington Beach. This accident caused an oil spill which affected a substantial portion of the Orange County coastline, but gained even more notoriety because it occurred within months of the tanker vessel Exxon Valdez grounding in Alaska. In 1991, a mooring accident involving the tanker vessel Omi Dynachem occurred at the Chevron marine oil terminal off El Segundo. During mooring operations, the tanker's anchor got hooked on a 26-inch undersea pipeline and ruptured it, spilling oil into the nearshore ocean waters.

## **State and Federal Legislation**

In the aftermath of Alaska's Exxon Valdez (1989) and California's American Trader (1990) oil spills, the California legislature passed the Oil Spill Prevention and Response Act of 1990 (Chapter 1248, Stats.1990; commonly referred to as SB (Senate Bill) 2040) and the U.S. Congress passed the Oil Pollution Act of 1990 (33 U.S.C. 2701 to 2761 - and other related sections). Both the state and federal legislation address a variety of issues regarding vessel traffic safety, emphasizing the need to prevent spills through the implementation of marine terminal operation standards and inspections, port safety measures, and overall vessel traffic safety. The CDFG's Office of Spill Prevention and Response (OSPR; formerly known as the Office of Oil Spill Prevention and Response) is the lead agency for implementing SB 2040 under the direction of its Administrator. The State Lands Commission operates the State's marine terminal inspection and monitoring program, as required by SB 2040, which is coordinated with OSPR and the USCG.

## **Navigation Designations and Organizations**

A variety of measures have been established to help reduce the risk of vessel mishaps off the coast or within California ports. To facilitate a better understanding of the options for improving vessel traffic safety, several terms and organizations are described below.

**Areas to be Avoided:** There are currently two internationally adopted "Areas to be Avoided" off the Pacific coast which restrict the movement of tankers and barges carrying oil as cargo.

The Areas to be Avoided off the California coast include recommendations that all cargo carrying ships avoid the area which encompasses the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary, except those bound to and from ports at one of the islands.

**Harbor Safety Committees:** Senate Bill 2040 established harbor safety committees for the harbors of San Diego, Los Angeles/Long Beach, Hueneme, San Francisco, and Humboldt. With representatives from shipping, fishing, tug operation, vessel pilot, government, and environmental organizations, these committees have developed harbor safety plans for each port, identifying key safety issues and making recommendations to the OSPR Administrator. Issues facing these committees include questions regarding the need for escort tugs, required capabilities of escort tugs, and the need for new or enhanced vessel traffic information systems to monitor and advise vessel traffic.

**Precautionary Areas:** Precautionary areas are designated in congested areas near harbor entrances to set speed limits, prescribe vessel routing, or establish other safety precautions for ships entering or departing a port.

**Safety Fairways:** Offshore waters in high traffic areas can be designated as safety fairways to prohibit the placement of surface structures such as oil platforms. The Army Corps of Engineers is prohibited from issuing permits for surface structures within safety fairways, which are frequently located between a port and the entry into a Traffic Separation Scheme.

**Traffic Separation Schemes:** A "Traffic Separation Scheme" is an internationally recognized vessel routing designation which separates opposing flows of vessel traffic into lanes, including a zone between lanes where traffic is to be avoided (Map 5.6-3). Traffic Separation Schemes have been designated to help direct offshore vessel traffic along portions of the California coastline such as the Santa Barbara Channel. Vessels are not required to use any designated Traffic Separation Scheme, but failure to use one, if available, would be a major factor for determining liability in the event of a collision. Traffic Separation Scheme designations are most often in international waters and proposed by the USCG, but must be approved by the International Maritime Organization which is part of the United Nations.

**Vessel Traffic Information Services:** Vessel Traffic Service or Vessel Traffic Information Service refer to shipping services operated by the USCG or public/private sector consortiums. These services monitor traffic in both approach and departure lanes, as well as internal movement within harbor areas. These services use radar, radio, and visual inputs to gather real time vessel traffic information and broadcast traffic advisories and summaries to assist mariners. California has one Vessel Traffic Service located in San Francisco Bay which is federally funded and operated by the USCG. A Vessel Traffic Information Service is located at the entrance of the Ports of Los Angeles/Long Beach which is funded and operated through a public/private partnership.

Information for Section 5.12.2 was obtained from the California Environmental Resources Evaluation System (CERES 2006b).

## **6.0 Academic Institutions, Research, Public Outreach, and Education**

Academic and research institutions, government agencies, and non-governmental organizations in the south coast study region contribute to marine research, education, and public outreach. Locations of research institutions and long-term monitoring sites are shown on Map 6.1-1.

### **6.1 Major Marine Research Institutions in the South Coast Study Region**

Major academic institutions that conduct research in coastal and marine ecosystems in southern California include several campuses of the University of California, including Los Angeles, San Diego, and Santa Barbara, several campuses of the California State University, including Channel Islands, Dominguez Hills, Fullerton, Long Beach, Los Angeles, Northridge, and San Diego, and private colleges, including Occidental College, Pepperdine University, and University of Southern California. The Ocean Studies Institute is a consortium of California State Universities who decided to pool their resources to more effectively explore the ocean and coastal regions. Southern California Marine Institute is an alliance of 12 universities in southern California that support marine research, monitoring and education.

Marine laboratories in the south coast study region include Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of Southern California's Wrigley Center, University of California, Santa Barbara's Marine Science Institute, Long Beach Marine Institute, Southern California Marine Institute, Pflieger Institute for Environmental Research, and Marine Applied Research & Exploration. Southern California Coastal Water Research Program coordinates and conducts monitoring of coastal ecology, water quality and shoreline microbiology in the south coast study region. The Southern California Coastal Ocean Observing System is a collaborative network of research institutions and laboratories, which are conducting research on a variety of topics, including water quality, fisheries management, climate change, and predicting and mitigating coastal hazards. Ocean research using remote sensing is conducted at the Jet Propulsion Laboratory in Pasadena.

Several government agencies contribute to research in the south coast study region, including CDFG, California Sea Grant, Santa Monica Bay Restoration Commission, NOAA Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary, Channel Islands National Park, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, Tijuana River Reserve, NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service, and U.S. Geological Survey.

Non-governmental organizations also contribute to research in the south coast study region, including Reef Check California, Reef Environmental Education Foundation, Santa Barbara Channelkeeper, Santa Monica Baykeeper, Heal the Bay, Catalina Island Conservancy, San Diego Coastkeeper, the Surfrider Foundation, WILDCOAST, Natural Resources Defense Council, the Ocean Conservancy, and the Marine Mammal Care Center at Fort MacArthur, among many others.

## 6.2 Scientific Research and Collecting

Scientific research conducted within the south coast study region is diverse, ranging from intertidal ecology to studies of the pelagic zone and deep ocean (Table 6.2-1). Much of the research in the south coast study region is concentrated around marine laboratories and universities.

- California State University, Monterey Bay, Seafloor Mapping Laboratory has mapped habitats in a majority of the south coast study region using sidescan sonar.
- The Marine Science Institute at the University of California, Santa Barbara supports research that spans 14 disciplines, including marine ecology, coastal/nearshore oceanography, environmental toxicology biochemistry, molecular biology, physiology, ocean engineering, and marine biotechnology. Centers associated with the Marine Science Institute include the Coastal Research Institute, the Marine Biotechnology Center, the Ocean and Coastal Policy Center and the National Center for Ecological Analysis and Synthesis.
- Jet Propulsion Laboratory is a NASA center staffed and managed by Caltech, a private university. Jet Propulsion Laboratory has 20 spacecraft and seven instruments conducting active missions.
- PISCO (Partnership for Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans) is a large-scale interdisciplinary marine research program based at four academic institutions on the U.S. west coast, including the University of California, Santa Barbara.
- Scripps Institution of Oceanography supports more than 300 interdisciplinary research programs applied to questions about how the physical ocean environment affects life and the consequences of changes tied to global climate, ocean pollution and human activities. Research activities at Scripps include the study of atmosphere and climate, biology, chemistry, engineering, geosciences, oceanography, and physics. Scripps maintains four research vessels: R/V Roger Revelle, R/V Melville, R/V New Horizon, and R/V Robert Gordon Sproul.
- The Southern California Coastal Ocean Observing System, which is a collaborative network of research institutions and laboratories, conducts research policy- and management-relevant topics, such as water quality, fisheries management, climate change, and predicting and mitigating coastal hazards, in the Southern California Bight.
- Southern California Coastal Water Research Project was formed in 1969 as a joint powers agency to gather information about effects of wastewater and other discharges to the southern California coastal marine environment. Southern California Coastal Water Research Project continues to coordinate and conduct research and monitoring of coastal ecosystems of southern California.
- Southern California Marine Institute supports marine research, monitoring and education. Southern California Marine Institute maintains two research vessels, R/V Sea Watch and R/V Yellowfin, for the purpose of research and education.
- Research at the Southwest Fisheries Science Center is focused on population dynamics, ecological linkages, and economics of Pacific coast groundfish, including rockfishes, flatfishes, Pacific whiting, sablefish and lingcod, and Pacific salmon,

including coho, chinook and steelhead. Southwest Fisheries Science Center scientists conduct aerial surveys of pinnipeds and cetaceans.

- The Philip K. Wrigley Institute for Environmental Studies operates the Wrigley Marine Science Center on Santa Catalina Island and has supported a diverse range of research on marine ecology and oceanography for over three decades.
- Hubbs Sea World Research Institute conducts research on marine ecology, physiology, bioacoustics, and aquaculture. Research projects have focused on population dynamics of northern elephant seals; energetics of manatees, sea lions, and gray whales; Weddell seals, monk seals, whale shark, fish and leatherback turtle movements and migration; manatee reproduction and physiology; polar bear acoustic ecology; bioacoustics of polar bears, killer whales and manatees; and white seabass and rockfish enhancement.

Government agencies in the south coast study region sponsor, coordinate, collaborate and conduct scientific research.

- The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary collaborates to support research projects conducted by scientists at a variety of research institutions in southern California. Monitoring efforts have focused on habitat mapping, kelp forest monitoring, ROV surveys to assess finfish abundance inside and outside of marine reserves, acoustic monitoring to estimate dispersal by tagged fish, seabird reproductive success and population size, and white abalone restoration and monitoring. The sanctuary supports research vessels R/V Shearwater, R/V Xantu, and a Seawolf aircraft.
- Channel Islands National Park maintains monitoring and research programs focused on native plants, kelp forests, rocky intertidal habitats, sandy beaches, seabirds and bald eagles, and Santa Cruz Island foxes, among other topics. Since 1982, park scientists have conducted annual surveys at 16 different kelp forest sites around the five northern Channel Islands.
- The CDFG monitors and assesses the distribution and abundance of priority species and habitats to assist decision-makers in managing California's marine region.
- California Sea Grant, administered by the University of California, focuses on research, conservation and use of coastal and marine resources.
- The U.S. Geological Survey is engaged in research and dissemination of information about marine ecosystems in southern California, specifically seafloor mapping around the Channel Islands region.
- Santa Monica Bay Restoration Commission is an independent state organization focused on pollution prevention and habitat restoration, regional monitoring and funding programs to raise public awareness about the Santa Monica Bay. The Commission has supported research on a variety of topics including marine habitats, wetlands, airborne toxic contaminants, pathogens and pollutants in stormwater, and health risks associated with swimming and consumption of seafood.
- The National Estuarine Research Reserve System supports long-term research and monitoring by staff, visiting scientists, and graduate students, and aims to protect estuarine sites in all biogeographic regions of the United States. Tijuana River Reserve

staff, volunteers, and students conduct research, restoration and monitoring on water quality, plants, amphibians and reptiles, and birds at the Tijuana Estuary.

Several non-governmental organizations also contribute to research in the south coast study region, including Catalina Island Conservancy, Reef Check California, Santa Barbara Channelkeeper, and Santa Monica Baykeeper.

- Catalina Island Conservancy engages in ecological restoration on Catalina Island through the process of removal or exclusion of invasive non-native species; monitoring of sensitive organisms and habitats; and propagation of native plants. The Conservancy has supported research projects on bald eagles, Catalina Island foxes and shrews, and oak woodlands and other sensitive native plants.
- Reef Check California works with volunteer divers to survey nearshore reefs. The purpose of surveys is to assess relative abundance and size distribution of target species, including fish, invertebrates, and algae, and evaluate changes over time.
- Santa Barbara Channelkeeper monitors local watersheds to identify sources of pollution and train local citizens. Channelkeeper trains volunteers to monitor water quality in the Ventura River and Goleta Slough watersheds. Channelkeeper works with Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary to evaluate impacts of recreational boaters on water quality around the Channel Islands. Channelkeeper also participates in the annual “California Coast-wide Snapshot Day” by organizing local volunteers to conduct water quality monitoring.
- Santa Monica Baykeeper protects and restores Santa Monica and San Pedro bays through enforcement, fieldwork, and community action. Baykeeper engages volunteers to restore kelp forests and monitor storm drains.

**Table 6.2-1: Research and monitoring programs in the south coast study region**

<p><b>California Cooperative Oceanic Fisheries Investigations (CalCOFI)</b> CalCOFI is a partnership of the CDFG, the NOAA Fisheries Service and the Scripps Institution of Oceanography. The investigations focus on the ocean off the coast of California, including physical and chemical properties of the California Current System and organisms that live there. Quarterly, at each of 75 stations off southern California, CalCOFI scientists measure temperature, salinity, oxygen, currents, nutrients, primary production, phyto- and zooplankton biomass and diversity, and distribution and abundance of fish eggs and larvae, marine mammals and seabirds. (<a href="http://www.calcofi.org">www.calcofi.org</a>)</p>
<p><b>California Current Ecosystem Long Term Ecological Research</b> Scripps Institution of Oceanography is home to the California Current Ecosystem Long Term Ecological Research, which investigates the effects of El Niño and lower frequency forcing and the role of top-down impacts on pelagic ecosystem of the California Current. (<a href="http://cce.lternet.edu/">http://cce.lternet.edu/</a>)</p>

### **California Sea Grant**

The statewide program works in partnership with scientists and engineers at public and private universities, and with industry, government, and the public to conduct research on water quality, aquaculture, fisheries, fish habitat, and non-indigenous species.

([http://cemarin.ucdavis.edu/Agriculture\\_and\\_Natural\\_Resources123/Marine\\_Resources.htm](http://cemarin.ucdavis.edu/Agriculture_and_Natural_Resources123/Marine_Resources.htm))

### **Channel Islands National Park's Kelp Forest Monitoring Program**

U.S. NPS has been conducting annual surveys of algal, invertebrate, and fish abundances at 16 different kelp forest sites around the five islands in the Channel Islands National Park since 1982 as part of the Kelp Forest Monitoring Program. ([www.nps.gov/chis/](http://www.nps.gov/chis/))

### **Cooperative Research and Assessment of Nearshore Ecosystems (CRANE)**

The Cooperative Research and Assessment of Nearshore Ecosystems is a California statewide monitoring program for rocky reefs and kelp forests developed by the CDFG in cooperation with other research scientists. The program was implemented in 2004 but has not continued at all sites. ([www.dfg.ca.gov/regions/region3.html/](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/regions/region3.html/))

### **Jet Propulsion Laboratory**

Scientists at Jet Propulsion Laboratory launched TOPEX/Poseidon in 1992 to provide a three-year global view of the Earth's oceans, improve understanding of ocean current and improve forecasting of global climate. Jason 1, launched in 2001, monitors global ocean circulation, investigates the links between oceans and atmosphere, improves global climate predictions, and monitors events such as El Niño. Ocean Surface Topography Mission (OSTM)/Jason 2, launched in 2008, measures ocean surface topography, variability of ocean circulation, sea level and tides. ([www.jpl.nasa.gov](http://www.jpl.nasa.gov))

### **LiMPETS (Long-term Monitoring Program and Experiential Training for Students)**

This program combines research and education to monitor key intertidal, sandy shore, and offshore areas in the five west coast National Marine Sanctuaries. Monitoring is conducted by students from middle and high schools, and other volunteer groups. (<http://limpets.noaa.gov/>)

### **PISCO (Partnership for Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans)**

Interdisciplinary research focuses on three issues: (1) how currents, upwelling, and other physical and ecological processes affect the plants and animals of coastal marine ecosystems, (2) how coastal ocean ecosystems respond to shifts in water temperature, currents, and other factors that may vary with global climate change, and (3) how ocean circulation affects the dispersal of marine organisms in their earliest larval stages. PISCO's intertidal monitoring extends throughout southern California and subtidal monitoring includes the northern part of the study region and the northern Channel Islands.

([www.piscoweb.org](http://www.piscoweb.org))

### **Plumes and Blooms**

This is a joint collaboration among University of California, Santa Barbara faculty, student and staff researchers at the Institute of Computational Earth System Science, NOAA researchers at the Coastal Services Center (Charleston, SC) and the NOAA sanctuary managers of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary. Since August 1996, scientists conducted monthly research cruises to collect measurements of temperature and salinity, ocean color spectra, and water column profiles of red light transmission and chlorophyll fluorescence (indexes of suspended particulate load and phytoplankton abundance) in the Santa Barbara Channel.

(<http://www.ices.ucsb.edu/PnB/PnB.html>)

**Resource Assessment Program**

The CDFG is initiating a program to inventory, monitor, and assess the distribution and abundance of priority species, habitats, and natural communities in California, bringing together many efforts to collect, compile, and disseminate information.

([www.dfg.ca.gov/regions/region3.html/](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/regions/region3.html/))

**Sanctuary Aerial Monitoring and Spatial Analysis Program (SAMSAP)**

SAMSAP was initiated in 1998 to monitor locations of vessels, marine mammals and spilled oil or other marine debris in the Channel Islands region. (<http://channelislands.noaa.gov/>)

**Santa Barbara Channel Long-Term Ecological Research**

Hosted at the University of California, Santa Barbara, the Santa Barbara Channel Long Term Ecological Research focuses on processing and transport of nutrients to giant kelp forests, and the impacts of climate change/variability and disturbance on nearshore population dynamics, community structure, and ecosystem processes. Available data include information about current and hydrography from moorings and cruises, profiles of seawater constituents, climate data, stream discharge and chemistry, stable isotopes, benthic cover and temperature, and kelp, invertebrate and fish abundance and density; and macroalgal wrack.

(<http://www.lternet.edu/sites/sbc/>)

**Southern California Coastal Ocean Observing System (SCCOOS)**

Available data products include information from automated and manual shore stations, bathymetry, moorings, meteorological observations, winds and rainfalls forecasts, satellite imagery, shoreline water quality, surface current mapping, wave conditions, cast data from ships and gliders, chlorophyll and harmful algal blooms, plume tracking, ROMS model output and information about ports and harbors. (<http://www.sccoos.org/>)

**Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP)**

SCCWRP coordinated monitoring throughout the Southern California Bight in 1994, 1998, 2003, and 2008. Regional monitoring was conducted primarily by local municipalities working cooperatively toward a regional assessment of coastal conditions. Participants used standardized methods throughout the region once every five years. In 2003, the monitoring effort focused on coastal ecology, water quality and shoreline microbiology. The 2009 Research Plan for SCCWRP focuses on (1) release, transfer, fate and effects of contaminants; (2) effects of stormwater runoff on aquatic ecosystems; and (3) microbiology at beach environments and detection of harmful pathogens. Data are available on sediment toxicity, shoreline microbiology, fish and invertebrate abundance and biomass, and tissue chemistry.

(<http://www.sccwrp.org/>)

**Southern California Marine Institute**

For several years, Southern California Marine Institute has served as a technical advisor to the Los Angeles Regional Citizen Monitoring Steering Team to collaborate on water quality monitoring. Southern California Marine Institute works with scientists and volunteers to conduct a Seasonal Bacteria Study to quantify the amount of harmful bacteria in 13 sites located near or in the LA/Long Beach harbor complex and 20 sites in the greater Los Angeles basin. (<http://scmi.us/>)

**University of Southern California's Sea Grant Program (NOAA)**

Each year, University of Southern California Sea Grant runs a peer-reviewed competition to disperse about \$1 million in federal funds on the theme "Urban Ocean."



**University of Southern California's Philip K. Wrigley Marine Science Center**

The Wrigley Marine Science Center, located on Catalina Island, supports eight laboratories that accommodate up to 24 researchers and groups of up to 60 students. Research includes the San Pedro Ocean Time Series, basic hydrographic, nutrient and biological measurements over a 900 meter water column; University of Southern California fish surveys, research on larval growth and development, human health and ocean recreation; ocean biology, plankton ecology and global climate (National Science Foundation biocomplexity), population genetics of marine animals, biocomplexity, microbial observatories and ecosystems, environmental assessment, ocean biogeochemistry, harmful algal blooms, geobiology, and international fisheries management. (<http://wrigley.usc.edu/>)

**West Coast Observation Project**

All five National Marine Sanctuaries on the west coast of the United States (including the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary) participate in this effort, which gathers data on ocean temperature, currents, oxygen, salinity, wind speed, turbidity, fluorescence, and other indicators. ([http://www.mbnms-simon.org/sections/obs/nmsp\\_wco.php](http://www.mbnms-simon.org/sections/obs/nmsp_wco.php))

### 6.3 Public Education and Outreach

Local, state, and federal agencies and private institutes throughout the south coast study region offer public outreach and education about coastal and marine ecosystems. Table 6.3-1 lists some key academic, research, and education institutions in the south coast study region that focus on coastal or marine ecosystems, including:

- Public education and student and teacher training are available through aquariums in the south coast study region, including the Aquarium of the Pacific, Cabrillo Marine Aquarium, the Ocean Institute, Sea World, Stephen Birch Aquarium, and the Ty Warner Sea Center as well as through smaller community-driven aquariums including Santa Monica Pier Aquarium, the SEA Lab, and the Roundhouse Aquarium.
- Dedicated education programs, such as California Center for Ocean Sciences Education Excellence and Southwest Marine and Aquatic Educators' Association develop, distribute, and train teachers to use curricula on ocean science, linked to California state teaching standards.
- University and graduate education in marine science, management and conservation is available through numerous educational institutions including those listed in 6.1.
- Marine research institutions, such as the Marine Science Institute at the University of California, Santa Barbara, Scripps Institute of Oceanography, and Wrigley Institute for Environmental Studies, provide opportunities for hands-on learning in the marine environment for students, teachers, and the public.
- State and federal agencies, including the California Coastal Commission, Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary, and Channel Islands National Park provide opportunities for public education, K-12 education and teacher and volunteer docent training.

Public education is the primary focus of aquariums.

- Cabrillo Marine Aquarium in San Pedro offers public classes, marine laboratory workshops, and field trips for all ages as well as a research library that offers resources related to marine science.
- Hubbs Sea World Research Institute provides research opportunities, training and hands-on experience for new scientists and teachers. Institute scientists give public lectures throughout the U.S. and the world. Sea World provides opportunities for children and adults to observe and learn about marine animals.
- Aquarium of the Pacific provides programs for children, adults and families, educational tours of the aquarium, and online resources, including dozens of activities that meet California science standards for K-12.
- Santa Monica Pier Aquarium offers school groups, families and visitors a unique view into the ocean world through interactive displays, tide pool touch tanks and several large habitat tanks featuring animals and habitats found in the Santa Monica Bay. Families can also learn about marine conservation and other environmental issues at the Santa Monica Pier Aquarium by watching short educational films, participating in crafts and visiting the Kid's Corner.
- The Ocean Institute is an educational facility specializing in marine and social science programs. The institute maintains a learning center for K-3 with marine life tanks, wet-tables, video-microscopes, a digital imaging lab and a children's theater. The institute also has an at-sea learning center focused on grades 4-6. The institute offers curricula on a range of topics in ocean science, based on California state standards, for K-12, as well as summer camps and shipboard excursions on three vessels; Pilgrim, Spirit of Dana Point and R/V Sea Explorer. A mobile educational van brings ocean science to special needs and underserved students.
- The Stephen Birch Aquarium, affiliated with Scripps Institution of Oceanography, offers school programs for pre K-12th grade students to learn about the ocean, earth, and atmosphere. K-6 teachers, science specialists and informal educators can participate in workshops at the Birch Aquarium that provide inquiry-based training designed to meet California science standards.
- The Santa Barbara Museum of Natural History Ty Warner Sea Center engages visitors of all ages in interactive exhibits and scientific research activities, such as sampling and testing ocean water, studying animal behavior, and examining microscopic marine life.
- The Roundhouse Aquarium in Manhattan Beach promotes the public study of, and interest in, the oceans, tidelands and beaches of southern California. The aquarium educates visitors with live exhibits, and offers K-12 programming, summer camps, and field trips,
- The SEA Lab is a hands-on coastal science education center for K-12 students in Redondo Beach that employs and mentors young adults for the purpose of instilling the message of stewardship of our natural resources. Managed by the Los Angeles Conservation Corps, the SEA Lab focuses on building awareness of the direct link between the urban and ocean environments through educational programs and

community service projects. College students operate all of the activities with aid from more than 100 dedicated local volunteers.

Dedicated education programs provide educational materials linked to California state teaching standards, including curricula, lab and field activities, and provide opportunities for teachers to learn how to integrate ocean science into their classrooms.

- The California Center for Ocean Sciences Education Excellence (COSEE) is working to increase awareness about ocean issues, focusing on conveying the seven principles of ocean literacy, among K-12 students and their communities. COSEE provides ocean-related educational materials for K-12 schools and opportunities for scientists to connect with schools in the greater Los Angeles area. COSEE also distributes an undergraduate and graduate course, “Communicating Ocean Science.” In addition, COSEE hosts a public lecture series to encourage interaction between scientists, educators, students and the public.
- Southwest Marine and Aquatic Educators' Association (SWMEA) brings together teachers and educators from aquariums and museums who focus on aquatic and marine science. For example, at the Birch Aquarium, SWMEA offers a 2-day workshop to “train educators about regional marine-science education programs, cutting-edge research on climate change and shark conservation, and strategies for implementing hands-on science activities.”

Research institutions often develop educational opportunities for undergraduate and graduate students. Some research institutions expand education programs to include K-12 students, teachers and community members.

- University of Southern California’s Wrigley Institute for Environmental Studies offers an array of opportunities for informal education through lectures, outdoor activities, laboratory studies, tours and workshops for school groups and the general public. College junior and seniors can immerse themselves in a 15-week intensive “Catalina Semester.” The Wrigley Institute supports fellowships for undergraduate student research and internships for graduate students. The institute also offers intensive summer courses from middle to graduate school levels. University of Southern California Sea Grant sponsors the “Island Explorers” program to bring teachers and their students to Catalina Island. The institute also is used as a venue for special conferences on topics that are relevant to local communities such as storm-water runoff.
- University of California, Santa Barbara’s Marine Science Institute offers training for graduate students and postdoctoral students as well as opportunities for undergraduates and high school students to participate in research activities. Marine Science Institute supports the Research Experience and Education Facility, or REEF, which provides opportunities for learning through an aquarium, touch tank, and Mobile Reef Program for school children (K-12 and undergraduate). Marine Science Institute also maintains a Floating Lab for on-the-water teaching and learning about how to conduct scientific research.
- Jet Propulsion Laboratory provides a variety of student and educator resources, including educator professional development, a resource center for teachers, kids

activities, student programs for K-12, and educational podcasts and videos. Jet Propulsion Laboratory hosts a series of speakers and public events to increase awareness about atmospheric and oceanic sciences. Jet Propulsion Laboratory also supports a pre-college bridge program for high school students, undergraduate student research programs and scholarships, and opportunities for graduate and postdoctoral studies.

- Southern California Marine Institute, an alliance of 12 universities in southern California, provides training and hands-on experience to students at all levels (K-12 and college) and works to increase public awareness. Education programs, on topics including marine ecology, oceanography, environmental monitoring, marine tetrapods, and Catalina Island marine biology, can be designed to meet the specific needs and interests of a class or instructor, and the California science standards for grades K-12. Southern California Marine Institute conducts demonstration cruises to collect information about water quality and organisms inside and outside of Los Angeles Harbor. In 1994, Southern California Marine Institute started Coastal Ecology Day to engage students and volunteers in surveys of rocky intertidal beaches.
- Southern California Coastal Ocean Observing System (SCCOOS) provides a 9-week curriculum on “Weather and Water” for 5th grade as well as the opportunity for teachers to learn the material offered in the curriculum through a “Train-the-Trainer” program. SCCOOS also offers teachers and students access to real-time data from ocean observing instruments and historical weather data.
- The Marine Mammal Care Center at Fort MacArthur is involved in the education of students, school teachers and the general public in conjunction with the Center for Marine Studies.

Some state and federal agencies have developed education and outreach programs to increase public awareness about coast and ocean issues:

- The California Coastal Commission Public Education Program offers information on Coastal Cleanup Day (3rd Saturday in September), Coastweeks (annual 3-week celebrations of coastal and water resources), Boating Clean and Green, and educational materials for teachers and students, grades 3-12. The Coastal Commission offers three classroom activity guides: “Waves, Wetlands, and Watersheds,” “Our Wetlands, Our World,” and “Save Our Seas.”
- California Sea Grant regularly conducts public workshops about water quality, fish habitat needs, and land use for both large and small agricultural landowners.
- The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS) provides brochures, participates in outreach events, hosts teacher trainings, lecture series and field seminars, and plans coastal signage. CINMS education staff develops and distributes curriculum guides, scripted slide shows, field trips for teachers, and web-based educational materials. CINMS also offers an opportunity for teachers to work alongside researchers on seabird population studies, marine reserves ROV monitoring, and other research projects in the sanctuary.

- “LiMPETS (Long-term Monitoring Program and Experiential Training for Students) is an environmental monitoring and education program for students, educators, and volunteer groups supported by the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary education and outreach program. This hands-on program was developed to monitor the ocean and coastal ecosystems of California’s National Marine Sanctuaries to increase awareness and stewardship of these important areas. Two monitoring programs make up the core of the LiMPETS network: the Rocky Intertidal Monitoring Program and the Sandy Beach Monitoring Program.”
- Together, the Channel Islands National Park and Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary train dozens of volunteers about physical, biological, and cultural aspects of the Santa Barbara Channel and Channel Islands; the volunteers serve as docents on whale-watching trips and island hikes.
- The Santa Monica Bay Restoration Commission contributes to public education about efforts to restore and protect the Bay. Santa Monica Bay Restoration Commission supports an interactive information system about Santa Monica Bay, maintains a boater education program and contributed to outreach at the Santa Monica Pier Aquarium, among other education and outreach projects.
- Channel Islands National Park rangers and educators teach schoolchildren about the Park’s resources in the field and classroom. The park offers hour-long, in-class programs for grades 2-5 in local schools and programs at the visitors’ center in Ventura for all ages.
- Tijuana River Reserve offers tours, lectures, and hands-on education programs for students and adults. The Reserve website also provides teaching materials for K-12 on a variety of topics, including ecology, geology, history, language arts and human use.

Non-governmental organizations also contribute to education and outreach in the south coast study region.

- The Catalina Island Conservancy, located in Avalon on Catalina Island, focuses on island conservation, education and research. The Conservancy offers natural history programs for all ages through the nature center and island hikes and special educational programs for local schoolchildren. In addition, the Conservancy provides itineraries and teaching aids for educators who bring students to Catalina Island.
- Santa Barbara Channelkeeper offers interactive marine education, focused on water quality, eelgrass beds and kelp forests, to schools throughout Santa Barbara and northern Ventura counties.
- Heal the Bay is a non-profit organization dedicated to making southern California coastal waters safe, healthy and clean. Heal the Bay also provides free professional development for teachers (K-5) and instruction for students at the Santa Monica Pier Aquarium and at the beach. Heal the Bay developed and distributes interdisciplinary curricula on the subject of watershed stewardship for K-12 students. In addition, Heal the Bay organizes volunteers to participate in Coastal Cleanup and Adopt a Beach in Los Angeles County.

- Long Beach Marine Institute offers educational opportunities to help students learn about marine science and explore the ocean. The institute offers shipboard excursions, summer camp and teen programs, and educational visits to tidepools, Catalina Island, and Aquarium of the Pacific.
- Santa Monica Baykeeper conducts public outreach and education programs to teach local citizens and schoolchildren about local coastal resources. Baykeeper sponsors public workshops about the Clean Water Act and makes in-class presentations about kelp reforestation and urban runoff.
- San Diego Coastkeeper, Orange County Coastkeeper, and Ventura Coastkeeper, members of the international Waterkeeper Alliance, are watchdog organizations working on coastal water pollution issues for the region. Coastkeeper conducts education and outreach to the public and decision-makers through community events and directed campaigns.
- Surfrider Foundation has nine chapters in the south coast study region from Santa Barbara to San Diego. Surfrider Foundation's core activities and programs include the Blue Water Task Force, a water monitoring, advocacy, and education program, as well as the Respect the Beach program, which is designed for K-12 classrooms.
- WILDCOAST designs programs and activities to inform and educate both the English and Hispanic communities of the south coast study region. Programs and campaigns center around conserving marine wildlife and ecologically significant coastal marine areas in and around Baja California and the California/Mexico border coast.

Website and contact information for the academic, research, and education institutions listed above may be found in Appendix VII.

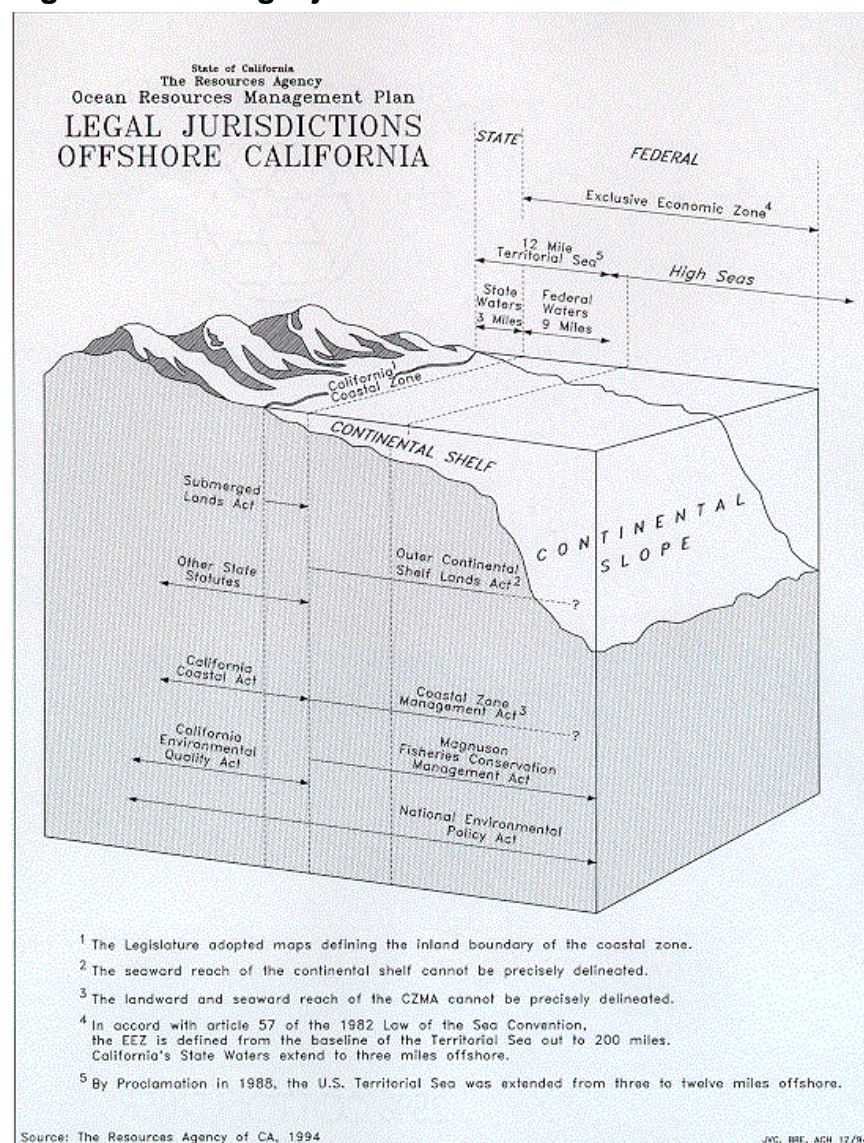


## 7.0 Jurisdiction and Management

### 7.1 Federal, State, Local and Native American Jurisdiction and Programs

No single federal, state, or local agency has complete jurisdiction over the coastal and marine environment. Rather, jurisdiction varies spatially and with respect to the resource being managed. Figure 7.1-1 illustrates the division of jurisdictions between state and federal agencies offshore of California. Some key federal, state, local, and Native American entities are highlighted below with a brief description of their role and responsibility.

**Figure 7.1-1: Legal jurisdictions offshore California**



Source: California Resources Agency 1997.

### 7.1.1 Federal Agencies and Programs

The **U.S. Department of Commerce** has several agencies with responsibility for ocean and coastal resources, which are described below:

**The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)** conducts research and manages ocean resources through three units which have direct interest in MPA issues: the National MPA Center, the National Marine Sanctuary Program, and NOAA Fisheries (NOAA 2004).

**The National MPA Center** was established by Executive Order 13158 in 2000 to oversee efforts to create a national system of MPAs and to assist government agencies participating in this effort. The National MPA center is located in Silver Springs, Maryland and supports two regional institutes which specialize in the technical aspects of the order. The National MPA Center's Training and Technical Assistance Institute is located in Charleston, South Carolina and serves as a training facility for resource managers. The second office, known as the National MPA Science center, is located in Santa Cruz, California and handles the scientific aspects behind planning, research, monitoring, and policy analysis of the national system of MPAs. The National MPA Center also supports the MPA Federal Advisory Committee established under the executive order (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005).

**The National Marine Sanctuary Program** manages 14 MPAs that encompass more than 150,000 mi<sup>2</sup> of marine and Great Lakes waters from Washington State to the Florida Keys, and from Lake Huron to American Samoa. The system includes 13 national marine sanctuaries and the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument. Since 1972, the National Marine Sanctuaries Program (NMSP) has worked cooperatively with the public and federal, state, and local officials to protect sanctuary resources while allowing compatible commercial and recreational activities. Increasing public awareness of marine heritage, scientific research, monitoring, exploration, educational programs, and outreach are the principal tools the NMSP uses to fulfill its mandates. Sanctuaries have authority for establishing regulations under the National Marine Sanctuaries Act (Brookhart 2006). The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary lies within the south coast study region.

**NOAA Fisheries (the National Marine Fisheries Service or NMFS)** has regulatory authority for marine finfish, invertebrates, and marine mammals other than sea otters in waters 3-200 nautical miles from shore. NOAA Fisheries derives its authority from the Magnuson-Stevens Fisheries Conservation and Management Act of 1976 (Magnuson-Stevens Act), the Marine Mammal Protection Act and the federal Endangered Species Act. Under the Magnuson-Stevens Act, NOAA Fisheries manages any fishery that is the subject of a fishery management plan developed by regional fishery management councils (see below) as well as some non-fishery management plan species (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005).

**The Pacific Fishery Management Council (PFMC)** is one of eight regional fishery management organizations established by the Magnuson-Stevens Act. The PFMC develops



fishery management plans for fisheries between 3 and 200 nautical miles of shore, and these plans must be approved by the Secretary of Commerce and are implemented by NOAA Fisheries. The Secretary of Commerce, acting through NOAA Fisheries, has management authority for more than 100 species of finfish, primarily those associated with the bottom (groundfish), but also others such as highly migratory, salmon, and coastal pelagic species for the contiguous Pacific coast states.

**The National Estuarine Research Reserve System** is a network of terrestrial and aquatic areas established for long-term research, education and stewardship. Within California, there are three national estuarine research reserves, one in Elkhorn Slough, the San Francisco Bay, and the Tijuana River which is in the south coast study region. NOAA manages them jointly with CDFG, California Department of Parks and Recreation, and San Francisco State University, respectively. Long-term research, stewardship, and public education are the main objectives of the reserves. NOAA provides 70% of the sites' funding, while the state partner is required to provide the remaining 30%. Enforcement activities generally are the responsibility of the state partners (Goldfarb 2005).

**The U.S. Department of Interior** also has several agencies with responsibility for ocean and coastal-resources, which are described below.

**The United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS)** conserves, protects and enhances populations of fish, other wildlife, and plants, and manages the system of National Wildlife Refuges. This system includes the following coastal refuges in California: Castle Rock, Humboldt Bay, San Pablo Bay, Marin Islands, Farallon, Don Edwards San Francisco Bay, Salinas River, Guadalupe-Nipomo Dunes, Seal Beach, and the Tijuana Slough. The Seal Beach and Tijuana Slough National Wildlife Refuges are the only refuges within the south coast study region.

**The National Park Service (NPS)** has several park lands located along the California coast including Redwood National Park, Point Reyes National Seashore, Golden Gate National Recreation Area, and the two in the study region are Channel Islands National Park and the Cabrillo National Monument. Some key designated lands and sites in the south coast study region are listed in Table 7.1-1. The typical seaward boundary of coastal national park lands extends to 1000 feet offshore, with the exception of the Channel Islands National Park which has a seaward boundary that extends to one nautical mile. The NPS regulates the use of the seabed within these 1000 feet of this boundary, but there is ambiguity as to its authority to regulate the harvest of living marine resources (Neubacher 2006).

**Table 7.1-1: Designated national parks, monuments and natural recreation areas adjacent to the south coast study region**

<b>Name</b>	<b>County</b>
Channel Islands National Park	Santa Barbara and Ventura
Cabrillo National Monument	San Diego
Santa Monica Mountains National Recreation Area	Los Angeles

The **Bureau of Land Management (BLM)** has management responsibility for the California Coastal National Monument established in 2000. The California Coastal National Monument consists of thousands of small rocks and pinnacles above mean high tide, including many rocks and islets in the south coast study region and extends from shore to 12 nautical miles seaward. BLM is only responsible for the part of the rocks and pinnacles that are above mean high tide. The primary purpose of the monument is to protect geological values, including habitat. Due to the nature of the California Coastal National Monument, the BLM co-manages living marine resources within the monument in cooperation with CDFG and the California Department of Parks and Recreation. A memorandum of understanding formalizes this co-management agreement. (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005, Hanks 2006).

The **U.S. Minerals Management Service (MMS)** manages the nation's natural gas, oil, other mineral resources, and alternative energy uses of existing facilities, on the outer continental shelf in federal waters.

The **U.S. Geological Survey (USGS)** is the earth science research and information agency and has conducted research on the continental shelf in the study region.

The **U.S. Department of Defense (DOD)** has installations along the California coast for which there may be a conflict between military activities and protection of natural resources offshore of the bases. The DOD and CDFG have made efforts in the past to allow for military activities within MPAs located offshore of military installations. Governor Schwarzenegger's *California's Action Strategy* of September 2004 declares that state agencies should coordinate ocean and coastal management activities that impact military facilities or operations with the DOD (California Resources Agency and California Environmental Protection Agency 2004). In some cases, access to military use areas is restricted (see section 8.3). There are several federal facilities and military bases in the study region, including:

The **U.S. Coast Guard (USCG)** is the primary maritime law enforcement agency (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005). The USCG has stations and centers in the following locations within the south coast study region (Table 7.1-2).

**Table 7.1-2: Coast Guard facilities in the south coast study region**

<b>Name of Facility</b>	<b>County</b>
Integrated Support Command San Pedro	Los Angeles
Air Station Los Angeles	Los Angeles
Marine Safety Office Long Beach	Los Angeles
Group Long Beach	Los Angeles
Air Station San Diego	San Diego
Marine Safety Office San Diego	San Diego
Group San Diego	San Diego

The **U.S. Army** has no bases in the south coast study region.

The **U.S. Air Force** has one base in Los Angeles County. The Los Angeles Air Force Base is located in El Segundo and supports the headquarters of the Air Force Space Command's Space and Missile Systems Center. More information about this base can be found on their website at <http://www.losangeles.af.mil>. Vandenberg Air Force Base is located just north of the study region.

The **U.S. Marine Corps** has Camp Pendleton Marine Base located in San Diego County. This base is the Marine Corps' largest west coast expeditionary training facility, encompasses more than 125,000 acres of southern California terrain. More information about this base can be found on their website at <http://www.pendleton.usmc.mil>.

The **U.S. Navy** has numerous bases and air stations located adjacent to the south coast study region as described in Table 7.1-3. The Navy also owns and manages San Clemente and San Nicolas Islands. San Clemente was acquired by the Navy in 1934. It is the Navy's only remaining ship-to-shore live firing range and is the center of the integrated air/land/sea San Clemente Island Range Complex covering 2,620 square nautical miles (<http://www.scisland.org/>). San Nicolas Island was acquired by the Navy in 1933. It is an integral part of the Pacific Missile Range and has several target sites used in missile training.

**Table 7.1-3: Navy facilities in the south coast study region**

<b>Name of Facility</b>	<b>County</b>
Point Mugu Naval Air Station	Ventura
Ventura County Naval Base	Ventura
Port Hueneme Construction Battalion Center	Ventura
Seal Beach Naval Weapons Station	Orange
Coronado Naval Base	San Diego
Coronado Naval Amphibious Base	San Diego
North Island Naval Air Station	San Diego
Point Loma Naval Base	San Diego
San Diego Naval Station	San Diego
San Diego Anti-Submarine Warfare Training Center	San Diego

The **U.S. Army Corp of Engineers (USACE)** plans, designs, constructs, operates, and maintains a wide variety of water infrastructure to support U.S. national economic interests, such as, navigation structures, channels, shore protection, and restoration projects (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005).

The **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA)**, Office of Water, is responsible for implementing the Ocean Dumping Act, Clean Water Act and Safe Drinking Water Act, and other portions of laws focused upon pollution prevention and watershed management. The USEPA also manages the National Estuary Program which identifies, restores, and protects nationally significant estuaries (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005).

### 7.1.2 State Agencies and Programs

The **California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG)** is a trustee agency and has management authority over living marine and estuarine resources and their habitats within state waters (generally between 0 and 3 nautical miles from shore or around offshore islands and including estuarine areas) as well as authority to regulate fisheries that deliver catch to California ports. Thus, CDFG has some authority beyond state waters and often enforces regulations in this area. In addition, the CDFG regulates marine aquaculture within state waters (See Section 5.5.2).

The **California Department of Parks and Recreation (CDPR)** is responsible for almost one-third of California's scenic coastline and manages coastal wetlands, estuaries, beaches, and dune systems within state park system units. Through State Water Bottom Leases, the California Department of Parks and Recreation has management authority over 15 underwater areas, though it does not have authority to restrict the take of living marine resources. The California Park and Recreation Commission has the authority to establish, modify, or delete state marine reserves, state marine parks, and state marine conservation areas, but must have the concurrence of the California Fish and Game Commission on any proposed restrictions to the extraction of living marine resources (California Public Resources Code, §6725). Of the 15 underwater areas, four can be found in the south coast study region and are under lease from the State Lands Commission until 2029. State Parks adjacent to the coast in the south coast study region include those listed in Table 7.1 - 4.

**Table 7.1-4: California State Parks located adjacent to shore in the south coast study region**

<b>Name of State Park</b>	<b>Underwater Park</b>	<b>County</b>
Refugio		Santa Barbara
El Capitain		Santa Barbara
Carpinteria		Santa Barbara
Emma Wood		Ventura
San Buenaventura		Ventura
McGrath		Ventura
Mandalay		Ventura
Oxnard		Ventura
Point Mugu		Ventura
Leo Carrillo		Los Angeles
Robert H. Meyer Memorial		Los Angeles
Point Dume		Los Angeles
Malibu Lagoon		Los Angeles
Bolsa Chica		Orange
Huntington		Orange
Corona del Mar		Orange

<b>Name of State Park</b>	<b>Underwater Park</b>	<b>County</b>
Crystal Cove	*	Orange
Doheny	*	Orange
San Clemente		Orange
Calafia		Orange
San Onofre		San Diego
Carlsbad		San Diego
South Carlsbad		San Diego
Leucadia		San Diego
Moonlight		San Diego
San Elijo	*	San Diego
Cardiff	*	San Diego
Torrey Pines		San Diego
Silver Strand		San Diego
Border Field		San Diego
Tijuana River National Estuarine Research Reserve		San Diego

Source: California Department of Parks and Recreation 2008

The **California State Lands Commission** is responsible for leasing state lands, including submerged lands in state waters (excluding aquaculture which is regulated by the CDFG). Additionally this commission has jurisdiction over oil and gas development, manages the removal of hazardous structures such as old piers and submerged oil and gas structures, issues permits for dredging in harbors and waterways, issues leases for marina, harbor or pier development, and has programs established for oil spill prevention. For more information on any additional responsibilities this commission has please see their website at <http://www.slc.ca.gov>.

The **California Coastal Commission (CCC)** regulates the use of land and water in a legislatively-designated coastal zone. The coastal zone varies between several hundred feet above mean high tide in highly urbanized areas and up to five miles in rural areas and extends to the state water offshore boundary. This jurisdiction extends into federal waters because of the federal consistency review responsibilities delegated to it under the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972. Any proposed action by a federal agency that will have a reasonably foreseeable impact on resources within the coastal zone must be consistent with the policies of the state's federally-approved coastal zone management program. Activities proposed by nonfederal applicants for federal licenses or permits, and state agencies or local governments applying for federal funds, are also subject to the federal consistency requirement. The establishment of MPAs may require a coastal development permit from the CCC if public access is limited or if there is any physical development, such as signage (California Coastal Commission 2005).

The **California State Coastal Conservancy (CSCC)** protects, restores, and improves coastal resources, and provides access to shore. The CSCC manages the CCA Program which

fosters collaboration among local stakeholders and government agencies to focus resources and efforts to reduce polluted runoff in coastal zone watersheds (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005). For a list of CCAs, see section 4.3.

The **State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB)** has regulatory authority over discharges into marine waters from point and nonpoint sources, as well as other water-quality related aspects. SWRCB has authority to create state water quality protection areas and areas of special biological significance (ASBS). Regional water quality control boards are the units within the SWRCB that oversee local management issues throughout the state (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005). For a list of ASBSs, see section 4.3.

The **California Department of Water Resources (DWR)** protects, conserves, develops, and manages California's water supplies in coordination with other agencies. These activities directly impact water quality and quantity in estuaries and nearshore ocean environments (California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative 2005).

The **California Ocean Protection Council (COPC)** was created by the California Ocean Protection Act of 2004. The COPC is currently chaired by the Secretary of Resources and includes the State Lands Commission Chair, the Secretary for Environmental Protection, two public members, and two non-voting, ex-officio members of the California Legislature.

The purpose of the COPC is to:

- Coordinate activities of ocean-related state agencies to improve the effectiveness of state efforts to protect ocean resources within existing fiscal limitations;
- Establish policies to coordinate the collection and sharing of scientific data related to coastal and ocean resources between agencies;
- Identify and recommend to the Legislature changes in law; and
- Identify and recommend changes in federal law and policy to the Governor and Legislature.

The COPC approved a five-year strategic plan in June 2006 which calls for the creation of a State Agency Steering Committee composed of senior representatives of state agencies with responsibility for coastal- and ocean-management. The State Agency Steering Committee met for the first time in September 2006.

The purpose of the State Agency Steering Committee is to:

- Identify top priorities for each fiscal year
- Identify strategies and projects within and across agencies to address these top priorities
- Assess the capabilities of agencies to carry out their ocean and coastal protection responsibilities
- Identify necessary funding for priority actions-either through redeploying existing funds, developing cross-cutting budgets, or identifying new funding

- Recommend any necessary legislative action or regulatory changes to implement priority actions and strategies (California Ocean Protection Council)

The COPC approved funding for seafloor mapping of the south coast study region to support MPA planning under the MLPA. Additionally they have funded the MPA Monitoring Enterprise and they have also supported two years of baseline characterization in the central coast study region.

The **California Public Utilities Commission (CPUC)** regulates privately owned telecommunications, electric, natural gas, water, railroad, rail transit, and passenger transportation companies, in addition to authorizing video franchises. In the south coast study region, the CPUC regulates LNG projects, electric generating power plants, and wave energy projects.

### 7.1.3 Local Government Programs

Counties and cities within the south coast study region manage and maintain beaches. Many of these beaches were previously within the California Department of Parks and Recreation. A list of these beaches by county is as follows:

**Santa Barbara County:** Isla Vista, Goleta Beach County Park, Arroyo Burro, Mesa lane, Hammonds, Miramar, Lookout, Leadbetter, West, East, Butterfly, Carpenteria City, Rincon, Rincon Point.

**Ventura County:** La Conchita, Mussel Shoals, Oil Piers, Hobson, Rincon Parkway, Faria, Solimar, Surfer's Point, Promenade, Marina Park, Marine Cove, Mandalay, Hollywood, Channel Islands Harbor, Silver Strand, Port Hueneme, Oxnard, Thornehill Broone, Sycamore Cove

**Los Angeles County:** Nicholas Canyon, Zuma, Dan Blocker, Las Tunas, Topanga, Will Rogers, Santa Monica, Venice, Marine Del Ray, Dockweiler, Manhattan Beach, Hermosa, Redondo, Torrence, White Point/ Royal Palm, Cabrillo, Long Beach, Belmont Shore, Anaheim Bay.

**Orange County:** Seal Beach, Seal Beach Pier, Surfside, Sunset, Huntington Harbor, Huntington City, West Newport Park/ Santa, Ana River County Park, Newport Beach, Newport Pier, Los Arenas Park, Little Corona Del Mar, Crescent Beach and Shaw's, Cove, Divers, Picnic and Rockpile, Heisler, Main, Stairs to Beaches, Rudy Viewpoint, Pocket, Aliso, Camel Point, 1000 Steps, Salt Creek, Dana Point Harbor, Swim, Louise Leyden, Capistrano, Poche, North, Linda Lane, San Clemente Pier, San Clemente City

**San Diego County:** Oceanside City, South Oceanside, Carlsbad City, Ponto, Beacon's, Encinitas, Stone steps, Moonlight, D Street, Boneyard, Swani's, Tide, Fletcher Cove, Seascape, Del Mar City, Black's Beach, La Jolla Shores, La Jolla Cove, Children's Pool, Marine Street, Windansea, La Jolla Strand, Tourmaline, Pacific, Mission, Mission Bay Beaches (8), Ocean Beach Park, Ocean Beach City, Coronado City, Imperial.

### Local Coastal Programs

The federal Coastal Zone Management Act passed in 1972 encouraged coastal states to develop polices to protect coastal resources. The California Coastal Act of 1976 established the CCC as a permanent coastal management and regulatory agency. The CCC retains permanent permit jurisdiction for proposed projects within a designated coastal zone, ranging from several hundred feet to several miles from the coast.

However, local government may assume permit jurisdiction once the CCC approves its LCP. Each LCP includes a land use plan that prescribes land use classifications, types and densities of allowable development, and goals and policies concerning development; and zoning and other ordinances and administrative procedures needed to implement the plan.



After an LCP is approved, the CCC's permitting authority is delegated to the local county/city government. The CCC retains appeal authority over certain local government permit decisions. It also retains original permit jurisdiction over development on tidelands, submerged lands, and public trust lands. All amendments to approved LCPs must be submitted to the Commission for review and approval. Within the south coast study region, all five coastal counties have certified LCPs. In addition, the following cities have approved LCPs or Land Use Plans (LUPs) as of January 2008:

- **Santa Barbara County**
  - Santa Barbara
  - Carpenteria
- **Ventura County**
  - San Buenaventura
  - Oxnard
  - Port Hueneme
- **Los Angeles County**
  - City of Malibu
  - Santa Monica (LUP)
  - El Segundo
  - Manhattan Beach
  - Hermosa Beach (LUP)
  - Redondo Beach
  - Palos Verdes Estates
  - Rancho Palo Verdes
  - Long Beach
  - Avalon
- **Orange County**
  - Huntington Beach
  - Newport Beach (LUP)
  - Irvine
  - Laguna Beach
  - Laguna Niguel
  - Dana Point
  - San Clemente (LUP)
- **San Diego County**
  - Oceanside
  - Carlsbad
  - Encinitas
  - Del Mar

San Diego  
Coronado  
National City  
Chula Vista  
Imperial Beach

#### 7.1.4 Native American jurisdiction/treaty Rights

The U.S. Constitution recognizes Native American tribes as separate and independent political communities within the territorial boundaries of the U.S. Tribes promulgate and administer their own laws and operate under their own constitutions.

There are 106 federally recognized Native American tribes in California as listed by the U.S. Bureau of Indian Affairs, and 19 of these lie within two coastal counties of the south coast study region. Out of the five coastal counties in the south coast study region, only Santa Barbara and San Diego counties have federally-recognized tribes within their boundaries. In addition, there are numerous tribes petitioning to be federally recognized.

Federally recognized tribes in coastal counties in the south coast study region include:

- **Santa Barbara County**  
Santa Ynez Band of Mission Indians, Chumash; Santa Barbara Co
- **San Diego County**  
Pauma (and Yuima) Band of Mission Indians. Luiseno; San Diego Co  
Pala Band of Mission Indians. Luiseno-Cupeno; San Diego Co  
Rincon Band of Mission Indians, Luiseno; San Diego Co  
La Jolla Band, Luiseno; San Diego Co  
Sycuan Rancheria, Kumeyaay (Diegueno); San Diego Co  
La Posta Band, Kumeyaay; San Diego Co  
Jamul Band of Mission Indians, Kumeyaay; San Diego Co  
Viejas Tribal Council, Kumeyaay; San Diego Co  
Manzanita General Council, Kumeyaay; San Diego Co  
San Pasqual Band, Kumeyaay; San Diego Co  
Capitan Grande, Kumeyaay (Diegueno); San Diego Co  
Campo Band of Mission Indians, Kumeyaay; San Diego Co  
Cuyapaipe Band of Mission Indians, Diegueno, Kumeyaay; San Diego Co  
Los Coyotes Band of Mission Indians, Cahuilla, Cupeno; San Diego Co  
Mesa Grande Band of Mission Indians, Diegueno; San Diego Co  
Santa Ysabel Band of Mission Indians, Diegueno; San Diego Co

Barona Indian Reservation, Ipai-Tipai (Digueno); San Diego Co  
Naja & Cosmit Band of Mission Indians, San Diego Co, no info

The California Fish and Game Code is not applicable to recognized members of Native American tribes within the boundaries of the reservation or rancheria, although the sale of bird, mammal, fish, or amphibia is still prohibited (Fish and Game code §12300). However, outside reservation or rancheria property, Native American citizens are subject to the Fish and Game Code. The CDFG grants permits to Native American citizens for the collection of seaweed for religious or ceremonial purposes.

## **7.2 Non-governmental Organizations and Programs**

There are dozens of non-governmental organizations in the study region that focus on a variety of coastal environmental issues. Most organizations use a combination of professionals and community volunteers to promote environmental education, ecosystem and water quality, and habitat restoration programs. Many organizations are also heavily involved in legislative efforts focused on environmental issues. Many of these organizations are described in more detail in section 6.0.

## **8.0 Existing MPAs and Coastal Protected Areas**

A variety of areas within the study region are afforded some degree of protection by existing state or federal regulations. These areas include existing MPAs as well as fisheries management measures, power plant closures, and military use areas. In addition, some terrestrial areas adjacent to the study region are protected and include coastal or marine resources.

### **8.1 Existing State Marine Protected Areas in the Study Region**

The Marine Life Protection Act requires that existing state MPAs in state waters be assessed and redesigned to meet the goals of the Act. According to California State law, an MPA is a discrete geographic area that has been designated by law, administrative action, or voter initiative, to protect or conserve marine or estuarine habitat and life. As part of the MLPA Initiative process, existing state MPAs within the study region will be evaluated to determine how they may contribute to the statewide network of MPAs. During the MLPA planning process, existing state MPAs may be retained without change, be modified in boundaries or regulations, or be eliminated.

Preliminary site characterizations and evaluations of existing MPAs in the entire state were completed by CDFG in 2004 (CDFG 2004b) but a more formal evaluation of existing state MPAs, based on guidelines in the California master plan for MPAs, will be conducted by the south coast science advisory team in conjunction with MLPA Initiative and CDFG staff.

There are 42 existing state MPAs within the south coast study region, as well as three special closures (Map 2.0-1, Table 8.1-1). These existing state MPAs include 15 state marine reserves (SMRs) (covering 6.7% of the study region), 8 state marine parks (SMPs) (covering 0.1% of the study region), and 19 state marine conservation areas (SMCAs) (covering 0.9% of the study region). All together, these MPAs and special closures cover 181.5 mi<sup>2</sup>, or 7.7% of the study region. One existing MPA in southern California, the Buena Vista SMP, was determined by CDFG to lie outside of the study region and is not tidally influenced.

Twelve of the 42 existing MPAs within the south coast study region were created during the Channel Islands MPA planning process. Channel Island MPAs in state waters were implemented in 2003. Of the MPAs created during this process, 10 are SMRs and two are SMCAs. An additional MPA, Footprint SMR, was created in the Channel Islands in 2007. The largest of these MPAs is Richardson Rock SMR, located off the northwest end of San Miguel Island, which covers 40.8 mi<sup>2</sup> in state waters. The smallest of these MPAs is Skunk Point SMR, on the eastern end of Santa Rosa Island, which covers 1.4 mi<sup>2</sup> in state waters.

In 2008, the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary and the CDFG completed a five-year review of monitoring efforts for the Channel Island MPAs. Data collection included: socioeconomic surveys, commercial fisheries landings, abundance, biomass and size differences inside and outside MPAs, recreational fishing effort, and vessel distribution and

boating and boater activities surveys. Documents related to this five-year review can be found at: [http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/channel\\_islands/monitoring.asp](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/channel_islands/monitoring.asp). The MPAs created during the Channel Islands process were designed with guidelines distinct from those found in the MLPA and California Master Plan for MPAs. However, the contribution of these MPAs to meeting the goals of the MLPA will be considered in the MLPA Initiative planning process.

With the exception of the MPAs designated during the Channel Islands process, most of the existing state MPAs within the study region were established in the late 1960s and throughout the 1970s and 1980s. The oldest MPA in the study region is the San Diego-Scripps SMCA, which was originally designated as a marine life refuge in 1957. The largest of these MPAs is Big Sycamore Canyon SMR (2.44 mi<sup>2</sup>) near Point Mugu, while the smallest is Agua Hedionda Lagoon SMR (0.01 mi<sup>2</sup>). Most of the existing MPAs are small; all but five of the MPAs not created during the Channel Islands process are under 1 mi<sup>2</sup> in area. None of these existing MPAs extend to deeper, offshore waters as recommended in the Master Plan for MPAs. Several of these existing MPAs have been included in research and monitoring efforts. For example, Catalina Marine Science Center SMR has been established as a research site under the Wrigley Institute for Environmental Studies and hosts a number of research and monitoring efforts (e.g. Lowe et al. 2003). Similarly, the San Diego-Scripps, La Jolla, and Mia J Tegner SMCAs have been studied by a number of researchers from Scripps Institute of Oceanography as well as other organizations (e.g. Parnell et al. 2005 and 2006). Big Sycamore Canyon SMR was established as part of the Marine Ecological Reserves Research Program and is periodically studied as well. Although these and several other existing MPAs have hosted research by a various organizations, many MPAs have not been extensively studied (CDFGb 2004).

Most of the MPAs established outside of the Channel Islands process were created in an ad hoc, uncoordinated manner. As a result, the boundaries of MPAs overlap in several instances, creating potential management and enforcement difficulties. For the purposes of planning within the south coast study region, when two MPAs overlap, the more stringent regulations will be considered. There are three instances of overlapping MPAs in the south coast study region: Crystal Cove SMCA overlaps with Irvine SMCA, Heisler Park SMR overlaps with Laguna Beach SMP, and Doheny SMCA overlaps with Doheny Beach SMCA. In these three cases, Irvine SMCA, Heisler Park SMR, and Doheny Beach SMCA have more restrictive regulations, which, for planning purposes will be applied in the overlapping areas.

**Table 8.1-1: Existing state MPAs and special closures in the south coast study region**

<b>MPA Name</b>	<b>Allowed Take</b>	<b>Area (mi<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>% of Total Region</b>
Refugio SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except for chiones, clams, cockles, rock scallops, native oysters, crabs, lobsters, ghost shrimp, sea urchins, mussels, worms, and finfish. Prohibits all commercial take except for Kelp; Crabs, ghost shrimp, jackknife clams, sea urchins, squid, worms, and finfish	1.04	0.04%
Goleta	Prohibits all recreational take except for invertebrates and	0.34	0.01%

<b>MPA Name</b>	<b>Allowed Take</b>	<b>Area (mi<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>% of Total Region</b>
Slough SMP	finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.		
Big Sycamore Canyon SMR	No Take	2.44	0.10%
Abalone Cove SMP	Prohibits all recreational take except for finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.	0.10	< 0.01%
Point Fermin SMP	Prohibits all recreational take except lobster; rockfish (family Scorpaenidae), greenling, lingcod, cabezon, yellowtail, mackerel, bluefin tuna, kelp bass, spotted sand bass, barred sand bass, sargo, croaker, queenfish, corbina, white seabass, opaleye, halfmoon, surfperch (family Embiotocidae), blacksmith, barracuda, California sheephead, bonito, California halibut, sole, turbot and sanddab. Prohibits all commercial take.	0.07	< 0.01%
Bolsa Chica SMP	Prohibits all recreational take except invertebrates and finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.	0.49	0.02%
Upper Newport Bay SMP	Prohibits all recreational take except invertebrates and finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.	0.99	0.04%
Robert E Badham SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except lobster; Rockfish (family Scorpaenidae), greenling, lingcod, cabezon, yellowtail, mackerel, bluefin tuna, kelp bass, spotted sand bass, barred sand bass, sargo, croaker, queenfish, corbina, white seabass, opaleye, halfmoon, surfperch (family Embiotocidae), blacksmith, barracuda, California sheephead, bonito, California halibut, sole, turbot and sanddab. Prohibits all commercial take except lobster.	0.02	< 0.01%
Crystal Cove SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except chiones, clams, cockles, rock scallops, native oysters, crabs, lobsters, ghost shrimp, sea urchins, mussels, and worms, and finfish. Prohibits all commercial take except algae (except giant kelp and bull kelp); crabs, ghost shrimp, jackknife clams, sea urchins, squid, and worms, and finfish	1.46	0.06%
Irvine Coast SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except lobster; Rockfish (family Scorpaenidae), greenling, lingcod, cabezon, yellowtail, mackerel, bluefin tuna, kelp bass, spotted sand bass, barred sand bass, sargo, croaker, queenfish, corbina, white seabass, opaleye, halfmoon, surfperch (family Embiotocidae), blacksmith, barracuda, California sheephead, bonito, California halibut, sole, turbot and sanddab. Prohibits all commercial take except lobster.	0.35	0.02%
Heisler Park SMR	No take	0.04	< 0.01%
Laguna Beach SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except lobster; Rockfish (family Scorpaenidae), greenling, lingcod, cabezon, yellowtail, mackerel, bluefin tuna, kelp bass, spotted sand bass, barred	0.39	0.02%

<b>MPA Name</b>	<b>Allowed Take</b>	<b>Area (mi<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>% of Total Region</b>
	sand bass, sargo, croaker, queenfish, corbina, white seabass, opaleye, halfmoon, surfperch (family Embiotocidae), blacksmith, barracuda, California sheephead, bonito, California halibut, sole, turbot and sanddab. Prohibits all commercial take except lobster.		
South Laguna Beach SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except lobster; Rockfish (family Scorpaenidae), greenling, lingcod, cabezon, yellowtail, mackerel, bluefin tuna, kelp bass, spotted sand bass, barred sand bass, sargo, croaker, queenfish, corbina, white seabass, opaleye, halfmoon, surfperch (family Embiotocidae), blacksmith, barracuda, California sheephead, bonito, California halibut, sole, turbot and sanddab. Prohibits all commercial take except lobster.	0.05	< 0.01%
Niguel SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except lobster; Rockfish (family Scorpaenidae), greenling, lingcod, cabezon, yellowtail, mackerel, bluefin tuna, kelp bass, spotted sand bass, barred sand bass, sargo, croaker, queenfish, corbina, white seabass, opaleye, halfmoon, surfperch (family Embiotocidae), blacksmith, barracuda, California sheephead, bonito, California halibut, sole, turbot and sanddab. Prohibits all commercial take except lobster.	0.51	0.02%
Dana Point SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except lobster outside the intertidal zone (mean high tide and mean lower-low water lines); Rockfish, greenling, ling cod, cabezon, yellowtail, mackerel, bluefin tuna, kelp bass, spotted sand bass, barred sand bass, sargo, croaker, queenfish, Corbina, white seabass, opaleye, halfmoon, surfperch, blacksmith, barracuda, sheephead, bonito, California halibut, sole, turbot, and sanddab outside the intertidal zone (mean high tide and mean lower-low water lines). Prohibits all commercial take except lobster.	0.20	0.01%
Doheny SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except chiones, clams, cockles, rock scallops, native oysters, crabs, lobsters, ghost shrimp, sea urchins, mussels, and worms, and finfish. Prohibits all commercial take except algae (except giant kelp and bull kelp); crabs, ghost shrimp, jackknife clams, sea urchins, squid, and worms, and finfish	0.19	0.01%
Doheny Beach SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except lobster; Rockfish (family Scorpaenidae), greenling, lingcod, cabezon, yellowtail, mackerel, bluefin tuna, kelp bass, spotted sand bass, barred sand bass, sargo, croaker, queenfish, corbina, white seabass, opaleye, halfmoon, surfperch (family Embiotocidae), blacksmith, barracuda, California sheephead, bonito, California halibut, sole, turbot and sanddab. Prohibits all commercial take except lobster.	0.15	0.01%
Buena Vista SMP <sup>1</sup>	Prohibits all recreational take except finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.	0.29 <sup>1</sup>	NA



<b>MPA Name</b>	<b>Allowed Take</b>	<b>Area (mi<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>% of Total Region</b>
Agua Hedionda Lagoon SMR	No take.	0.01	< 0.01%
Batiquitos Lagoon SMP	Prohibits all recreational take except finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.	0.29	0.01%
Encinitas SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except finfish. Prohibits all commercial take except for finfish.	0.11	< 0.01%
Cardiff-San Elijo SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except chiones, clams, cockles, rock scallops, native oysters, crabs, lobsters, ghost shrimp, sea urchins, mussels, and worms and finfish. Allows all commercial take.	1.23	0.05%
San Elijo Lagoon SMP	Prohibits all recreational take except finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.	0.39	0.02%
San Dieguito Lagoon SMP	Prohibits all recreational take except finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.	0.17	0.01%
San Diego-Scripps SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except finfish. Prohibits all commercial take except for finfish.	0.11	< 0.01%
La Jolla SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take. Prohibits all commercial take except for squid for the purpose of bait by hand-held net west of a line drawn due north from Goldfish point.	0.77	0.03%
Mia J Tegner SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except finfish. Prohibits all commercial take except for finfish and marine aquatic plants.	0.02	< 0.01%
Richardson Rock SMR	No Take	40.75	1.73%
San Miguel Island Special Closure	Boating prohibited within 300 yards from shore between Castle Rock and Judith Rock except as noted. Boats may approach no nearer than 100 yards from shore during the period(s) from March 15 through April 30, and October 1 through December 15. Commercial Sea Urchin Permittees may enter the portion of the closed area between the western boundary of the Judith Rock SMR and Castle Rock for the purpose of taking urchins.	1.27	0.05%
Judith Rock SMR	No Take	4.55	0.19%
Harris Point SMR	No Take	25.34	1.08%
South Point SMR	No Take	13.05	0.55%
Carrington Point SMR	No Take	12.76	0.54%
Skunk Point SMR	No Take	1.39	0.06%
Painted Cave SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except for lobster and pelagic finfish. Prohibits all commercial take.	1.78	0.08%

<b>MPA Name</b>	<b>Allowed Take</b>	<b>Area (mi<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>% of Total Region</b>
Gull Island SMR	No Take	19.91	0.85%
Scorpion SMR	No Take	9.63	0.41%
Footprint SMR	No Take	7.05	0.30%
Anacapa Island SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except for lobster and pelagic finfish. Prohibits all commercial take except for lobster.	11.54	0.49%
Anacapa Island SMR	No Take	7.30	0.31%
Anacapa Island Special Closure	No entry January 1 to October 31. No commercial nets or traps shallower than 20 feet around entire island.	0.95	0.04%
Santa Barbara Island SMR	No Take	12.77	0.54%
Arrow Point to Lion Head Point Special Closure	Prohibits all recreational take except marine aquatic plants and fishes. Allows all commercial take, though other species and gear restrictions apply.	0.64	0.03%
Catalina Marine Science Center SMR	No Take	0.06	< 0.01%
Farnsworth Bank SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take except finfish and invertebrates (prohibits take of purple coral). Prohibits all commercial take except marine aquatic plants, finfish, and invertebrates (prohibits take of purple coral).	1.66	0.07%
Lover's Cove SMCA	Prohibits all recreational take. Prohibits all commercial take except for kelp and finfish.	0.02	< 0.01%
Total Area of State Marine Reserves		157.1	6.67%
Total Area of State Marine Parks		2.8	0.12%
Total Area of State Marine Conservation Areas		21.6	0.92%
Total Area in State Marine Protected Areas in the South Coast Study Region		181.5	7.71%
Total Area in Special Closures		2.86	0.12%
Total Area of South Coast Study Region		2,354.69	

Note: <sup>1</sup> Buena Vista SMP has been determined by CDFG to lie outside of the south coast study region as it is not tidally influenced and does not host marine vegetation. The area of this MPA is not included in the calculations above.

In some locations, local initiatives have resulted in additional protection for marine resources. For example, Avalon Underwater Park, commonly known as Casino Point Underwater Park,

has been a non-profit underwater city park since 1965 on the island of Santa Catalina. Local law prohibits salvaging artifacts and makes this city park a no-take zone. Avalon Underwater Park is also closed to boat traffic and is a popular dive location (Divemaster 2008, Catalina Divers Supply 2008).

## **8.2 Marine Managed Areas and Other Fishery Closures**

The south coast study region and adjacent areas have other marine managed areas where marine resource use is restricted. Some of these areas have permanent boundaries such as national marine sanctuaries, while other boundaries vary seasonally such as federal rockfish conservation areas, and the bottom trawl closure within the California Halibut Trawl Grounds (Map 8.2-2).

### **8.2.1 Federally Managed Areas**

#### **Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary**

The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS) was designated on September 22, 1980 in part to protect "significant cultural, natural resources." Administered by the NOAA the 1,243 square nautical mile sanctuary surrounds the following islands and offshore rocks: San Miguel Island, Santa Cruz Island, Santa Rosa Island, Anacapa Island, Santa Barbara Island, Richardson Rock, and Castle Rock extending seaward to a distance of approximately six nautical miles. The islands and rocks vary in distance from 12 to 40 nautical miles offshore from Santa Barbara and Ventura counties. The CINMS completely surrounds the Channel Islands National Park. The sanctuary includes the three nautical miles of California state waters plus three nautical miles of adjacent Federal waters. The sanctuary is an area of multiple uses and within the CINMS the harvesting of kelp, fish and invertebrates is permitted in most areas. Within the CINMS, the CDFG manages marine resources in state waters, NOAA Fisheries manages marine resources and in federal waters, and USFWS manages wildlife species listed under the Endangered Species Act. The sanctuary also regulates activities including: oil, gas, and mineral exploration, vessel discharge, seabed construction, the operation of large vessels within 1 nautical mile of islands and certain offshore rocks, seabird, marine mammal, and sea turtle protection, use of historical resources, and use of personalized water craft.

The current sanctuary regulations have been in place since 1980. NOAA is in the process of changing sanctuary regulations in order to: clarify and update existing vague and/or outdated sanctuary regulations; increase consistency with other national marine sanctuaries' regulations (especially the other three national marine sanctuaries in California); address priority resource issues; and address new, emerging, and other potential threats to sanctuary resources. For details about regulations in the CINMS please refer to <http://channelislands.noaa.gov>.

#### **Channel Islands National Park**

On March 5, 1980 the United States Congress established the Channel Islands National Park (CINP) to encompass San Miguel, Santa Rosa, Santa Cruz, Anacapa, and Santa Barbara islands, and submerged lands and waters within one nautical mile of each island. The park regulates landing and camping on the islands, vessel traffic near seabird nesting and marine mammal haul out areas, access to cultural and archeological sites, and use of personal watercraft. Channel Islands National Park works closely with the CINMS and other public and private partners to coordinate the preservation and protection of the Channel Islands. More information on Channel Islands National Park can be found at <http://www.nps.gov/chis/>.

### **Other Federally Managed Areas**

A variety of other areas within the MLPA south coast study region are managed under federal agencies and programs. These include federal ecological preserves as well as the California Coastal National Monument (described further in section 7.0).

## **8.2.2 Fishery Closures Within and Adjacent to the South Coast Study Region**

### **Cowcod and Rockfish Conservation Areas**

There are two Cowcod Conservation Areas off southern California, a Western and an Eastern Cowcod Conservation Area (Map 8.2-2), which have been in place since January, 2001. The Western Cowcod Conservation Area is an area south of Point Point Hueneme that includes state waters surrounding Santa Barbara and San Nicolas islands. The Eastern Cowcod Conservation Area is a smaller area west of San Diego and does not include state waters. The Cowcod Conservation Areas are closed to all commercial and recreational fishing for groundfish except: 1) "other flatfish" is permitted as specified at §§ 660.382 to 660.384; 2) recreational fishing is permitted shoreward of the 20 fm depth contour for minor nearshore rockfish, cabezon, all greenlings of the genus *Hexagrammos*, lingcod, and California scorpionfish; and 3) commercial fishing for rockfish and lingcod with limited entry fixed gear and open access non-trawl gear is permitted shoreward of the 20 fm depth contour.

Commercial fishing vessels may transit through the Western Cowcod Conservation Area with their gear stowed and groundfish on board only in a corridor through the Western Cowcod Conservation Area bounded on the north by the latitude line at 33°00.50' North latitude, and bounded on the south by the latitude line at 32°59.50' North latitude.

Rockfish Conservation Areas also exist within the south coast study region (Map 8.2-2). The goal of Rockfish Conservation Areas is to minimize incidental take of overfished rockfish that are likely to co-occur with healthy stocks of groundfish. To achieve this goal, Rockfish Conservation Area boundaries are designed to protect a particular depth contour, and boundaries may vary depending on gear type. The boundaries also vary depending on season (NOAA 2008b). Several different types of Rockfish Conservation Areas exist, including commercial trawl, commercial non-trawl, and recreational closures. Boundaries for these areas are based on depth and updated regularly by the National Marine Fisheries Service. Current boundaries for these areas will be available via an online mapping tool. Map 8.2-2

displays areas of overlap between the different types of RCAs, thus showing areas that are closed to all fishing year-round.

Descriptions and regularly updated information on these areas can be found at:  
<http://www.nwr.noaa.gov/Groundfish-Halibut/Groundfish-Fishery-Management/Groundfish-Closed-Areas/Index.cfm>

## **Essential Fish Habitat Conservation Areas**

Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) protection measures implement discrete area closures for specific gear types, effective June 12, 2006. These closed areas were identified by the Pacific Fishery Management Council (PFMC) and are intended to minimize to the extent practicable the adverse effects of fishing on groundfish EFH. Maps displaying EFH area closures to protect Pacific Coast groundfish habitat can be viewed at: [www.nwr.noaa.gov/Groundfish-Halibut/Groundfish-Fishery-Management/Groundfish-EFH/upload/Map-Gfish-EFH-Close.pdf](http://www.nwr.noaa.gov/Groundfish-Halibut/Groundfish-Fishery-Management/Groundfish-EFH/upload/Map-Gfish-EFH-Close.pdf)

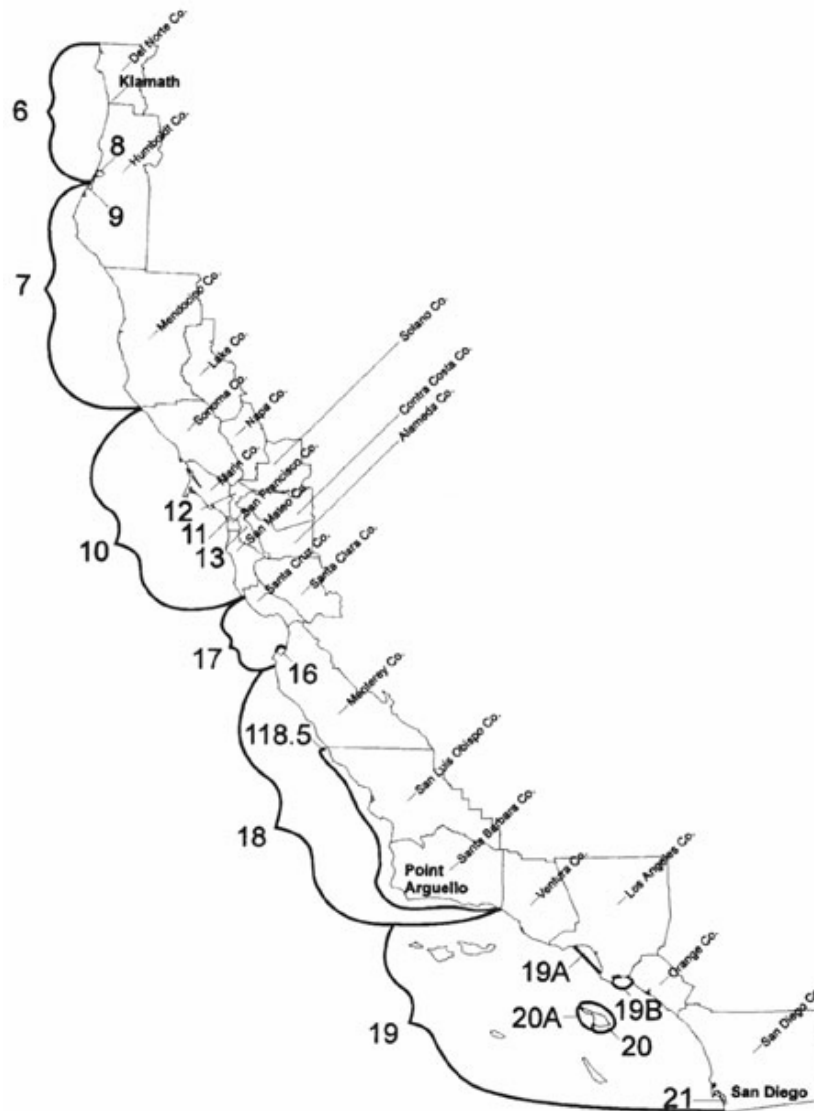
## **State of California Fish and Game Districts**

For the protection of fish and game, the State of California is divided into Fish and Game districts. These districts are defined in Fish and Game Code §11000 through 11039.

These Fish and Game districts are referenced in the Fish and Game Code to prohibit the use of certain commercial fishing gear or the take of fish species in certain districts. For example, “except as otherwise provided in this code, drift gill nets and set gill nets may be used in Districts 17, 18, 10, and 20A, except for the taking of salmon” (FGC §8693), and “(c) In District 19A, bait nets may be used only to take anchovies, queenfish, white croakers, sardines, mackerel, squid, and smelt for live bait purposes only. Bait nets may not be used within 750 feet of Seal Beach pier or Belmont Pier” (FGC §8780).

There are several smaller Fish and Game districts in southern California, some of which have significant restrictions on fisheries. For instance, commercial fishing has been very limited in Santa Monica Bay, CDFG fishing district 19A (Figure 8.2-1), since the 1950s. Fisheries restrictions for this area exist in several places in Fish and Game code. A small live-bait fishery using roundhaul nets continues to exist in Santa Monica Bay, but commercial fishing using set lines, trammel or gill nets, and handlines with more than two hooks has been prohibited (Schroeder and Love 2002, FGC §9026, §8694, §8725, §8757, §8780(b)). Troll lines are allowed in Santa Monica Bay (FGC §9025.5). Traps are banned from areas of the bay. Finfish and hagfish traps may not be used within 750 feet of any piers, jetties, and breakwaters, but are allowed outside that area (FGC §9001, §9001.7(g)). Spot prawn traps are also allowed in Santa Monica Bay (FGC §9001, §9015). Commercial take of rock crabs and lobster is also not allowed (CCR T14 §122(a)(2), FGC §8282). Santa Monica Bay is open to recreational fishers, and recreational fishing from shore and boats is still a popular activity within the bay (Schroeder and Love 2002).

**Figure 8.2-1: Department of Fish and Game fishing districts**



### 8.3 Military and Power Plant Closures

Some areas within the south coast study region have limited access due to military operations or power plant activities. While not technically MPAs, these locations do limit the amount of extraction that may take place as they limit access. Several of these areas are shown on Map 8.2-1.

Vandenberg Air Force Base is located in Lompoc near Point Conception. Nine danger zones exist surrounding the base, which are periodically closed during launch activities. Danger zones 8 and 9 fall within the south coast study region (Map 8.2-1). The islands of San Nicolas

and San Clemente are owned and operated by the U.S. Navy. During military maneuvers, portions of the waters of San Clemente Island also are closed to access (Map 8.2-1). Access to waters adjacent to several Naval facilities in San Diego is also prohibited, including the Naval Ocean Systems Center, Naval Supply Center, Naval Submariner Base Point Loma, Naval Air Station North Island Bravo Pier, Fleet Industrial Supply Center Pier, and Naval Station San Diego.

Several coastal power plants are located within the study region and several have restricted coastal access for security reasons. San Onofre Nuclear Generating Station for instance, prohibits vessel traffic from entering, transiting, or anchoring within one nautical mile of the power plant (measured from 33 22' 30" N, 117 33' 50" W), though it does not prevent recreational activities in the surf zone or on the beach.

More information on U.S. Coastguard Security/Precautionary Zones can be found at: <http://www.dbw.ca.gov/PressRoom/2003/030702USCGSec.aspx>.

#### **8.4 Terrestrial Protected Areas in Coastal Watersheds**

There are a variety of terrestrial protected areas within coastal watersheds of the region (Map 8.2-1). These areas include many state parks, state beaches, national wilderness areas, county and city beaches, national parks, national wilderness areas, and military lands along the coast that provide some protection for shoreline and estuarine habitats (Table 8.4-1).

**Table 8.4-1: Summary of terrestrial protected areas in the south coast study region**

<b>Type of Protected Area</b>	<b>Locations</b>	<b>Number</b>
National Parks	Channel Island National Park	1
National Recreation Areas	Santa Monica Mountains	1
National Monuments	Cabrillo	1
National Wildlife Refuges	Tijuana Slough, Seal Beach, San Diego Bay, and San Diego	4
	Gaviota, Refugio, El Capitan, Carpenteria, Emma Wood, San Buenaventura, McGrath, Mandalay, Point Mugu, Leo Carrillo, Robert H. Meyer, Point Dume, Malibu Lagoon, Bolsa Chica, Huntington, Corona Del Mar, Doheny, San Clemente, Calafia, Crystal Cove, San Onofre, Carlsbad, South Carlsbad, Leucadia, Moonlight, San Elijo, Cardiff, Torrey Pines, Silver Strand, Border Field,	30
State Beaches and Parks		
National Forests	Los Padres, Angeles, Cleveland	3
State Reserves	Torrey Pines, Tijuana River National Estuarine Research Reserve	2
Santa Barbara County Beaches	Rincon, Carpenteria City, Lookout, Miramar, Hammonds, Butterfly, East, West, Leadbetter, Meas Lane, Arroyo Burro, Goleta, and Isla Vista	13
Ventura County Beaches	Sycamore Cove, Ormond, Thorny Broone, Port Hueneme, Silver Strand, Channel islands, Hollywood, Mandalay, Marina	18

<b>Type of Protected Area</b>	<b>Locations</b>	<b>Number</b>
	Cove, Marina Park, Promenade Park, Surfer's Point, Solimar, faria, Rincon Parkway North, Hobson, Oil Piers, Mussel Shoals, and La Conchita	
Los Angeles County Parks	Nicholas Canyon, Zuma, Point Dume, Dan Blocker, Malibu, Las Tunas, Topanga, Will Rogers, Venice, Dockweiler, Torrence, Santa Monica, Marine Del Rey, Hermosa, Redondo, Torrance, Point Vincente, White Point Royal Palm, Cabrillo	18
Orange County Beaches	Seal, Surfside, Sunset, Huntington City, Santa Ana River, Newport, Balboa Beach, Newport Dunes, China Cove, Pirates Cove, Balboa Island, Little Corona Del Mar, Crescent Bay, Diver's Cove, Heisler Park, Main Beach, Stairs to Beaches, Ruby Viewpoint, Pocket, Aliso, Carmel Point, Salt Creek, Dana Point Harbor, Swim Beach, Louise Leyden, Capistrano, Poche, North, Linda Lane, and San Clemente City	31
San Diego County Beaches	Imperial, Coronada City, Ocean Beach, Mission, Pacific, Tourmaline, Windansea, Main Street, Childrens Pool, La Jolla Cove, La Jolla Shores, Black's, Del Mar City, Seascape, Fletcher Cove, Tide, Swami's, Boneyard, D. Street, Moonlight, Stone Steps, Encinitas, Beacons, Ponto, Carlsbad, and Oceanside	26
Other Terrestrial Protected Areas	Point Mugu Naval Station, Camp Pendleton, San Diego Bay Naval Base, San Nicolas Island, San Clemente Island, and coastal power plants listed in section 4.5.3.	-



## **9.0 Summary by Subregion**

Information presented on a localized scale is important to consider in MPA planning. To this end, highlights and basic information on the ecological and socioeconomic setting and existing managed areas in each of the seven subregions will be summarized within this section (note that subregions delineated here have been created for ease of displaying information on maps). These subregional summaries will be completed by MLPA Initiative staff with contributions from stakeholders as part of a broader joint fact-finding effort between stakeholders, scientists, and MLPA Initiative staff.

Topics that will be summarized and addressed on a subregional scale within this section in subsequent versions of the regional profile include:

- Ecological Setting
- Land-Sea Interactions
- Socioeconomic Setting
- Research and Monitoring
- Existing MPAs, Marine Managed Areas, and Coastal Protected Areas
- Other Issues

## **10.0 Conclusion**

The MLPA south coast study region is the third region to begin the MLPA planning process and builds on lessons learned during the MLPA Central Coast and North Central Coast Projects. This regional profile summarizes and provides background information on the biological, oceanographic, socioeconomic and governance aspects of the region and will draw upon suggestions and information provided by regional stakeholders and the SAT. The profile serves as a foundation for evaluating existing MPAs and describing alternatives of potential new MPAs, and identifying needs for additional data and information.

The MLPA has a number of goals that includes conservation of biodiversity and health of marine ecosystems, recovery of depleted marine populations, protection of representative and unique habitats for their intrinsic value, and improvement of recreational, educational, and study opportunities. The south coast study region is one of the most biologically productive and heavily used regions in the world. Furthermore, California's marine and coastal environments form part of the State's identity and support important economies that depend on healthy ocean resources, such as fisheries and coastal tourism.

In summary, the south coast study region has many important and unique features including:

- A number of offshore islands situated in an area of complex bathymetry that support diverse ecological assemblages
- Unique oceanographic conditions, including the intersection between two distinct biogeographic regions
- Important kelp forests and rocky reefs and associated species assemblages
- Large expanses of sandy beaches and soft bottom habitats important for a number of species as well as coastal activities
- Regionally important estuaries (e.g. Anaheim Bay, Upper Newport Bay, Bolsa Chica, San Diego Bay, and Tijuana River Estuary)
- High species diversity, including a number special status species
- High population density, with millions of people living in close proximity to the coast
- Rich and productive fisheries that have supported coastal communities and provided fresh seafood to the region and the world
- Large numbers of both consumptive and non-consumptive recreational coastal users
- Renown as a fishing, diving, kayaking, whale-watching and wildlife viewing destination where marine recreational activities help to support coastal tourism and coastal communities
- The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary
- An abundance of marine research and educational institutions and NGOs whose staff have explored and studied the region and helped to raise public awareness about marine ecosystems

## 11.0 References Cited

- Abbott, I.A. and G.J. Hollenberg. 1976. Marine Algae of California. Stanford University Press. Stanford, CA.
- Airamé, S., S. Gaines, and C. Caldow. 2003a. Ecological Linkages: Marine and Estuarine Ecosystems of Central and Northern California. NOAA, National Ocean Service. Silver Spring, MD. 164pp.
- Allen, L.G., D.J. Pondella, and M.H. Horn. 2006. The Ecology of Marine Fishes: California and Adjacent Waters. University of California Press, 2006, 670pp.
- Allen, M.J. and K.T. Herbinson. 1991. Beam-trawl Survey of Bay and Nearshore Fishes of the Soft-bottom Habitat of Southern California in 1989. CalCOFI Rep, Volume 32, 2001, 112-127pp.
- Allen, L.G., A.M. Findlay, and C.M. Phalen. 2002. The Fish Assemblages of San Diego Bay in the Five-year Period of July 1994 to April 1999. Bull. So. Cal Acad. Sci., 101(2): 49-85.
- Allen, M.J., S.L. Moore, K.C. Schiff, S.B. Weisberg, D. Diener, J.K. Stull, A. Groce, J. Mubarak, C.L. Tang, and R. Gartman. 1998. Southern California Bight 1994 Pilot Project: V. Demersal Fishes and Megabenthic Invertebrates. Southern California Coastal Water Research Project, Westminster, CA. 324pp.
- Alonzo, S., M. Key, T. Ish, and A. MacCall. 2004. Status of the California Sheephead (*Semicossyphus Pulcher*) Stock (2004). California Department of Fish and Game, Marine Region, 30pp. + appendices.
- American Trader Trustee Council. 2001. Final Restoration Plan and Environmental Assessment for Seabirds Injured by the American Trader Oil Spill. Report of the American Trader Natural Resource Trustee Council, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, California Department of Fish and Game, and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.
- Antonelis, G.A. and C.H. Fiscus. 1980. Pinnipeds of the California Current. CalCOFI Report. Volume XXI. CalCOFI.
- Association of National Estuary Programs (ANEP). 2001. Santa Monica Bay Restoration Project. NEP Fact Cards.
- Atkinson, L.P., K.H. Brink, R.E. Davis, B.H. Jones, T. Paluszkiwicz, and D.W. Stuart. 1986. Mesoscale Hydrographic Variability in the Vicinity of Point Conception and Arguello During April-May 1983: The OPUS 1983 Experiment. Journal of Geophysical. Research 91:12899-12918.
- Batiquitos Lagoon Foundation (BLF). 2008. About Batiquitos Lagoon.  
[http://www.batiquitosfoundation.org/newsite/about\\_main.php](http://www.batiquitosfoundation.org/newsite/about_main.php) (accessed 08/08/08).
- Beach Crabs. 2008. <http://www.beachcrabs.net/divesites.htm> (accessed 08/15/08).
- Bearzi, M. 2005. Habitat Partitioning by Three Species of Dolphins in Santa Monica Bay, California. Bulletin Southern California Academy of Science 104(3): 113-124.
- Blue Green Algae Work Group of the State Water Resources Control Board, Department of Public Health, and Office of Environmental Health and Hazard Assessment. 2007. Cyanobacteria in California Recreational Water Bodies: Providing Voluntary Guidance about Harmful Algal Blooms, Their Monitoring, and Public Notification. Draft released June 2007.  
[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/bluegreen\\_algae/docs/bga\\_volguidance.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/bluegreen_algae/docs/bga_volguidance.pdf).

- Boat Ramps Locator. 2008. Available from <http://www.boatrampslocator.com> (accessed 08/20/08).
- Booth, D.B. and C.R. Jackson. 1997. Urbanization of Aquatic Systems- Degradation Thresholds, Stormwater Detention, and the Limits of Mitigation. Journal of the American Water Resources Association, Volume 22, Number 5, October 1997.
- Brookhart, M. 2006. Personal communication between Matt Brookhart, Policy Coordinator, West Coast Region, National Marine Sanctuary Program and Amy Boone, Policy Analyst, California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative.
- Brown, J.A. 2006. Using the Chemical Composition of Otoliths to Evaluate the Nursery Role of Estuaries for English Sole (*Pleuronectes vetulus*) populations. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 306: 269-281.
- Burkett, E.E., R.J. Logsdon, and K.M. Fien. 2007. Report to the California Fish and Game Commission: Status Review of California Brown Pelican (*Pelicanus occidentalis californicus*) in California. Calif. Dept. of Fish and Game, Wildlife Branch, Nongame Wildlife Program Report 2007-04. 26pp.+ appendices.
- California Coastal Commission (CCC). 2008a. Upper Newport Bay Project: Community-Based Restoration and Education Program.  
<http://www.coastal.ca.gov/publiced/UNBweb/restore.html> (accessed 08/08/08).
- CCC. 2008b. <http://www.coastal.ca.gov/> (accessed 08/02/08).
- CCC. 2007. Status Report on SONGS Mitigation Program. San Francisco, CA. May 24, 2007.
- CCC. 2006. State of the Critical Coastal Areas Report. June 2, 2006.  
[http://www.coastal.ca.gov/nps/Web/cca\\_socoast1.htm](http://www.coastal.ca.gov/nps/Web/cca_socoast1.htm) (accessed 07/07/08).
- CCC. 2005. Marina del Rey Periodic LCP Review. San Francisco, California, May 25, 2005.
- CCC. 2005. *Summary of LCP Program Activity*. San Francisco, California.
- CCC. 2004. Seawater Desalination and the California Coastal Act. San Francisco, CA. March 2004.
- CCC. 2003. California Coastal Access Guide, Sixth ed. The University of California Press.
- CCC. 2002. Critical Coastal Areas Draft Strategic Plan: Protecting Coastal Waters.  
[http://www.coastal.ca.gov/nps/Web/misc\\_resources/cca-strategy.pdf](http://www.coastal.ca.gov/nps/Web/misc_resources/cca-strategy.pdf) (accessed 07/07/08).
- CCC. 1993. Seawater Desalination in California. San Francisco, CA. October 1993.
- California Coastkeeper Alliance. 2008. Regional Coastkeeper Organizations.  
(<http://www.cacoastkeeper.org/water-quality-maps.php> (accessed 07/19/08).
- California Cooperative Oceanic Fisheries Investigations (CalCOFI). 2002. Reports, volume 43, January 1 – December 31, 2001. Distributed May 2003, La Jolla, California.
- California Department of Boating and Waterways (CDBW). 2002. California Boating Facilities Needs Assessment. October 15, 2002. Sacramento, California.
- CDBW and State Coastal Conservancy (SCC). 2002. California Beach Restoration Study. Sacramento, California. January 2002.
- California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG). 2008a. Annual Fisheries Forum, April 2008, Fisheries Report, Department of Fish and Game, Marine Region, 23pp.
- CDFG. 2008b. Biogeographic Data Branch California Natural Diversity Database State and Federally Listed Endangered and Threatened Animals of California. May 2008.  
<http://www.dfg.ca.gov/biogeodata/cnddb/pdfs/TEAnimals.pdf>
- CDFG. 2008c. Threatened and Endangered Plants. California Department of Fish and Game, Nongame Wildlife Program. [http://www.dfg.ca.gov/wildlife/species/t\\_e\\_spp/plants.html](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/wildlife/species/t_e_spp/plants.html) (accessed 08/28/08).

- CDFG. 2008d. California Marine Life Protection Act Master Plan for Marine Protected Areas.
- CDFG. 2007a. California Steelhead Fishing Report-Restoration Card: A Report to the Legislature. T. A. Jackson. Sacramento, CA.
- CDFG. 2007b. Garibaldi (*Hypsypops rubicundus*). <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/mlpa/response/garibaldi.pdf> (accessed 09/12/08).
- CDFG. 2005a. Abalone Recovery and Management Plan. California Department of Fish and Game, Marine Region, 363pp.
- CDFG. 2005b. Market Squid Fishery Management Plan. California Department of Fish and Game, Marine Region, 124pp.
- CDFG 2004a. Annual Status of the Fisheries Report Through 2003. California Department of Fish and Game. C. Ryan and M. Patyten, eds. 182pp.  
<http://www.dfg.ca.gov/mrd/status/status2003.html>
- CDFG. 2004b. Descriptions and Preliminary Evaluations of Existing California Marine Protected Areas in the Central Coast.
- CDFG. 2002a. Final 2002 Environmental Document. Marine Protected Areas in the National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration's Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary. State Clearing House Number 2001121116. Sections 27.82,630 and 632 Title 14, California Code of Regulations
- CDFG. 2002b. Final White Seabass Fishery Management Plan. California Department of Fish and Game, Marine Region, Ch. 6, 26pp.
- CDFG. 2001a. California's Living Marine Resources: A Status Report (ANR Publication #SG01-11) California Department of Fish and Game, available at <http://anrcatalog.ucdavis.edu> or <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/status/status2001.asp>.
- CDFG. 2001b. The Master Plan: A Guide for the Development of Fishery Management Plans. California Department of Fish and Game, Marine Region, 121pp.
- CDFG. 2001c. A Guide to the Artificial Reefs in Southern California.  
<http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/artificialreefs/index.asp> (accessed on 08/03/08).
- CDFG. 2000. Mammals Species Account.  
[http://www.dfg.ca.gov/wildlife/species/t\\_e\\_spp/docs/2000/t\\_e09mammals.pdf](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/wildlife/species/t_e_spp/docs/2000/t_e09mammals.pdf) (accessed 08/29/08).
- California Department of Motor Vehicles (CADMV). 2008. Total Vessel Registrations by County. Sacramento, CA. January 3, 2008.
- California Department of Parks and Recreation. 2006. California State Park System Statistical Report 2005/2006 Fiscal Year. Sacramento, CA.
- California Department of Parks and Recreation, California Department of Fish and Game, and United States Fish and Wildlife Service. 2005. McGrath State Beach Area, Berry Petroleum Oil Spill, December 1993: Final Restoration Plan and Environmental Assessment. January 2005. [http://www.dfg.ca.gov/ospr/spill/nrda/mcgrath\\_restoration\\_plan\\_appendix\\_a-d.pdf](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/ospr/spill/nrda/mcgrath_restoration_plan_appendix_a-d.pdf).
- California Department of Parks and Recreation, San Diego Coast District. 2008. Los Peñasquitos Marsh. <http://www.torreypine.org/parks/penasquitos-lagoon.html> (accessed 08/08/08).
- California Department of Public Health (CDPH). 2008. Blue-Green Algae (Cyanobacteria) Blooms. Last updated July 1, 2008.  
<http://www.cdph.ca.gov/healthinfo/environhealth/water/Pages/Bluegreenalgae.aspx> (accessed 07/26/08).

- CDPH. 2007. Marine Biotoxin Monitoring Program: Annual Report: 2007. Submitted to California Department of Fish and Game by Department of Public Health, Division of Drinking Water and Environmental Management. Available at:  
[http://www.cdph.ca.gov/HealthInfo/envirohealth/water/Documents/Shellfish/AnnualReports/Annual\\_Report\\_PSP\\_2007.pdf](http://www.cdph.ca.gov/HealthInfo/envirohealth/water/Documents/Shellfish/AnnualReports/Annual_Report_PSP_2007.pdf).
- California Energy Commission. 2003. Liquefied Natural Gas in California: History, Risks, and Siting, Staff White Paper. July 2003.
- California Energy Commission. 2008. Summary of PIER-Funded Wave Energy Research, CEC-500-2007-083. March 2008.
- California Lodging Industry Association. 2008. California Tourism's Contributions to the California Economy: 1998-2002. <http://www.clia.org/tourism.cfm> (accessed 08/20/08).
- California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative. 2005. Marine Life Protection Act Master Plan Framework, Sacramento, CA.
- California Office of Spill Prevention and Response (OSPR), Department of Fish and Game. 2008. <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/ospr/index.html> (accessed 07/28/08).
- California Office of Spill Prevention and Response (OSPR), Department of Fish and Game. 2005. OSPR News Release: Oil Spills Affect Seabirds Off Ventura Coast. Released January 15, 2005. <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/ospr/news/2005nr/venturaseabirds011505.pdf>.
- California Regional Water Quality Control Board. 2002. Draft Strategy for Developing TMDLs and Attaining Water Quality Standards in the Los Angeles Region.  
[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/losangeles/water\\_issues/programs/tmdl/02\\_1210\\_strategy%20121002.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/losangeles/water_issues/programs/tmdl/02_1210_strategy%20121002.pdf).
- California Regional Water Quality Control Board, Los Angeles Region (LARWQCB). 1994. Water Quality Control Plan (Basin Plan).  
[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/losangeles/water\\_issues/programs/basin\\_plan/electronics\\_documents/bp1\\_introduction.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/losangeles/water_issues/programs/basin_plan/electronics_documents/bp1_introduction.pdf).
- California Regional Water Quality Control Board, Los Angeles Region (LARWQCB). 1994. Water Quality Control Plan (Basin Plan), Chapter 4: Strategic Planning and Implementation.  
[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/losangeles/water\\_issues/programs/basin\\_plan/electronics\\_documents/bp4\\_strategic\\_planning\\_and\\_implementation.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/losangeles/water_issues/programs/basin_plan/electronics_documents/bp4_strategic_planning_and_implementation.pdf).
- California Regional Water Quality Control Board, San Diego Region (SDRWQCB). 2007. Water Quality Control Plan (Basin Plan).  
[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/sandiego/water\\_issues/programs/basin\\_plan/docs/update102207/chapter1\\_042507.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/sandiego/water_issues/programs/basin_plan/docs/update102207/chapter1_042507.pdf).
- California Regional Water Quality Control Board, San Diego Region (SDRWQCB). 2005. Regionalization of the State Water Resources Control Board Strategic Plan. Revised July 2005.  
[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/sandiego/publications\\_forms/publications/docs/2005regional\\_rev.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/sandiego/publications_forms/publications/docs/2005regional_rev.pdf).
- California Regional Water Quality Control Board, Santa Ana Region (SARWQCB). 2008. Water Quality Control Plan (Basin Plan) for the Santa Ana River Basin.  
[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/santaana/water\\_issues/programs/basin\\_plan/docs/chapter1.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/santaana/water_issues/programs/basin_plan/docs/chapter1.pdf).
- California Regional Water Quality Control Board, Santa Ana Region (SARWQCB). 2006. Fact Sheet: Santa Ana Regional Water Quality Control Board, California Environmental

- Protection Agency.  
[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/santaana/resources/docs/reg8\\_factsheet.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/santaana/resources/docs/reg8_factsheet.pdf).
- California Regional Water Quality Control Board, Santa Ana Region (SARWQCB). 2006. Total Maximum Daily Loads for Organochlorine Compounds: San Diego Creek (Total DDT and Toxaphene) and Upper and Lower Newport Bay (Total DDT, Chlordane, Total PCBs). [http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/rwqcb8/water\\_issues/programs/tmdl/docs/oc/staffreport\\_final\\_12\\_01\\_06.pdf](http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/rwqcb8/water_issues/programs/tmdl/docs/oc/staffreport_final_12_01_06.pdf).
- California Resources Agency. 2005. California's Ocean Economy. Report to the Resources Agency, State of California; Prepared by The National Ocean Economics Program, July 2005. Sacramento, California.  
[http://resources.ca.gov/press\\_documents/CA\\_Ocean\\_Econ\\_Report.pdf](http://resources.ca.gov/press_documents/CA_Ocean_Econ_Report.pdf).
- California Resources Agency and California Environmental Protection Agency. 2004. Protecting Our Ocean, California's Action Strategy, Final Report to Governor Schwarzenegger.
- California Resources Agency, CERES, Wetland Information System. 2007. Los Penasquitos Lagoon Profile. [http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo\\_info/so\\_cal/los\\_penasquitos.html](http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo_info/so_cal/los_penasquitos.html) (accessed 08/08/08).
- California Resources Agency, CERES. 2006a. Oil, Gas, and Mineral Resources. [www.ceres.ca.gov/ocean/theme/mineral\\_background.html](http://www.ceres.ca.gov/ocean/theme/mineral_background.html) (accessed 09/18/08).
- California Resources Agency, CERES. 2006b. Vessel Traffic Safety. [http://www.ceres.ca.gov/ocean/theme/vessel\\_background.html](http://www.ceres.ca.gov/ocean/theme/vessel_background.html) (accessed 09/18/08).
- California Resources Agency, CERES, Wetland Information System. 2000. Devereux Slough Profile. [http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo\\_info/so\\_cal/devereux.html](http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo_info/so_cal/devereux.html) (accessed 09/18/08).
- California Resources Agency, CERES, Wetland Information System. 1998. Bolsa Chica Profile. [http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo\\_info/so\\_cal/bolsa\\_chica.html](http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo_info/so_cal/bolsa_chica.html) (accessed 09/18/08).
- California Resources Agency, CERES, Wetland Information System. 1997a. Goleta Slough Profile. [http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo\\_info/so\\_cal/goleta\\_slough.html](http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo_info/so_cal/goleta_slough.html) (accessed 09/18/08).
- California Resources Agency, CERES, Wetland Information System. 1997b. Mugu Lagoon Profile. [http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo\\_info/so\\_cal/mugu\\_lagoon.html](http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo_info/so_cal/mugu_lagoon.html) (accessed 09/18/08).
- California Resources Agency, CERES, Wetland Information System. 1997c. Aqua Hedionda Lagoon Profile. [http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo\\_info/so\\_cal/aqua\\_hedionda.html](http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo_info/so_cal/aqua_hedionda.html) (accessed on 08/08/08).
- California State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB). 2003. Water Quality Order No. 2003-0017-DWQ: Statewide General Waste Discharge Requirements for Dredged or Fill Discharges that have Received State Water Quality Certification (General WDRs). Certified on November 19, 2003.
- California Travel and Tourism Commission. California Fast Facts 2006: Statewide and Regional Tourism Facts and Figures. Sacramento. Available from <http://visitcalifornia.com/tourism/pdfs/fastfacts2006.pdf> (accessed 08/4/08).
- Carr, M.H. 1991. Habitat Selection and Recruitment of an Assemblage of Temperate Zone Reef Fishes. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 146: 113-137.
- Carretta, J.V., K.A. Forney, M.M. Muto, J. Barlow, J. Baker, B. Hanson, and M. Lowry. 2004. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2004. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS SWFSC-375. 316pp.

- Carson, R., M. Damon, L. Johnson, and J. Miller. 2002. Transitioning to Non-Metal Antifouling Paints on Marine Recreational Boats in San Diego Bay. Submitted by University of California to California Department of Boating and Waterways, November 15, 2002.
- Catalina Island Conservancy. 2008. <http://www.catalinaconservancy.org> (accessed 08/17/08).
- Catalina Divers Supply, LLC. 2008. [http://catalinadiverssupply.com/Contact\\_Details\\_\\_\\_Shop\\_History/contact\\_details\\_\\_\\_shop\\_history.htm](http://catalinadiverssupply.com/Contact_Details___Shop_History/contact_details___shop_history.htm) (accessed 09/12/08).
- Center for Watershed Protection. 2003. Impacts of Impervious Cover on Aquatic Systems, Ellicott City, MD.
- Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS). 2007. Final Environmental Impact Statement for the Establishment of Marine Reserves and Marine Conservation Areas.
- CIC Research, Inc. 2008. Overseas & Mexican Visitors to California 2007. San Diego, CA.
- City of Carlsbad. 2008. Aqua Hedionda Lagoon. <http://www.carlsbadca.gov/parks/lagoonoverview.html> (accessed on 08/08/08).
- City of Long Beach, Heath and Human Services. 2008. Water Quality Program. [http://www.longbeach.gov/health/organization/eh/water/water\\_samples.asp](http://www.longbeach.gov/health/organization/eh/water/water_samples.asp) (accessed 07/28/08).
- City of Los Angeles. 2008a. About the Los Angeles Sewage System. <http://www.lacity.org/SAN/WPD/Siteorg/general/lasewers.htm> (accessed 08/1/08).
- City of Los Angeles. 2008b. About the Los Angeles Storm Drain System. <http://www.lacity.org/SAN/wpd/Siteorg/general/lastrmdrn.htm> (accessed 08/1/08).
- City of San Diego, Water Department. 2006. Final San Dieguito Watershed Management Plan. La Mesa, California. September 2006.
- Clendenning, K.A. 1960. Organic Productivity of Giant Kelp Areas. Kelp Investigations Program (KIP) quarterly Report, 1 July-30 Sep. 1959. University of California, Institute of Marine Resources (IMR), San Diego, California. 34 pp.
- CFIS. 2008. Commercial Fishery Information System database. CPFV logbook data accessed 08/04/08.
- Coastal Reserves Working Group, 2005, Integrated Conservation Planning in the Coastal Environments with Special Reference to California's Central Coast. National Center for Ecological Analysis and Synthesis, Santa Barbara, CA.
- Collins, C. 2006. Elegant tern. <http://www.fws.gov/bolsachica/ElegantTernprofile.htm> (accessed 08/29/08).
- County of Los Angeles, Department of Pulic Health. 2008. Ocean Water Monitoring Program. <http://www.lapublichealth.org/eh/progs/envirp/rechlth/ehrecoc.htm> (accessed 07/28/08).
- County of Orange, Health Care Agency, Environmental Health Division. 2008. Ocean Water Protection Program. <http://www.ocbeachinfo.com/> (accessed 07/28/08).
- County of San Diego, Department of Environmental Health. 2008. Beach and Bay Program. [http://www.sdcounty.ca.gov/deh/water/beach\\_bay.html](http://www.sdcounty.ca.gov/deh/water/beach_bay.html) (accessed 07/28/08).
- County of Santa Barbara, Environmental Health Services. 2008. Ocean Monitoring Program. <http://sbcphd.org/ehs/ocean.htm> (accessed 07/28/08).
- County of Santa Barbara, Planning and Development, Energy Division. 2002. Natural Oil Seeps and Oil Spills. Published March 8, 2002. <http://www.countyofsb.org/energy/information/seepspaper.asp> (accessed 07/27/08).



- County Sanitation Districts of Los Angeles (CSDLA). 2008. Joint Water Pollution Control Plant (JWPCP). [http://www.lacsd.org/about/wastewater\\_facilities/jwpcp/default.asp](http://www.lacsd.org/about/wastewater_facilities/jwpcp/default.asp) (accessed 08/02/08).
- Coyne, M. 2000. Identifying Potential Beach Nourishment Sites in California: A Decision Support Tool. California Coastal Commission and California Department of Boating and Waterways.
- Cross, J.N. and L.G. Allen. 1993. *In Ecology of the Southern California Bight: A Synthesis and Interpretation*. M.D. Dailey, D.J. Reish, and J.W. Anderson, eds. University of California Press, Berkeley, pp. 495-540.
- Dailey, M.D., D.J. Reish, and J.W. Anderson (eds.). 1993. *Ecology of the Southern California Bight: A Synthesis and Interpretation*. University of California Press, Berkeley, California.
- Dayton, P.K., V. Currie, T. Gerrodette, B.D. Keller, R. Rosenthal, and D. Ven Tresca. 1984. Patch Dynamics and Stability of Some California Kelp Communities. *Ecological Monographs* 54(3):253-289.
- Dean Runyan Associates, Inc. 2008. California Travel Impacts by County, 1992-2006, 2007 Preliminary State Estimates. Submitted to California Travel & Tourism Commission, March 2008.
- Dean, R.G., R.A. Davis, and K.M. Erickson. 2008. Beach Nourishment: A Guide for Local Government Officials: Beach Nourishment with Emphasis on Geological Characteristics Affecting Project Performance. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), Coastal Services Center. June 11, 2008.
- Divemaster. 2008. <http://www.divemaster.com/scuba-diving-sites-in-north-america/united-states/california/casino-point-under-water-marine-park-catalina-island.html> (accessed 09/12/08).
- D.K Shifflet & Associates, Ltd. 2007. California Domestic Travel Report 2006, from the Destination Performance/Monitor. Sacramento, CA.
- Dugan, J.E. and D.M. Hubbard. 2006. Ecological Responses to Coastal Armoring on Exposed Sandy Beaches. *Shore and Beach*, Volume 74, No. 1, Winter 2006, pp. 10-16.
- Dugan, J.E., D.M. Hubbard, M.D. McCrary, and M.O. Pierson. 2003. The response of macrofauna communities and shorebirds to macrophyte wrack subsidies on exposed sandy beaches of southern California. *Estuarine, Coastal, and Shelf Science*, 58S, pp. 25-40.
- Dugan, J.E., D.M. Hubbard, I.F. Rodil, D.L. Revell and S. Schroeter. 2008. Ecological effects of coastal armoring on sandy beaches. *Marine Ecology*, Volume 29, Supplement 1: 160-170.
- Dugan, J.E., D.M. Hubbard, D.L. Martin, J.M. Engle, D.M. Richards, G.E. Davis, K.D. Lafferty, R.F. Ambrose 2000. Macrofauna communities of exposed sandy beaches on the Southern California mainland and Channel Islands. pp 339-346 in, D.R. Brown, K.L. Mitchell and H.W. Chang eds., *Proceedings of the Fifth California Islands Symposium*. Minerals Management Service Publication # 99-0038.
- Ebeling, A.W., D.R. Laur, and R.J. Rowley. 1985. Severe storm disturbances and reversal of community structure in a southern California kelp forest. *Mar. Bio.* 84(3): 287-294.
- Emery, K.O. 1960. *The Sea Off Southern California, A Modern Habitat of Petroleum*. Wiley, New York. 336pp.
- Engle, J.M., and J.A. Coyer. 1981. California Marine Waters, Areas of Special Biological Significance Survey Report: Santa Catalina Island – Subarea III. State Water Resources Control Board, Surveillance and Monitoring Section, Sacramento, CA. Report No. 81-4.

- Engle, J.M. 1979. Ecology and growth of juvenile California spiny lobster, *Panulirus interruptus* (Randall). Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Southern California.
- Falkner, M., L. Takata, and S. Gilmore. 2006. Report on Performance Standards for Ballast Water Discharges in California Waters. California State Lands Commission, Marine Facilities Division. Prepared for California State Legislature, January 2006.
- Fancher, J., L. Hays, and P. Knapp. 2002. Western Snowy Plover Nesting at Blosa Chica, Orange County, California 2002. U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. 23pp.
- Forney, K.A., J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California Cetaceans, 1991-1992. Marine Mammal Science 14 (3): 460-489.
- Foster, M.S., A.P. DeVogelaere, C. Harrold, J.S. Pearse, and A.B. Thrum. 1988. Causes of spatial and temporal patterns in rocky intertidal communities of central and northern California. Memoirs of the California Academy of Sciences 9:1-45.
- Foster, M.S. and D.R. Schiel. 1985. The ecology of giant kelp forests in California: A community profile. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 85 (7.2). 152pp.
- Franko's Maps. 2008. Fabulous Maps of Favorite Places.  
[http://www.frankosmaps.com/San\\_Diego\\_Coast.htm](http://www.frankosmaps.com/San_Diego_Coast.htm) (accessed 08/18/08).
- Garrison, T. 2004. Oceanography: An Invitation to Marine Science. Published by Thomas Brooks/Cole, 522pp.
- Goldfarb, G. 2005. The Planning and Operations Costs of MPAs and MPA Networks: A Limited Body of Knowledge. California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative, Sacramento, CA.
- Greene, H.G., R. Kvitek, J.J. Bizzarro, C. Bretz, and P. Iampietro. 2004. Fisheries Habitat Characterization of the California Continental Margin. California Sea Grant.
- Gress, P., R.W. Risebrough, D.W. Anderson, L.F. Kiff, and J.R. Jehl Jr. 1973. Reproductive failures of Double-crested Cormorants in southern California and Baja California. Wilson Bull. 85:183-196.
- Griggs, G. California Needs a Coastal Hazard Policy. Coast and Ocean Magazine. Volume 13, No. 3. 1998.
- Grossman, G.D., G.P. Jones, and W.J. Searman Jr. 1997. Do Artificial Reefs Increase Regional Fish Production? A Review of Existing Data. Fisheries, Volume 22, Number 4, 17-23.
- Hanks, H. 2006. Personal communication between Rick Hanks, National Monument Manager, California Coastal National Monument, Bureau of Land Management, U.S. Department of Interior and Amy Boone, Policy Analyst, California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative.
- Harrold, C., J. Watanabe, and S. Lisin. 1988. Spatial variation in the structure of kelp forest communities along a wave exposure gradient. Marine Ecology 9(2): 131-156.
- Heal the Bay. 2008. 18th Annual Beach Report Card. Released May 21, 2008.
- Hemphill, J. 2008. Manager of Engineering, the Mineral Resources Management, California State Lands Commission, July 25, 2008.
- Hickey, B.M. 2000. Basin to Basin Water Exchange in the Southern Bight. In: Proceedings of the 5th Channel Islands Symposium. Sponsored by the U.S. Department of Interior Minerals Management Service at the Santa Barbara Museum of Natural History. MMS Pacific OCS Region Document No. 99-0038.
- Hickey, B.M. 1993. Physical Oceanography. pp. 19-70. In: M.D. Dailey, D.J. Reish, and J.W. Anderson (Eds.), Ecology of the Southern California Bight: A Synthesis and Interpretation. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.
- Hoffman, Consultant to the California Marine Life Protection Act Initiative.

- Hoffman, R.F. 1986. Fishery utilization of eelgrass (*Zostera marina*) beds and non-vegetated shallow water areas in San Diego Bay. National Marine Fishery Service, Southwest Region. Administrative Report SWR-86-4.
- Hornsby, A. 2005. Personal communication between Al Hornsby, PADI, and Tegan Churcher Jones, J.H. 1971. General circulation and water characteristics in the Southern California Bight - Southern California Coastal Water Resources Project
- Johnson, L.T. 1998. Environmental Impacts on Pleasure Craft Oil Spills. University of California Cooperative Extension and Sea Grant Extension Program, San Diego County, November 1998.
- Kelco Division of Merck & Co., Inc. 1992. 1991 Santa Barbara kelp restoration project. California Department of Fish & Game contract No. FG-0322. Final report 1992. MBC Applied Environmental Sciences, Costa Mesa, California. 33pp.
- Kane, M. 2005. California Small Hydropower and Ocean Wave Energy Resources. Presented to the California Energy Commission, May 9, 2005.
- Kildow, J., and C.S. Colgan. 2005. California's Ocean Economy: Report to the Resources Agency, State of California. National Ocean Economics Program, Monterey, California.
- King, 1999. The Fiscal Impact of Beaches in California. Public Research Institute, San Francisco State University.
- Kirschbaum, K. and P. Watkins. 2000. "*Pandion haliaetus*" (On-line), Animal Diversity Web. [http://animaldiversity.ummz.umich.edu/site/accounts/information/Pandion\\_haliaetus.html](http://animaldiversity.ummz.umich.edu/site/accounts/information/Pandion_haliaetus.html) (accessed 08/29/08).
- Kohler, S. 2007. California Non-Fuel Minerals 2007. California Geological Survey, Sacramento, CA.
- Kruer, C.R. and L.O. Causey. 2005. The Use of Large Artificial Reefs to Enhance Fish Populations at Different Depths in the Florida Keys. MARFIN Program, NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service, May 2005.
- Lane, E.D. and C.W. Hill. 1975. The marine resources of Anaheim Bay. California Department of Fish and Game, Fish Bulletin 165.
- Langdon-Pollock, J. 2004. West Coast Marine Fishing Community Description. Pacific State Marine Fisheries Commission, Economic Fisheries Information Network, Portland Oregon.
- Larson, S. 2002. Energy Supply Panel, The Big Picture-by the Numbers-And Issues for the Coast. California and the World Ocean '02 Conference. California Energy Commission Paper 410, October 2002.
- Larinto, T. 2008. Senior Marine Biologist Specialist Groundfish Project, Department of Fish and Game. Personnel communication.
- Leeworthy, V. R., J.M. Bowker, J.H. Hospital, E.A. Stone. 2005. Projected participation in marine recreation: 2005 & 2010. Final report; U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Silver Spring, MD: U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Ocean Service. 152pp. (available at: <http://www.treesearch.fs.fed.us/pubs/21306>).
- Leeworthy, V.R. 2001. National Survey on Recreation and the Environment (NSRE): Preliminary Estimates from Versions 1-6, Coastal Recreation Participation. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Ocean Service, Special Projects Office. Silver Spring, Maryland (available at: [http://www.srs.fs.usda.gov/trends/Nsre/NSRE\\_V1-6\\_May.pdf](http://www.srs.fs.usda.gov/trends/Nsre/NSRE_V1-6_May.pdf)).

- Leeworthy, V.R. and P.C. Wiley. 2001. Current Participation Patterns in Marine Recreation. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Ocean Service, Special Projects Office. Silver Spring, Maryland (available at: [http://marineeconomics.noaa.gov/NSRE/NSRE\\_2.pdf](http://marineeconomics.noaa.gov/NSRE/NSRE_2.pdf)),
- Leatherwood, S., B. Stewart and P. Folkens. 1987. Cetaceans of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary. Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary, NOAA and the National Marine Fisheries Service.
- Leatherwood, S., R. Reeves, W. Perrin, and W. Evans. 1982. Whales, Dolphins and Porpoises of the Eastern North Pacific and Adjacent Arctic Waters. NOAA Technical Report, National Marine Fisheries Service Circular 444.
- Love, M. M. Nishimoto, D. Schroeder, and J. Caselle. 1999. The Ecological Role of Natural
- Lowe, C.G., D.T. Topping, D.P. Cartamil, and Y.P. Papastamatiou. 2003. Movement Patterns, Home Range, and Habitat Utilization of Adult Kelp Bass *Paralabrax clathratus* in a temperate no-take marine reserve. Marine Ecology Progress Series. Vol 256.
- Lynn, R.J. and J.J. Simpson. 1987. The California current system: The seasonal variability of its physical characteristics. Journal of Geophysical Research 92:12947-12966.
- Maloney, E., R. Fairey, A. Lyman, K. Reynolds, and M. Sigala. 2006. Introduced Aquatic Species in California Open Coastal Waters. Final Report. California Department of Fish and Game. Office of Spill Prevention and Response. Sacramento, CA.,
- MarineBio 2008. *Strongylocentrotus franciscanus*, Red Sea Urchin - MarineBio.org. <http://marinebio.org/species.asp?id=45> (accessed 08/29/08).
- Marine Mammal Center. 2008. <http://www.marinemammalcenter.org/learning/education/pinnipeds/noelephseal.asp> (accessed 08/28/08).
- Marschalek, D.A., February 2008, California Least Tern Breeding Survey 2007 Season, Final Report to State of California, Department of Fish and Game, 61pp.
- Martin, K., T. Speer-Blank, R. Pommerening, J. Flannery, and K. Carpenter. 2006. Does beach grooming harm grunion eggs? Shore & Beach 74: 17-22.
- McDonald, D. and P. Dutton. 1990. Fibropapillomas on Sea Turtles in San Diego Bay, California. Marine Turtle Newsletter 51:9-10, available at: <http://www.seaturtle.org/mtn/archives/mtn51/mtn51p9.shtml>.
- McKnight v. U.S., C.C.A.Cal., 78 F.2d 931, 933. McKnight v. United States, 78 F.2d 931; 1935 U.S. App. LEXIS 3902 (9<sup>th</sup> Cir. Cal. 1935).
- McPeak, R.H., and D.C. Barilotti. 1993. Techniques for managing and restoring *Macrocystis pyrifera* kelp forests in California, USA. Universidad Católica del Norte, Coquimbo, Chile. Occasional Series 2:271-284.
- Minerals Management Service (MMS), Offshore Energy & Minerals Management. 2008. Spills - Statistics and Summaries 1996-2008. <http://www.mms.gov/incidents/spills1996-2008.htm>. (accessed 07/27/08). Updated June 15, 2008.
- Minerals Management Service. 1995. Accidents Associated with Oil and Gas Operations: Outer Continental Shelf, 1991-1994. Submitted to United States Department of the Interior, Minerals Management Service, September 1995.
- Minerals Management Service. 1998. Accidents Associated with Oil and Gas Operations: Outer Continental Shelf, 1995-1996. OCS Report: MMS 98-0030. Submitted to United States Department of the Interior, Minerals Management Service.

- Monterey Bay National Marine Sanctuary (MBNMS). 2006. Resource Management Issues: Cruise Ships. <http://montereybay.noaa.gov/resourcepro/resmanissues/printable.html> (accessed 08/02/08).
- MBNMS. 2003. Ecosystem Observations for the Monterey Bay National Marine Sanctuary. Monterey, CA.
- Morris, R., D. Abbott, E. Haderlie. 1980. Intertidal Invertebrates of California. Stanford University Press, 680pp.
- National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science (NCCOS). 2008a. Harmful Algal Bloom Research in California. <http://www.cop.noaa.gov/stressors/extremeevents/hab/features/hab-california.pdf> (accessed 08/27/08).
- NCCOS. 2008b. Harmful Algal Bloom in California: *Pseudo-nitzschia* Spread Along Coast Causing Massive Mortalities of Marine Life in Spring 2007. [http://www.cop.noaa.gov/stressors/extremeevents/hab/features/ca\\_pn\\_050807.html](http://www.cop.noaa.gov/stressors/extremeevents/hab/features/ca_pn_050807.html) (accessed 08/27/08).
- National Dredging Team. 1998. Local Planning Group and Development of Dredged Materials Management Plans. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Washington, D.C. June 1998.
- National Ocean Economics Program. 2008. Ocean Economy Data (from the Bureau of Labor Statistics). <http://noep.mbari.org/Market/ocean/oceanEcon.asp> (accessed 07/12/08).
- National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). 2008a. National Coral Reef Data Discovery Glossary. [http://coris.noaa.gov/glossary/glossary\\_a\\_k.html](http://coris.noaa.gov/glossary/glossary_a_k.html) (accessed 08/03/08).
- NOAA. 2008b. <http://www.nwr.noaa.gov/Groundfish-Halibut/Groundfish-Fishery-Management/Groundfish-Closed-Areas/Index.cfm> (accessed 09/18/08).
- NOAA. 2006. U.S. Department of Commerce. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. National Marine Sanctuary Program. *Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary Draft Management Plan/Draft Environmental Impact Statement*. Silver Spring, MD.
- NOAA, National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science (NCCOS). 2005. A Biogeographic Assessment of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary: A Review of Boundary Expansion Concepts for NOAA's National Marine Sanctuary Program (DVD). Silver Spring, MD. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NCCOS 21.
- NOAA. 2004. A Biogeographic Assessment off North/Central California. [http://ccma.nos.noaa.gov/products/biogeography/canms\\_cd/html/products.htm](http://ccma.nos.noaa.gov/products/biogeography/canms_cd/html/products.htm).
- NOAA. 2003. Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary: Common Sanctuary Cetaceans. <http://channelislands.noaa.gov/animals/cmncetns.html> (accessed on 08/29/08).
- NOAA. 2000. National Survey of Recreation and the Environment, Preliminary Estimates from Versions 1-6: Coastal Recreation Participation. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Springs, Maryland.
- NOAA, National Ocean Service (NOS). 2008. Harmful Algal Blooms. <http://oceanservice.noaa.gov/topics/coasts/hab/welcome.html> (accessed 08/29/08).
- NPS. 2007. National Park Service. <http://www.nps.gov/chis/naturescience/bald-eagles.htm> (accessed on 08/28/08).
- National Park Service. 2006a. Channel Islands National Park: Park Statistics. <http://www.nps.gov/chis/parkmgmt/statistics.htm> (accessed 08/15/08).
- National Park Service. 2006b. Channel Islands National Park: Tidepooling. <http://www.nps.gov/chis/planyourvisit/tidepooling.htm> (accessed 08/18/08).

- National Research Council (NRC) 1990. Monitoring California's Coastal Waters. Panel on the Southern California Bight of the Committee on a Systems Assessment of Marine Environmental Monitoring. Marine Board. Commission on Engineering and Technical Systems. National Academy Press. Washington D.C.
- Natural Resource Trustees. 2006. Executive Summary of the Montrose Settlements Restoration Program Restoration Plan, Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement, and Programmatic Environmental Impact Report. Developed for the Montrose Settlements Restoration Program, Long Beach, CA, July 2006. Available at [http://www.darrp.noaa.gov/southwest/montrose/pdf/msrp\\_rp\\_execsumm.pdf](http://www.darrp.noaa.gov/southwest/montrose/pdf/msrp_rp_execsumm.pdf).
- Neubacher, D. 2006. Personal communication between Don Neubacher, Superintendent, Point Reyes National Seashore and Amy Boone, Marine Life Protection Act Initiative.
- Neushul, M. 1971. The species of *Macrocystis*. In: W.J. North (ed.), *The Biology of Giant Kelp Beds (Macrocystis)*. Nova Hedwigia Z. Kryptogamenkd., 32:1-98.
- Newell, R.C., L.J. Seiderer, and D.R. Hitchcock. 1998. The impact of dredging works in coastal waters: a review of the sensitivity to disturbance and subsequent recovery of biological resources on the sea bed. *Oceanography and Marine Biology*, Volume 36, pp. 127-178.
- Newport Bay Naturalists and Friends (NBNF). 2008. Upper Newport Bay (Introduction, History, Habitats). <http://www.newportbay.org/index.html> (accessed 08/08/08).
- Nezlin, N.P., P.M. DiGiacomo, E.D. Stein, D. Ackerman. 2005. Stormwater runoff plumes observed by SeaWiFS radiometer in the Southern California Bight. *Remote Sensing of Environment* 98(4).
- Norris, R.M. and R.W. Webb. 1990. *Geology of California*. New York, NY: John Wiley and Sons.
- North, W.J. 1971a. Introduction and background. In: W.J. North (ed.), *The Biology of Giant Kelp Beds (Macrocystis)*. Nova Hedwigia Z. Kryptogamenkd., 32: 1-98.
- North, W.J. 1971b. Growth of individual fronds of the mature giant kelp *Macrocystis*. In *The biology of giant kelp beds (Macrocystis) in California*. W.J. North (ed.). Beihefte zur Nova Hedwigia. 32. J. Cramer. Lehre. p. 123-168.
- North, W.J. 1968. Studies of kelp deterioration at south Point Loma. Kelp Habitat Improvement Project; Ann. Rept. 1967-1968. Calif. Insti. Tech., Pasadena, pp. 75-84.
- North, W.J. 1967. Kelp Habitat Improvement Project: Annual Report 1966-1967. W.M. Keck Laboratory of Environmental Health Engineering. California Institute of Technology, Pasadena. 105pp.
- Oey, L.Y. 1999. A forcing mechanism for the poleward flow off the southern California coast. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 104:13529-13539.
- O'Leary, J. "Map 12. Vegetation and Land Cover. Institute for Regional Studies of the Californias. San Diego State University. 2000. <http://www-rohan.sdsu.edu/~irsc/atlas/text/vegeng.html> (accessed 09/04/08).
- Orange County Parks. 2008. <http://www.ocparks.com/coastalparks/> (accessed 08/19/08).
- Otero, M.P. and D.A. Siegel. 2004. Spatial and temporal characteristics of sediment plumes and phytoplankton blooms in the Santa Barbara Channel. *Deep-Sea Research II* 51: 1129-1149.
- PFMC (Pacific Fisheries Management Council). 2008. <http://www.pcouncil.org/acronyms.html#O> (accessed 08/27/08).
- Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2007. CRFS Sampler Manual; California Recreational Fisheries Survey, a cooperative program of: California Department of Fish

- and Game, Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, and National Marine Fisheries Service. Portland, Oregon.
- Page, G.W., L.E. Stenzel, and J.E. Kjelson. 1999. Overview of Shorebird Abundance and Distribution in Wetlands of the Pacific Coast of the Contiguous United States. *The Condor* 101:461-471.
- Parnell, P.E., P.K. Dayton, and F. Margiotta. 2007. Spatial and Temporal Patterns of Lobster Trap Fishing: A Survey of Fishing Effort and Habitat Structure. *Bulletin Southern California Academy of Science*. 106(1).
- Parnell, P.E., P.K. Dayton, C.E. Lennert-Cody, L.L. Rasmussen, and J.J. Leichter. 2006. Marine Reserve Design: Optimal Size, Habitats, Species Affinities, Diversity, and Ocean Microclimate. *Ecological Applications*. 16(3).
- Parnell, P.E., C.E. Lennert-Cody, L. Geelen, L.D. Stanley, P.K. Dayton. 2005. Effectiveness of a small marine reserve in southern California. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*. Vol 296.
- Pearse, J.S. and A.H. Hines. 1979. Expansion of a Central California kelp forest following mass mortality of sea urchins. *Marine Biology* 51: 83-91.
- Pendleton, L. and C. LaFranchi. 2008. Preliminary Findings: The California Coastal Use Internet Survey.
- Perry, B. 2008. Coastal Systems and Impacts. An online text. California State University, Long Beach, Department of Geological Sciences, Long Beach, CA.  
<http://www.cnsu.csulb.edu/departments/geology/people/bperry/geology303/geol303text.htm> (accessed 07/27/08)
- Peterson, C.H. and M.J. Bishop. 2005. Assessing the Environmental Impacts of Beach Nourishment. *Bioscience*, Volume 55, Number 10, October 2005, 887-895.
- Pitman, R.L. and S.M. Speich. 1976. Black Storm\_Petrel breeds in the United States. *West. Birds* 7:71.
- Pondella, D.J., B.E. Gintert, J.R. Cobb, L.G. Allen. 2005. Biogeography of the nearshore rocky-reef fishes at the southern and Baja California islands. *Journal of Biogeography*, 23:2.
- Poseidon Resources. 2008. News Release: California State Lands Commission Approves Carlsbad Desalination Project. August 22, 2008. <http://www.carlsbad-desal.com/news.aspx?id=210>.
- Port of Los Angeles. 2008. The Restoration of Batiquitos Lagoon.  
<http://www.batiquitos.org/index.html> (accessed 08/08/08).
- Project Clean Water. 2008. Watersheds: San Diego Hydrologic Region  
[http://www.projectcleanwater.org/html/watershed\\_sdhr.html](http://www.projectcleanwater.org/html/watershed_sdhr.html) (accessed 06/23/08).
- Ramer, B.A., G.W. Page, M.M. Yoklavich. 1991. Seasonal abundance, habitat use, and diet of shorebirds in Elkhorn Slough, California. *West. Birds* 22: 157-174.
- Reed, D.C., S.C. Schroeter, D. Huang, T.W. Anderson, and R.F. Ambrose. 2006. Quantitative Assessment of Different Artificial Reef Designs in Mitigating Losses to Kelp Forest Fishes. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, Volume 78, Number 1, 133-150.
- Remsen, J.V. 1978. Bird Species of Special Concern in California. California Department of Fish and Game. [http://www.dfg.ca.gov/wildlife/species/publications/bird\\_ssc.html](http://www.dfg.ca.gov/wildlife/species/publications/bird_ssc.html) (accessed 09/02/08).
- Ricketts, E., J. Calvin, J. Hedgepeth, and W. Phillips. 1985. *Between Pacific Tides*. Stanford University Press. Stanford, California. 609pp.
- Rosenthal, R.J., W.D. Clarke, and P.K. Dayton. 1974. Ecology and natural history of a stand of giant kelp, *Macrocystis pyrifera*, off Del Mar, California. *Fisheries Bulletin* 72(3):670-684.

- Rust, E. and M. Potepan. 1997. The economic impact of boating in California. Prepared for the California Department of Boating and Waterways (C.F. Raysbrook, Director), by the Public Research Institute, San Francisco State University and Planning and Applied Economics, Berkeley, California.
- Salmon, M., R. Reiners, C. Lavin, and J. Wyneken. 1995. Behavior of Loggerhead Sea Turtles on an Urban Beach. I. Correlates of Nest Placement. *Journal of Herpetology*, Volume 29, Number 4, December 1995, pp. 560-567.
- San Diego Natural History Museum. 2008. Tidepools in San Diego County.  
<http://www.sdnhm.org/fieldguide/places/tidepooling.html> (accessed 08/19/08).
- San Dieguito River Park Joint Powers Authority (JPA). 2008. San Dieguito River Park.  
<http://www.sdrp.org/> (accessed 08/08/08).
- San Elijo Lagoon Conservancy (SELC). 2008. San Elijo Lagoon Ecological Reserve.  
<http://www.sanelijo.org/index.htm> (accessed 08/08/08).
- SELC. 2006. Annual Report 2006. San Elijo Lagoon Conservancy, Cardiff-by-the-Sea, CA.
- Santa Monica Bay Restoration Commission (SMBRC). 2004. State of the Bay 2004: Progress and Challenges. Los Angeles, CA.
- Sadrozinski, A. 2008. Personnel communication to Michelle Horeczko.
- Schlacher, T.A., J. Dugan, D.S. Shoeman, M. Lastra, A. Jones, F. Scapini, A. McLachlan, and O. Defeo. 2007. Sandy beaches at the brink. *Diversity and Distributions*, 13, 556-560.
- Schiff, K., K. Maruya, and K. Christensen. 2006. Southern California Bight 2003 Regional Monitoring Program: II. Sediment Chemistry. Southern California Coastal Water Research Project. Westminster, CA.
- Schiff, K.C., M.J. Allen, E.Y. Zeng, and S.M. Bay. 2000. Southern California. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, Volume 41, Numbers 1-6, 76-93.
- Schroeder, D. and M. Love. 2002. Recreational Fishing and Marine Fish Populations in California. *CalCOFI Report*, Vol. 43 182-190pp.
- Schroeter, S.C., D.C. Reed, D.J. Kushner, J.A. Estes, and D.S. Ono. 2001. The use of marine reserves in evaluating the dive fishery for the warty sea cucumber (*Parastichopus parvimensis*) in California, U.S.A. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*. 58 1773-1781.
- Seapy, R.R and M.M. Littler. 1980. "Biogeography of Rocky Intertidal Macroinvertebrates of the Southern California Islands." In *The California Islands: Proceedings of a Multidisciplinary Symposium*, Denis M. Power (ed.), 307- 323. Santa Barbara: Santa Barbara Museum of Natural History.
- Shepard, F.P. and K.O. Emery. 1941. Submarine topography off the California coast, canyons and tectonic interpretations: Geological Society of America Special Paper.
- Shoffler, S., ed. 2006. Review of Some California Fisheries for 2005. *Calcofi Reports*, 47, pp. 9-29.
- Southern California Bight Regional Investigations Life, Land, and Ocean (CABRILLO). 2008. United States Geological Survey, Coastal and Marine Geology Program, CABRILLO.  
<http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/cabrillo/playa/index.html> (accessed 07/29/08).
- Southern California Edison (SCE). 2008. San Dieguito Lagoon Restoration.  
<http://www.sce.com/PowerandEnvironment/PowerGeneration/MarineMitigation/SanDieguitoLagoonRestoration.htm> (accessed 08/08/08).



- Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP). 2008. Southern California Bight Regional Monitoring Program. <http://www.sccwrp.org/sitemap.html#Regional> (accessed 07/18/08).
- Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP). 2008. Stormwater Monitoring Coalition. (<http://www.sccwrp.org/tools/stormwater.html> (accessed 07/19/08).
- State of California. 2008. Public Resources Code, Division 20, California Coastal Act. <http://www.coastal.ca.gov/coastact.pdf> (accessed 08/04/08).
- State of California, Department of Finance. 2008. E-1 Population Estimates for Cities, Counties and the State with Annual Percent Change — January 1, 2007 and 2008. Sacramento, California, May 2008.
- State of California, Department of Finance. 2007. Population Projections for California and Its Counties 2000-2050, by Age, Gender and Race/Ethnicity. Sacramento, California, July 2007.
- State of California, Employment Development Department. 2008. Employment by Industry Data. Sacramento, California, June 2008.
- State of California, Environmental Protection Agency, Air Resources Board (ARB). 2004. Statewide Commercial Harbor Craft Survey: Final Report. Stationary Source Division, Emissions Assessment Branch, Sacramento, CA. March 2004.
- State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB). 2008a. Clean Water Team. [http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/swamp/cwt\\_volunteer.shtml](http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/swamp/cwt_volunteer.shtml) (accessed 07/29/08).
- SWRCB. 2008b. Nonpoint Source Encyclopedia. [http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/nps/encyclopedia.shtml](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/nps/encyclopedia.shtml) (accessed 07/30/08).
- SWRCB. 2008c. Surface Water Ambient Monitoring Program (SWAMP). [http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/swamp/](http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/swamp/) (accessed July 29, 2008).
- SWRCB. 2008d. State Mussel Watch (SMW). [http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/swamp/mussel\\_watch.shtml](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/swamp/mussel_watch.shtml) (accessed 07/29/08).
- SWRCB. 2008e. Toxic Substance Monitoring Program (TSMP). [http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/swamp/programs.shtml](http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/swamp/programs.shtml) (accessed July 29, 2008).
- SWRCB. 2004. Fact Sheet on the Nonpoint Source Implementation and Enforcement Policy. State Water Resources Control Board, Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, Sacramento, CA. May 2004.
- SWRCB. 2000. Nonpoint Source Program Strategy and Implementation Plan, 1998-2013 (PROSIP). State Water Resources Control Board, Division of Water Quality, Sacramento, CA. January 2000.
- SWRCB, Bay Protection and Toxic Cleanup Program (BPTCP). 2008. Sediment Quality Objectives. [http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/bptcp/sediment.shtml](http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/bptcp/sediment.shtml) (accessed on 08/29/08).
- SWRCB, California Environmental Protection Agency (CEPA). 2008a. Draft Staff Report: Water Quality Control Plan for Enclosed Bays and Estuaries, Part 1. Sediment. Quality. Released July 18, 2008.
- SWRCB, CEPA. 2008b. Scoping document: Water quality control policy on the use of coastal and estuarine waters for power plant cooling. March 2008.

- SWRCB, CEPA, Beach Watch (Beach Watch). 2008. Annual Summary of County Beach Posting and Closure Reports.  
[http://beachwatch.waterboards.ca.gov/BeachWatch/cla\\_common/BmdComparedCriteria.jsp](http://beachwatch.waterboards.ca.gov/BeachWatch/cla_common/BmdComparedCriteria.jsp) (accessed and generated a report on 07/12/08).
- Stebbins, R.C. A Field Guide to Western Reptiles and Amphibians. 3rd Edition. Houghton Mifflin Company, 2003.
- Stewart, B.S. and P.K. Yochem. 1994. Ecology of harbor seals in the Southern California Bight. In W. L. Halvorson and G. J. Meander (editors), Fourth California Islands symposium: Update on the status of resources, pp. 123-134. Santa Barbara Museum of Natural History.
- Stewart, J.G. and B. Myers. 1980. Assemblages of algae and invertebrates in Southern California *Phyllospadix*-dominated intertidal habitats. Aquatic Botany 9:73-94.
- StockTeam. 2007. <http://www.stockteam.com/USOPEN/usurf.html> (accessed 08/05/08).
- Stoms, D.M., F.W. Davis, S.J. Andelman, M.H Carr, S.D. Gaines, B.S. Halpern, R. Hoenicke, S.G. Leibowitz, A. Leydecker, E.M.P. Madin, H. Tallis, and R.R. Warner. 2005. Integrated coastal reserve planning: making the land-sea connection. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*. 3(8): 429-436.
- Strathmann, R. 1971. The feeding behavior of plankton echinoderm larvae: Mechanisms, regulation, and rate of suspension feeding. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 6(2): 109-160.
- Surflife. 2008. Full Surf Spot List: North America, Southern California; Santa Barbara, Ventura, North Los Angeles, South Los Angeles, North Orange County, South Orange County, North San Diego, South San Diego. <http://www.surflife.com/home/index.cfm> (accessed 08/5/08).
- Swift, C.C., J.L. Nelson, C. Maslow, and T. Stein. 1989. Biology and distribution of the tidewater goby, *Eucyclogobius newberryi* (Pisces: Gobiidae) of California. Los Angeles Co. Museum of Nat. Hist.Contribs. in Science 404:1-19.
- Tarpley, J.A. and D.A. Glantz. 1992. Marine plant resources: giant kelp. In California's living marine resources and their utilization. W.S. Leet, C.M. DeWees, and C.W. Haugen (eds.). California Sea Grant Extension Publication UCSGEP-92-12. p. 2-5.
- Tegner, M.J. and P.K. Dayton. 2000. Ecosystem effects of fishing in kelp forest communities. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*. Vol 57:579-589.
- Tegner, M.J., P.K. Dayton, P.B. Edwards, and K.L. Riser. 1997. Large-scale, low frequency oceanographic effects on kelp forest succession: a tale of two cohorts. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* Vol 146:117-134.
- Tegner, M.J. and P.K. Dayton. 1991. Sea urchins, El Ninos, and the Long Term Stability of Southern California Kelp Forest Communities. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*. Vol 77:49-63pp.
- Topping, D, C. Lowe, and J. Caselle. 2006. Site fidelity and seasonal movement patterns of adult California sheephead *Semicossyphus pulcher* (Labridae): an acoustic monitoring study. *Inter-Research Marine Ecology Progress Series*. 326:257-267.
- Trails.com. 2008. <http://www.trails.com/stateactivity.aspx?area=13260> (accessed 08/05/08).
- United State Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). 2008a. Ocean Dumping and Dredged Materials Management.  
<http://www.epa.gov/owow/oceans/regulatory/dumpdredged/dumpdredged.html> (accessed 08/04/08).

- USEPA. 2008b. Superfund: Basic Information. <http://www.epa.gov/superfund/about.htm> (accessed 08/27/08).
- USEPA. 2008c. National Priority List: Basic Information. [http://www.epa.gov/superfund/sites/npl/npl\\_hrs.htm](http://www.epa.gov/superfund/sites/npl/npl_hrs.htm) (accessed 08/27/08).
- USEPA. 2008d. Region 9, Superfund Sites: Sites Overview by State and County. <http://yosemite.epa.gov/r9/sfund/r9sfdocw.nsf/WSOState!OpenView&Start=1&Count=1000&Expand=2#2> (accessed 08/27/08).
- USEPA. 2008e. Region 9, Superfund Sites: Palos Verdes Shelf. <http://yosemite.epa.gov/r9/sfund/r9sfdocw.nsf/7508188dd3c99a2a8825742600743735/e61d5255780dd68288257007005e9422!OpenDocument> (accessed 08/27/08).
- USEPA. 2008f. Introduction to TMDLs. <http://www.epa.gov/owow/tmdl/intro.html#definition> (accessed 07/29/08).
- USEPA. 2002. 2000 National Water Quality Inventory. Report: EPA-841-R-02-001. U.S. EPA, Office of Water, Washington DC, August 2002.
- USEPA. 2001. 40 CFR Part 131. Water Quality Standards; Establishment of Numeric Criteria for Priority Toxic Pollutants for the State of California; Correction. Federal Register February 13, 2001 (Volume 66, Number 30).
- USEPA. 1993. Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters. EPA 840-B-92-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, D.C.
- USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 2007. Tidewater Goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Ventura Fish and Wildlife Office, Ventura, Ca. 50pp.
- USFWS. 2005. Regional Seabird Conservation Plan, Pacific Region. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Migratory Birds and Habitat Programs, Pacific Region, Portland, Oregon.
- USFWS. 2003. Final Revised Recovery Plan for the Southern Sea Otter (*Enhydra lutris nereis*). Portland, Oregon. xi + 165pp.
- USFWS. 2001. Western Snowy Plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus*) Pacific Coast Population Draft Recovery Plan. Portland, Oregon. xix + 630pp.
- USFWS. 1995. Southern sea otter (*Enhydra lutris*): California stock. [http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/sars/fws2000\\_seaotter-ca.pdf](http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/sars/fws2000_seaotter-ca.pdf) (accessed 09/04/08).
- Van Bus Kirk, W. 2007. Personal communication, January 18, 2007. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Portland, Oregon.
- Watson, J. 2002. Comparative Home Ranges and Food Habits of Bald Eagles Nesting In Four Aquatic Habitats in Western Washington. Northwestern Naturalist. Vol. 83(3), pp. 101-108.
- Warrick, J.A., P.M. DiGiacomo, S.B. Weisberg, N.P. Nezlin, M. Mengel, B.H. Jones, J.C. Ohlmann, L. Washburn, E.J. Terrill, and K.L. Farnsworth. 2007. River Plume patterns and dynamics within the Southern California Bight. Continental Shelf Research 27 (19).
- Weinstein, A. Socioeconomic Uses. Watershed Institute, CSU Monterey Bay. In MBNMS site characterization, human influences website.
- Weise, M.J. and J.T. Harvey. 2005. California sea lion (*Zalophus californianus*) impacts on salmonids near Año Nuevo Island, California. Final Report NOAA Contract #40ABNF101432.
- Weise, M.J. and J.T. Harvey. 2001. Monitoring pinniped predation of winter-run steelhead in the San Lorenzo River during 2000. Final Report. NOAA Contract # 40ABNF901343.

- Wilson, K.C. and R.H. McPeak. 1983. Kelp restoration. *In* The effects of waste disposal on kelp communities. W. Bascom, (ed.). Southern California Coastal Water Research Project. Long Beach. pp. 77-92.
- Wolch, J. 2001. Attitudes toward Marine Wildlife Among Residents of Southern California's Urban Coastal Zone. USC Sea Grant, University of Southern California, Los Angeles, CA. USCSG-TR-01-2001.
- Wolch, J. and J. Zhang. 2004. Beach Recreation, Cultural Diversity and Attitudes Towards Nature. *Journal of Leisure Research*, Volume 36, No. 3, 414-443.
- World Wildlife Fund. Sept. 2000. The Global 200 Ecoregions: A User's Guide. WWF. Washington D.C.
- Yacht Club Guide. 2008. [http://www.yachtclubguide.com/southern\\_california\\_yacht\\_clubs.htm](http://www.yachtclubguide.com/southern_california_yacht_clubs.htm) (accessed 08/05/08).
- Yen, P.P.W, W.J. Sydeman, and K.D. Hyrenbach, 2004. Marine bird and cetacean associations with bathymetric habitats and shallow-water topographies: implications for trophic transfer and conservation. *J. of Marine Systems* 50: 79-9.
- Zedler, J.B., editor. 2001. Handbook for Restoring Tidal Wetlands. Marine Science Series, CRC Press, LLC. Boca Raton, Florida.
- Zimmerman, R.C. and D.L. Robertson. 1985. Effects of El Niño on local hydrography and growth of the giant kelp *Macrocystis pyrifera* at Santa Catalina Island, California. *Limnology and Oceanography* 30: 1298-1302.